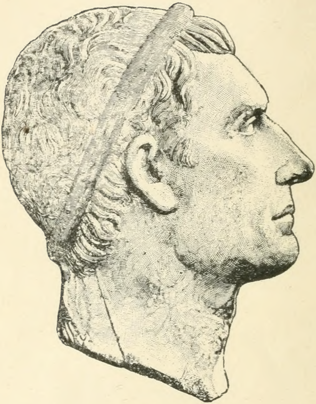


CAESAR

From a Bust in the Museum of the Louvre.

Classical Text-Book Series.

CAESAR'S

BELLUM GALLICUM,

(BOOKS II, III & IV)

WITH

INTRODUCTORY NOTICES, NOTES, COMPLETE VOCABULARY, A SERIES OF EXERCISES FOR RE-TRANSLATION, AND GRADED PASSAGES FOR SIGHT READING

FOR THE USE OF

STUDENTS READING FOR THE JUNIOR LEAVING AND PASS AND HONOR MATRICULATION EXAMINATIONS.

BY

JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.,

HEAD MASTER ST. CATHARINES COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE,

AND

E. W. HAGARTY, B.A.,

CLASSICAL MASTER HARBORD ST. COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE, TORONTO—LATE FELLOW BY COURTESY JOHNS HOPKINS UNIVERSITY, BALTIMORE.

TORONTO:

THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED,

9 FRONT STREET WEST.

PREFACE.

This edition has been prepared with a special view to the needs of University matriculants, Pass and Honor, and Junior Leaving candidates. The aim has been, not to produce a treatise on Latin Grammar or Prose, but to supply what *material* the teacher and the student will find useful in connection with the particular text prescribed. The elements of grammar and the first lessons in translation both unseen and prescribed, are supposed to have been taught at an earlier stage. In this edition it will be seen that, besides the text of Books II., III. and IV., with the necessary notes, etc., abundant provision is made for practice (1) in re-translation and (2) in sight-reading. This is accomplished by a series of running exercises, based on the several chapters read, word-lists (Latin-English and English-Latin) for memorization and drill, and some fifty short passages for sight translation, adapted from Book VII. of the Gallic War. These passages are graded, in their own character and in the help given, to suit both pass and honor students.

As abundant examples of continuous prose translation, based upon every part of Caesar, are to be found in Messrs. Fletcher and Henderson's advanced work on Latin Prose, it is not thought necessary to insert such examples here. It is hoped that this edition will be found especially helpful in view of the stress now laid upon practical acquaintance with Latin idiom and vocabulary.

J. H.

TORONTO, Oct. 5th, 1895. E. W. H.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.



Map No. 1.
GAUL
IN THE TIME OF CÆSAR.
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
10 20 40 60 80 100
1 Long. West 2
0 Longitude 2 East from 4 Greenwich 6
8
10
BRITANNIA
MONA I.
Cenimagni
Trinobantes
Cassi
Tamesis Fl.
Ancalites
Segontiaci
Bibroci
Cantium
(Deal)
(Dover)
GERMANIA
Batavi
Rhenus Fl.
Insula Batavorum
Vacalus
Usipetes
Tencteri
Sugambri
Ubii
Suevi
Bacenis
Silva
Cherusci
Menapii
Mosa Fl.
Eburones
Morini
Geidumni
Centrones
Grudii
Levaci
Pleumoxii
Nervii
Aduatuci
Aduatuca
Oppidum Aduatucorum
Portus Itius
Atrebates
Nemetocenna
Ambiani
Samara Fl.
Samarobriva
Veromandui
Sabis Fl.
Segni
Condrusi
Germani
Arduenna Silva
Paemani
Cisrheni
Treveri
Mosella Fl.
Caeroesi
Rhenus Fl.
IV. 17
IV. 12
Moenus Fl.
Vangiones
Nemetes
BELGAE
Caleti
Bratuspantium
Bellovaci
Bibrax
Axona Fl.
Noviodunum
Durocortorum
Suessiones
Unelli
50
51
52
54


OCEANUS
ATLANTICUS
CELTAE
GALLI
AQUITANI
PROVINCIA
MARE
INTERNUM
HISPANIA
PYRENAEI
Redones
Namnetes
Andes
Liger Fl.
Turones
Pictones
Limonum
Lemovices
Santones
Carantonus Fl.
Lemovices
Petrocorii
Duronius Fl.
Nitiobriges
(Eleutheri)
Cadurci
Garumna
Oltis Fl.
Sontiates
Ptianii
Cocosates
Tarusates
Sibuzates
Atur Fl.
Bigerriones
Garumni
Tolosa
Carcasso
(Tectosages)
Atax Fl.
Illiberis
Narbo Martius
Tarnis Fl.
Ruteni
Arverni
Gergovia
Vellavii
Gabali
Cevenna Mons
Helvii
Rhodanus Fl.
Cavari
Vocontii
Druentia Fl.
Massilia
Vienna
Isara
Allobroges
Ambarri
Rhodanus
Genava
Lemanus
Helvetii
Seduni
Salassi
Octodurus
Centrones
ALPES
Ocelum
Caturiges
Lepontii
Vesontio
Dubis Fl.
Rauraci
Tulingi
Venetus
Sequani
Cabillonum
Matisco
Bibracte
Arar Fl.
Aedui
Lingones
Alesia
Mandubii
Genabum
Noviodunum
Avaricum
SIVE
Boii
Gorgobina
Decetia
Elaver Fl.
Segusiavi
Vigena Fl.
Bituriges
Uxellodunum
Cenom
Veneti
46
44
2
4
6
8

LIFE OF CAESAR.

Caius Julius Caesar[1] was born on the 12th of July, B.C. 100.[2] He was thus six years younger than Cicero and Pompey. His family (*gens Julia*) was not merely one of the oldest, but was also one of the most respected of the patrician families of the capital. It traced its descent to Iulus, son of Aeneas, and thus through Venus claimed to be of divine origin. It also embraced among its members many who distinguished themselves in the service of the state. BIRTH. *His family*

Little is known of Caesar's father, except that he held at some time or other the office of *praetor*, and that he died suddenly at Pisa, B.C. 84. The education of young Caesar seems to have been directed chiefly by his mother, *Aurelia*, who was a woman of lofty ambition and a firm believer in the noble destiny of her son. His early training, according to the fashion of that day, consisted in acquiring a knowledge of numbers, grammar, music, and in practising physical exercises. He is also said to have devoted considerable time to verse making.[3] *Caesar's father.*

[1]Each Roman citizen had usually *three names:* called the *praenomen* (marking the *individual*), the *nomen* (designating the *gens* or *clan*), and the *cognomen* (telling the *family*). Thus Caius is a *praenomen*, Julius is a *nomen*, and Caesar, a *cognomen*. Sometimes an *agnomen* was added for honorary distinction as *Africanus* to P. Cornelius Scipio.

[2]Mommsen (Hist. of Rome, Vol. III., 15) argues that Caesar was born 102 B.C. His main reason for assigning this date is that the *lex annalis*, which prescribed the minimum age at which a citizen could hold certain offices, was observed in Caesar's case. By this law no one could hold the quaestorship before he was 31, the aedileship before 37, the praetorship before 41, the consulship before 43. By referring to the chronology of his life, the plausibility of the argument would appear. In answer to this we may say that: (1) the law was not always observed; (2) Suetonius represents Caesar as 16 years of age when his father died; (3) Plutarch, Suetonius and Appian, state that Caesar was 56 years of age when he was assassinated.

[3]*Laudes Herculis* and *Oedipus* were among his youthful poems.

Related to Marius. His aunt Julia was married to C. Marius. To this relationship may be ascribed the fact that Caesar at the early age of 14 was appointed to the office of priest of Jove (*flamen dialis*), by virtue of which he was a member of the sacred college and received a handsome income. We may also ascribe to his connection with Marius the bent of his political opinions. Caesar after the death of the great dictator led the popular or democratic party as opposed to the senatorial or aristocratic.

Betrothed to Cossutia. He was at first betrothed to Cossutia, a wealthy heiress, but he broke off the engagement on the death of his father. *Marries Cornelia.* In the following year (83 B.C.), he married Cornelia, daughter of L. Cornelius Cinna, the leader of the popular party and the avowed opponent of Sylla. This union was displeasing to Sylla, who ordered Caesar to divorce Cornelia. This Caesar refused to do. Through the intercession of Aurelius Cotta, Caesar was at length pardoned.

Goes to the East and serves his first campaign. In consequence of having thwarted the will of Sylla Caesar incurred his enmity and found it unsafe to remain at Rome. He went to the East, and served his first campaign under M. Minucius Thermus. He seems to have remained in the East for about four years, distinguishing himself for personal bravery at the siege of Mitylene and in the war against the Cilician pirates. *Returns home.* On the report of Sylla's death, 78 B.C., he came home.

Tactics of Caesar. The tactics that Caesar adopted at this time to further the interests of his party showed his consummate skill as a political leader. The Roman Senate had become utterly powerless to deal with the duty of administering properly the government. The lower classes filled with turbulent crowds the cities, in consequence of the free labour of the Italian provincials being in a great measure supplanted by that of slaves. Ever since the days of the Gracchi opposed to this democratic element was the Senate, *Composition of the Senate.* conservative in its nature, being composed of men whose interests were likely to suffer if the democratic element should get any power in the state. In the mid-

The three parties at Rome. *Caesar indicts Dolabella and Antonius.* *Goes to Rhodes.* *Captured by pirates.*

way between these two forces we have the wealthy class led by such men as Crassus, without any aristocratic antecedents, on the one hand opposed to democracy as men of affluence naturally are, and on the other opposed to the old families who prided themselves simply in tracing their descent through a long line of ancestors. In fact the history of Rome from the middle of the second century, B.C., down to the time of Augustus, presents little more than the intrigues of wily politicians who by unscrupulousness endeavoured to supplant each other in the favour of the people. Caesar attempted to show that the Senatorial government of the provincials was thoroughly corrupt. He indicted Cn. Dolabella (78 B.C., and C. Antonius (77 B.C.) for extortion. Though Caesar lost these causes, he really gained a triumph, since he proved the utter corruption of the courts which were filled by the Senatorial faction. To improve his style in oratory, he went to the school of Molo, at Rhodes. On the voyage thither Caesar's vessel was captured by pirates at Pharmacussa (now *Fermaco*), one of the Sporades. He was detained for forty days, and was not released till a ransom of $50,000 had been paid. During his detention, he is said to have joined these marauders in their sports, and to have jestingly told them that he would, when liberated, have them crucified. This threat he afterwards made good. Landing at Miletus, he collected a small fleet, captured them, and brought them to Pergamus, where they were executed. He stayed at the school of Molo for two years.

Elected pontifex. *Reaction against Sylla's policy.* *Elected quaestor.*

When absent from Rome, Caesar was elected *pontifex*. This office could be held only by one residing in the capital, and thus he was compelled to return. A reaction had meanwhile set in opposed to the policy of Sylla. With the Consulship of Pompey and Crassus (70 B.C.) a reform had been introduced by restoring the rights of the tribunes and the censors, and by remodelling the Senate. Both Pompey and Caesar supported these reforms. In 68 B.C., Caesar became *quaestor*, and by virtue of this

office he was entitled to a seat in the Senate. He went soon after his election with Antistius Vetus into Spain, and took up his residence at *Corduba* (now *Cordova*). One of the chief duties of the quaestor was to attend the provincial assizes (*conventus*), and settle the disputes that arose between provincials. In this office he displayed a spirit of equity and moderation in striking contrast to the policy of his predecessors. His popularity gained for him many adherents, who, in after days, flocked to his standard at the battle of Munda. It was during this year that he lost his wife Cornelia.

Marries Pompeia. B.C. 67.

Caesar married Pompey's cousin, Pompeia, in the following year. No doubt this union was concluded for political reasons. Pompey was now in the height of his fame. This very year he was appointed by the Gabinian law (*lex Gabinia*) sole commander of the Roman fleet to clear the coasts of the Mediterranean of the pirates who infested it. Next year he was equally successful in defeating Mithradates, king of Pontus.

Elected curule aedile.

In 65 B.C., Caesar was elected *curule aedile*. While holding this office, he increased his popularity, as well as his debts, by the costly gladiatorial shows he gave to gratify the depraved tastes of a Roman populace. He also showed his devotion to the memory of Marius by causing the trophies of that great commander, which had been destroyed by Sylla, to be replaced. Many a veteran, reading the inscriptions recounting the victories of Campi Raudii, Aquae Sextiae, and over Jugurtha, would recall the memory of the greatest soldier of the age, the deliverer of Italy, and the sturdy supporter of popular rights. In the year 63 B.C., a year noted for the conspiracy of Catiline, Caesar became *pontifex maximus*. On the trial of the conspirators, Caesar advocated the penalty of perpetual banishment, while Cato advocated the death penalty. Subsequent events proved that Caesar was right.

Caesar pontifex maximus.

Elected praetor.

In 62 B.C., Caesar was elected *praetor*, and while in this office he openly opposed the party of the Senate. On

resigning the office, he went as *propraetor* to Spain, when *Propraetor of Spain.* he managed to gain money enough to pay off his enormous debts. On his return, he united with Pompey and Crassus to form the coalition called the *First Triumvirate*. *First Triumvirate.* Pompey may be said to have been the representative of the aristocratic classes, Caesar of the democratic, while Crassus was an exponent of the moneyed party. In the *Consul 59 B.C.* next year Caesar was Consul. To further cement the union, Pompey married Julia, Caesar's daughter. During *Julia Caesar's daughter, married to Pompey.* his Consulship he brought up several reforms, especially a bill for the division of the lands among the people Before laying down his Consulship he procured the passage of a bill by which he was invested for *five* years *Goes to Gaul.* with proconsular power over the Gauls and Illyricum.

GALLIC CAMPAIGNS.

Nine years were spent in the subjugation of the Gauls. In the first campaign, Caesar at Bibracte (now *Autun*) drove back the Helvetii, who were moving westward and *58 B.C. Helvetii and Ariovistus* attempting to subdue Gaul. In the same year he defeated at *Basle* Ariovistus, a German King, who at the instigation of the Arverni and Sequani had been invited to take their part against the Aedui.

In the second campaign, Caesar defeated the Belgae at *B.C. 57. The Belgae.* the river Sabis (now *Sambre*).

Caesar in the third campaign broke up a coalition of the *B.C. 56. The Veneti.* tribes of the north-west of Gaul, which had united against him. During this year, he renewed the agreement with Pompey and Crassus, who covenanted that his command should be extended to five years further.

In his fourth campaign Caesar crossed the Rhine, but *B.C. 55. The Germans and Britons.* remained only eighteen days on the German side. Later on in the same year he crossed over to Britain.

The next campaign was chiefly against Britain, which, *B.C. 54. Britain.* however, he only partially subdued, being recalled by a sudden uprising in Gaul, which he suppressed 53 B.C.

He in the next campaign crushed the general revolt, *B.C. 52.* under Vercingetorix, of the subject tribes in Gaul. With

the fall of Alesia, the power of the Gauls was crushed for ever.

B.C. 51 In his eighth campaign, he was complete master of Gaul, having reduced the tribes one after another to subjection.

B.C. 50. The last campaign is uneventful. He remained in Cisalpine Gaul, and returned to Transalpine Gaul for a short time in the summer to review his troops.

QUARREL WITH POMPEY.

Changes while Caesar was in Gaul. During Caesar's absence in Gaul, Crassus was slain at the battle of Carrhae, B.C. 53. This really broke up the Triumvirate. Pompey began to view Caesar's career with distrust and alarm. He entered into a league with the aristocracy and the Senate. A demand was finally passed by the Senate that Caesar should disband his legions. This Caesar refused to do, unless Pompey followed the same course. Finally a decree "that the Consuls should provide that the State should receive no hurt," was passed. This order was equivalent to a declaration of war, and was regarded as such by Caesar.

Caesar crosses the Rubicon. With one legion he crossed the Rubicon, the boundary between Gaul and Italy. Soon Italy came over to his side. Pompey and the party of the Senate fled to Greece. Caesar marched to Spain, defeated the party of Pompey at *Ilerda*, and took Massilia in Southern Gaul.

Caesar then prepared to follow Pompey. For some time both armies encamped on the Apsus in Illyricum. Finally the decisive battle was fought August 9th, B.C. 48, at *Pharsalia*. Though Caesar's forces were but one-half the number of those of Pompey, the superior generalship and the courage of despair won the day, and Pompey's troops were completely routed. Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered by an emissary of the king. Caesar followed and became involved in difficulties in settling the succession to the throne.

Pharsalia. B.C. 48.

Thapsus. B.C. 46. Soon after he crushed the Pompeian party at the battle of *Thapsus*, in Africa, 46 B.C. Caesar was now the master

of the Roman world. He returned to Rome, celebrated his three triumphs, and published a general amnesty to his opponents. He reformed the calendar, and introduced many useful measures for the internal economy of the State.

In 45 B.C., the two sons of Pompey had collected a force in Spain. Thither Caesar marched, and at *Munda* totally defeated it. The Senate conferred on him nearly all the offices of State, and thus the whole authority was centered in one man. *Munda.*

A conspiracy, headed by Brutus and Cassius, was formed against him. They were actuated partly by mistaken patriotic motives, and partly by personal jealousy and hatred. Caesar fell March 15th, 44 B.C., pierced by the daggers of the assassins just as he had entered the Senate house. *Death of Caesar, B.C. 44.*

Caesar was tall, and of commanding aspect; his features well marked and prominent; his complexion fair; his eyes keen, black, and expressive. In latter life he was bald, which he somewhat concealed by wearing a sort of diadem. His robust frame was inured to hardship, and exhibited remarkable powers of endurance. With regard to dress he was very fastidious. His private life was singularly free from many of the vices of the age. *Caesar's appearance.*



BRUTUS, THE MURDERER OF CAESAR.

II.

THE WORKS OF CAESAR.

(1) *Extant:—*

(a) Commentarii de Bello Gallico in *seven* books. This work contains an account of the conquest of Gaul from B.C. 58 to B.C. 52. In the first book we have the conquest of the Helvetii mentioned, and in the seventh book the death of Clodius is referred to as lately having taken place. As the death of Clodius happened B.C. 52, we may assume that the events recorded happened between these two dates. An eighth book was added by Aulus Hirtius to complete the events to 51 B.C.

(b) Commentarii de Bello Civili in *three* books. This gives an account of the civil wars down to the time of the Alexandrine war. The history of the Alexandrine, African, and Spanish campaigns were afterwards added. Hirtius probably wrote the account of the Alexandrine campaign; Oppius, that of the African; the account of the Spanish war was written probably by a centurion of Caesar's army, according to Niebuhr, who discovers a change in style and expression from that of the other two accounts.

(2) *Lost Works:—*

(a) Anticato. A reply to Cicero's panegyric on Cato Uticensis, who fell at Thapsus, B.C. 46.

(b) De Analogia, or as Cicero calls it, *De Ratione Latine loquendi.* Dedicated to Cicero and written when Caesar was crossing the Alps.

(c) Libri Auspiciorum or *Auguralia.* Published B.C. 63, when Caesar was *Pontifex maximus.*

(d) De Astris. Published also B.C. 63.

(e) Apothegmata or *Dicta Collectanea.* A collection of witticisms made at different times.

(f) Poemata; nearly all written in his youth. To

these belong *Oedipus*, *Laudes Herculis* and *Iter* (describing his journey from Spain, B.C. 46.

SUMMARY OF CAESAR'S LIFE.

Born 100 B.C. Father dies 84 B.C.

Married Cornelia 83 B.C.

Retires from Rome owing to enmity of Sylla. Returns on Sylla's death, 78 B.C.

Wins popularity by attacks upon Senatorial party.

Goes to Rhodes to study rhetoric under Molo. Captured by pirates on his way thither.

Elected *pontifex*, *quaestor*, *curule aedile*, *pontifex maximus*, *praetor*, 70-62 B.C.

Consul B.C. 59. First Triumvirate.

Gallic Campaigns 58-50 B.C.

Quarrel with Pompey and the Senate, 49 B.C.

Defeats Pompey at **Pharsalia, 48 B.C.**—Gains control of Africa at Thapsus, 46 B.C.—Spain, at Munda, 45 B.C.

Assassinated 44 B.C.

CAESAR'S PERSONALITY.

"To be a great general was the short road to political power. Caesar's keen eye saw this, and, though too much must not be made of it, certainly it was not absent from the motives which made him eager to have the command in Gaul assigned to him. There were great men in the world before Caesar, but it seemed to good judges of his own age that he was greater than them all; and there have been great men after him, but still, compared with all before and after, so far as it is possible to compare where circumstances are so different, his name seems to good judges the greatest of all names known to history. Better men have lived, greater statesmen, perhaps greater generals, but none have so combined the qualities which we praise and wonder at. The Emperor

of Rome, the German Kaisers, probably the Russian Czars, bore or still bear his name. A month, was renamed in his honour, and has retained the name of "the mightiest Julius" ever since in the languages of all Europe.

His wonderful life must be studied elsewhere, his fearless youth, his early manhood devoted to the cause of liberty and reform, his marvellous success as a general, though he only turned soldier comparatively late in life, and held no command until he was forty years old. How he became the master of Rome's destinies, and by justice and clemency showed that he was worthy to control them, and was ambitious more for his country than for himself; and how, in the height of his greatness, he was murdered by men who called him tyrant, and thought that the only right form of government was the rule of the noble and wealthy few, of the oligarchy which bore and disgraced the name of the Roman Republic,—all this forms a history full of interest and lessons for all time.

Here (Bk. V.) we have only the story of his second invasion of Britain and one scene from the midst of his great exploit of the conquest of Gaul. It will show us something of his care for his men which so endeared him to them, of his promptitude and daring, of his supreme calm and self-control, of his fairness as an historian, of his kindness as a superior officer, slow to blame, quick to praise; and it will give us a lively picture of his enemies, their strength and weakness, their mode of warfare. Above all, it will show us the matchless strength of the Roman legions when fighting behind the entrenchments which they were so skilled in making."—*Colbeck.*

DRAMATIC CHARACTER OF BOOKS V. AND VI.

Mr. Colbeck's words quoted above aptly set forth some of the leading dramatic features of this most interesting portion of Caesar's otherwise rather dry military narrative. In books V. and VI. we realize Caesar's object in writing, *i.e.*, to give to his fellow-countrymen of his own

time, and to leave on record for all ages to come a pen-picture of himself and his army as they figured in these years of Roman aggrandizement in Western Europe. With how bold yet delicate a touch he paints

(1) himself, as a considerate and humane officer, "slow to blame, quick to praise," (see the episode of Cicero, Bk. V., 46-52, and Bk. VI., 42,); as a cool-headed strategist, a merciful conqueror, and a just judge;

(2) his subordinate officers, Cotta, Sabinus, Labienus Cicero, their faults and their virtues;

(3) his foes, the Britons, the Germans, the Gauls; their chieftains (Cassivellaunus and Ambiorix); their modes of fighting and other national characteristics;

(4) his own legionaries, with their intrepid zeal amidst fearful odds of peril and hardship;

(5) and even Pompey, not yet an avowed enemy, conceding something to "friendship and the good of the commonwealth."

These features combine to make books V. and VI. an nteresting study even from the literary stand-point.

III.

THE CONQUEST OF GAUL.

Greek settlement.

In the year 600 B.C., the Greeks of Phocaea, in Asia Minor, emigrated and settled at Massilia (now *Marseilles*). On the conquest of Asia Minor by Cyrus the Great, many of their countrymen joined the Phocaeans; and soon the young Greek colony rose to power. The inhabitants of Massilia became the leaders in learning and commerce, and established colonies along the neighbouring coast of the Mediterranean. As the Greek colonies encroached on the wild barbarians, wars naturally arose. In 154 B.C. the Ligurians besieged Antipolis and Nicaea, two dependencies of Massilia, when the Massiliots called in the aid

Romans. of the Romans, by whose aid the Ligurians were defeated, and part of the territory of the Ligurians given to the Massiliots. Another attack soon after (125 B.C.) was made by the Ligurians, who were reduced a second time. The army of C. Sextius Calvinus, after three campaigns, plundered their territory, and reduced the inhabitants to slavery. Near Massilia, he founded the town of *Aquae Sextiae* (now *Aix*), which obtained its name from the hot *springs* of the neighbourhood. About this time, the Aedui and Allobroges were at war. The Arverni, the most powerful of the Gallic tribes, aided the Allobroges, while the Aedui concluded a treaty with the Romans. In 121 B.C., Cn. Domitius defeated the Allobroges at Vindalium, a little above *Avignon;* and in the same year the Gallic confederates were defeated by the united armies of Cn. Domitius and Q. Fabius Maximus, near the junction of the Isere and the Rhone. The country of the Allobroges was reduced to a Roman province, and received the name *Provincia.* Massilia however, still retained her independence. Within the next succeeding years, the Romans enlarged the boundaries of the original Provincia, which extended at first from the Alps to the Rhone, by reducing that portion of Gaul from the Rhone to the Pyrenees, thus keeping open the road to Spain.

Aquae Sextiae.

Feuds.

Cimbri and Teutones.

In 113 B.C. the whole of Italy was thrown into consternation by the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones. After wandering about the Northern Italy, they entered Gaul and attacked the Roman Province. In 109 B.C. they defeated the Consul, M. Junius Silanus. The Romans sustained another defeat two years later when they attempted to keep back the Tugurini, one of the Helvetic cantons who were attempting to enter Gaul. In this battle fell L. Piso, the grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law. In 106 B.C., Q. Servilius Caepio sacked Toulouse, which had formed a league with the Cimbri and Teutones. This temporary gain was followed by a crushing defeat inflicted on the Romans near the banks of the Rhone by the Cimbri and Teutones.

Successive defeats of the Romans.

The Cimbri separated from the Teutones and laid waste all the land between the Rhone and the Pyrenees. *Cimbri and Teutones separate.* While the Teutones remained on the East of the Rhone, the Cimbri turned back from the Pyrenees, joined the Teutones, and then passed the Alps. Marius who had gained great glory in the Jugurthine war, was sent against the invaders. He hastened to Southern Gaul, and defeated the Teutones at Aquae Sextiae, 102 B.C. *Defeat of Teutones and Cimbri.* In the following year he met the Cimbri at Vercellae and crushed them in battle.

During the civil war, Sertorius, a follower of Marius, stirred up the Aquitani to revolt. The revolt, however, was unimportant. During the Consulship of Cicero, Catiline attempted to carry out his nefarious conspiracy. *Intrigues of Catiline.* He and his associates attempted to gain over the deputies of the Allobroges, who were on some mission at Rome, to join the conspiracy. These deputies betrayed the proposals to the Consul. The Allobroges not being successful in their mission, and perhaps instigated by the representations of Catiline, took up arms and defeated Manlius Lentulus. In a second battle, however, they were defeated by Pomptinus.

The Aedui, proud of their alliance with Rome, began to lord it over the other tribes. The Sequani formed an alliance with the Arverni. These two tribes invited Ariovistus, a German, to assist them against the Aedui. *Ariovistus invited.* Soon the Aedui were reduced to submission. Their chief, Divitiacus, went to Rome, and implored the aid of the Senate. The Sequani meanwhile found out that Ariovistus from being an ally turned to be their master. He demanded a third part of the territory of the Sequani, and being refused, defeated them in the battle of Magetobriga. After this he ruled them with unbearable insolence.

In B.C. 60, a report reached Rome that the Helvetii, like the Cimbri and Teutones, were preparing for a great emigration. *Emigration of Helvetii.*

The plan was under the direction of Orgetorix, a wealthy Helvetian noble. Seeing the fertile plains of

Gaul, they were dissatisfied with their own land. In the previous year a decree had been passed at Rome, that the Governor of Gaul for the time being should protect the allies of the Roman people. In the next year 59 B.C., Julius Caesar was Consul. During his Consulship, P. Vatinius proposed a law giving Caesar the government of Gaul and Illyricum for five years. Caesar's object was to complete the conquest of Gaul. He remained at Rome till after the exile of Cicero. Soon after this, B.C. 58, he hastily set out for Gaul, on the report that the Helveti were on the move westward.

Caesar Consul.

Sets out to Gaul.



ROMAN SOLDIERS, FROM TRAJAN'S COLUMN.

IV.

THE ROMAN ARMY.

In ancient times of Rome, the army was drawn in a solid mass (*phalanx*), a method very common among the

Macedonians, and perhaps derived from them. Camillus (circa, 390 B.C.) is said to have broken up the *phalanx* into smaller bodies called *manipuli*, capable of acting independently and also in concert. The whole legion was arranged in three lines. In the first (*hastati*) were the youngest men, in the second (*principes*) were men in the full vigor of life, and in the third (*triarii*) were the veterans. Each line contained *ten manipuli*, arranged in the following fashion ;

Hastati : — — — — — — — — — —
Principes : — — — — — — — — — —
Triarii : — — — — — — — — — —

Each *manipulus* of the two first lines contained two *centuriae*, each commanded by a *centurio*. The centurion commanding the right century of the manipuli was styled *centurio prior*, the one commanding the left century, *centurio posterior*. Light armed troops (*velites*) were attached, twenty, to each century. Thus we have :

Hastati :	10 manipuli,	120 men =	20 centuries,	60 men =	1,200
Principes :	10 "	120 " =	20 "	60 " =	1,200
Triarii :	10 "	60 " =	20 "	30 " =	600
	30		60		3,000
			To every century, 20 velites =		1,200
					4,200

This was the *triplex acies* referred to so often by Caesar. To each legion was attached 10 *turmae*, or squadrons of cavalry of 30 men each, each *turma* being sub-divided into *three decuriae* of 10 men each ; each *decuria* was headed by an officer called *decurio*.

To Caesar or Marius is ascribed the custom of drawing up the legion of cohorts. Each legion, when complete, had regularly 6,000 men, divided into 10 cohorts (*cohortes*), each cohort divided into three maniples (*manipuli*), and each maniple into two centuries (*centuriae*) The spear (*hasta*) was given to the *triarii*, who also seem to have

been armed with the pike (*pilum*). Hence the first two lines were sometimes called *ante-pilani*.

The officers of the army were:

Officers.

Centurions.

(a) *Centurions* (*Centuriones*): These were the leaders of the centuries, two in each maniple, six in each cohort, and sixty in each legion. There was a regular system of promotion in the Roman army. The highest centurion was the first centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, so the lowest would be the second centurion of the third maniple of the tenth cohort. As a badge of authority the centurions carried a staff.

Tribunes.

(b) *Military Tribunes* (*Tribuni Militum*): These were six to each legion: hence ten centurions were under each tribune.

Legati.

(c) *Lieutenants* (*Legati*): These were next the general in command. The cavalry were under the command of the *præfecti equitum* and *decuriones*.

The *weapons* of the Roman soldier were of two kinds:

Arms.

(1) *Offensive weapons.* The ordinary soldier (*miles legionarius*) was armed with (a) *the javelin.* Of this there were four kinds: *pilum*, *iaculum*, *hasta*, *lancea*. The *pilum* was a strong heavy pike, consisting of a square shaft of wood four feet long, to the end of which a strong, sharp iron point about two feet long was attached. The *iaculum* was a lighter dart used for hurling, while the *hasta* was a long spear used for stabbing. The *lancea* was a light spear with a broad point. The infantry used the *pilum*, while the cavalry and light armed troops, the *iaculum*, *hasta*, and *lancea*. Some of the latter carried bows (*arcus*), and arrows (*sagittae*), slings (*fundae*).

(b) *The sword* (*gladius*) was short, broad, double-edged and pointed, more used for stabbing than for slashing. It was kept in a light scabbard fastened to a belt (*balteus*).

(2) *Defensive weapons.* The soldiers of the legion had: (a) *a brazen helmet* (*cassis*), surmounted with a crest; (b) *a cuirass* (*lorica*), made of leather, or of strips of metal fastened on the leather, or of metallic scales, or of brazen plates: (c) *greaves* (*ocreae*), reaching as high as the knee; (d) *a shield* either oblong, made of boards, covered with leather and surrounded with a broad metallic rim (*scutum*), or made of bronze and of an oval shape (*clipeus*), The light armed troops had a small buckler (*parma*), and a helmet of leather (*galea*). The soldier had beneath his armour his tunic (*tunica*), a thick, woollen under-garment reaching nearly to the knees. His cloak (*sagum*) was of heavy, woollen stuff, fastened by a broach on the shoulder, and open in front. The cloak of the general was called *paludamentum*.

The standards of the Roman army were: (a) *Aquila*, or eagle, the standard of the legion. This was of gold, silver, or bronze, with expanded wings. See Vocabulary; *Aquilifer*. To lose the eagle was a great disgrace. The standard of the maniples was called (b) *signum*, and was of various designs, sometimes a wolf, dog, horse, serpent, figure of victory, &c. (c) The *vexillum* was a square or oblong banner carried by the cavalry. *Standards.*

The *musical instruments* of the army were: (a) *tuba*, trumpet, was straight and deep-toned. This was used for the signals of advance and retreat for infantry (b) *cornu* and *buccina* were crooked, and had a shriller note, and generally used to indicate a change of watch; (c) *lituus*, was formed like an augur's staff, and used for cavalry. *Musical instruments.*

V.

THE ARMY ON THE MARCH.

The army on the march may be divided into three divisions; (a) *agmen primum*, or van; (b) *exercitus*, *agmen legionum*, or main body; (c) *agmen novissimum*, or rear. The van was generally composed of light armed troops of infantry or cavalry. Their chief duty was to find out the force of the enemy, or to hold the enemy at bay until the main body should arrive. The main body with the baggage train (*impedimenta*), followed. The rear generally consisted of cavalry or light armed troops.

The average march (*iter iustum*) was from six to seven hours, or from fifteen to twenty miles a day. On the forced march the soldiers often covered fifty miles a day.

On the march, the soldier carried two Roman pecks of grain (*frumentum*), cooking utensils (*vasa*), his arms, blanket, and two rampart stakes (*valli*). The private baggage of the soldier was called *sarcina*.

VI.

THE ARMY IN CAMP.

When the army was on the march, men (*metatores*) were sent forward to select a suitable place for a camp. If possible, a high ground (*locus superior*) was sought.

The camp was usually square or oblong. An embankment (*vallum*), formed from the ground thrown up from trench (*fossa*), surrounded the camp. The camp had four gates: (1) *porta praetoria*, near the praetorium, or general's tent, faced the enemy; (2) *porta decumana* was opposite to this; (3) *porta principalis sinistra* on the left; and (4) *porta principalis dextra* on the right. Connecting these two latter gates was the *via principalis*, and parallel to the street was the *via quintana*. Connecting the *porta praetoria* and *porta decumana* was the *via praetoria*.

The pickets were generally called *excubitores*; *vigiliae* were night watches; *custodiae* were sentinels to guard some particular post.

The average pay was about 6¼ cents per day. Caesar doubled this. A centurion received 25 cents per day. Besides the regular pay Caesar often gave them the money that accrued from the sale of booty.

EXPLANATION OF DIAGRAM.

1. *Praetorium*, or General's tent.
2. Ground for horses and baggage of the *Tribuni militum.*
3. Tents of the *Tribuni militum.*
4. Ground occupied by horses and baggage of *praefecti sociorum.*
5. Tents of *praefecti sociorum.*
6. Street 100 feet wide, called *principia* or *via principalis.*
7. Cross street, 50 feet wide, on both sides of which were the tents of the Roman *equites* or horse.
8. The *equites* of two Roman legions, in 10 *turmae* or troops each.
9. The *triarii* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each, forming on two different streets.
10. The two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the *triarii* and *principes* of two legions.
11. The *principes* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each.
12. The *hastati* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each.
13. Two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the *hastati* of the two Roman legions and the horse (*equites*) of the allies.
14. The horse of the allies.
15. The infantry of the allies.
16. The *quintana via*, a street 50 feet wide.
17. *Quaestorium*, the quaestor's tent.
18. The tents of *legati*; in front of them and the *quaestorium* was the *forum* where things were sold.
19. The veteran horse (*evocati equites*).
20. The veteran foot (*evocati pedites*).
21. The horse of the consular life guards (*ablecti equites*).
22. The foot of the consular life guards (*ablecti pedites*).
23. A cross street, 100 feet wide.
24. A street, 50 feet wide.
25. *Extraordinarii equites*, a part of the allied horse to serve in consul's body guard.
26. *Extraordinarii pedites*, a part of the allied foot to serve in consul's body guard.
27. Quarters for strangers coming into camp.
28. A span of 200 feet between tents and rampart.
29. Rampart (*vallum*).
30. Ditch (*fossa*), 9 feet deep, 12 feet wide.
31. *Porta principalis dextra.*
32. *Porta principalis sinistra.*
33. *Porta decumana.*
34. *Porta praetoria.*
35. A transverse breastwork protecting the gates.

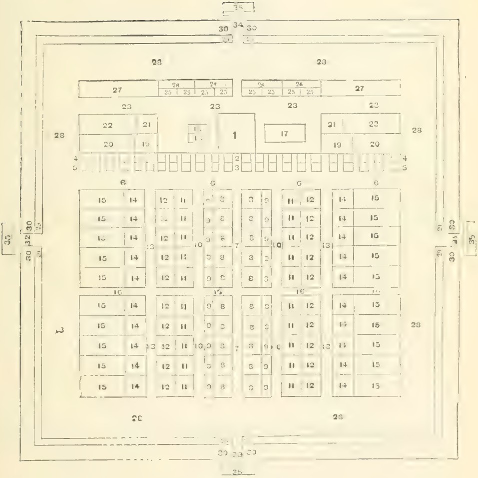


DIAGRAM OF CAMP.

NOTE ON ROMAN HISTORY.

History, or rather chronology, was cultivated in a somewhat crude form by the Romans in the earliest times. From the early days of the Republic the magistrates were required to keep certain records of their doings while in office, and these records formed for many years the sole history of the State. The following may be regarded as the chief original sources from which subsequent history was derived.

(1) *Annales* (i.e. *annales libri*, year books) were records kept by different officers recording the events of the year. Those of the *pontifex maximus* were styled *annales pontificum*, *annales maximi*, and recorded little beyond the eclipses, prodigies and events of a supernatural nature. Most of these records perished in the taking of the city by the Gauls in 390 B.C., but, as far as possible, were replaced and continued down to 133 B.C., when they were discontinued. The *annales consulares*, of which a copy may be seen at the end of Smith's Classical Dictionary, gave the names of the consuls and the wars waged.

(2) *Commentarii sacerdotum* seem to have been a kind of almanac for the benefit of the *priests*, telling for what event each day was noted. We also hear of the *commentarii augurum* kept by the *augurs* for a similar purpose. The *Fasti* of Ovid appears to have been constructed after the manner of these.

(3) *Libri praetorum* were records kept by the praetors.

(4) *Libri lintei* were linen rolls containing historical records. Little is known of these except that they existed in very early times, and are mentioned by Livy as containing an account of the first treaty with Carthage in 509 B.C.

(5) *Tria millia tabularum* contained the acts of the Senate from the foundation of the city till the burning of the Capitol in Vespasian's reign, 79 A.D.

(6) *Corpus civilis legis*, collected at different times. These were the documents on which the Roman historians chiefly based their works and

which they consulted. The burning of the city by the Gauls caused the destruction of many important records. This accounts to some extent for the obscurity of the early part of the Roman history.

We may divide the *historical compositions* of the Romans into *three classes*:

(1) *Annales*, (2) *Historiae*, (3) *Commentarii*. The difference between *Annales* and *Historiae* is still a matter of discussion. *Cicero* says that the *Annales* were written in imitation of the *pontifical annals* and were merely memorials of the times, men, places, events, without any ornament, and provided the meaning was intelligible, the chief excellency lay in brevity. The *Historiae* added the ornaments of the orator to the narrative, aimed at descriptions and were varied with speeches and harangues. *Aulus Gellius* says the *Annales* observe the order of the years, narrating under each year the events that occurred in sequence of time, while the *Historiae* did not observe the order of occurrence. *Servius* gives his opinion that the *Annales* were records of events that took place in former days, while the *Historiae* treated of events that took place during the lifetime of the Author. The *Commentarii* were records, or rather notes or *memoranda*. Under this head come Caesar's Commentaries. It is probable Caesar intended to work up and present his in a different form, but, as Cicero says, their merit was such in the eyes of the discerning that all judicious writers shrank from the attempt to alter them.

There are *three periods* of Roman history.

(1) The *first extends from the beginning of the second Punic war to the birth of Caesar*. The compositions of this period went generally under the name of *Annales*.

(2) The *second period extended from Caesar's birth to the death of Augustus, 14 A.D.* The *flourishing period* of Roman history is contemporaneous with the development of oratory and poetry. The narratives of the historians are more ornate, the language more refined and the treatment of history better understood.

(3) The *third period may be dated after the death of Augustus*. The only historian of note is Tacitus, who flourished under the fostering care of Trajan. The decay of history was caused by the death of political liberty. All history, as well as all poetry, that was not adulation was treason under the cruel despotism of the successors of Augustus.

The following is a list of the principal Roman Historians:—

NAMES.	FLOURISHED.	WORKS.
Q. Fabius Pictor.	220 B.C.	History of Punic Wars (in Greek).
L. Cincius Alimentus.	220 B.C.	History of Punic Wars (in Greek).
C. Acilius Glabrio.	220 B.C.	History of Punic Wars (in Greek).
M. Porcius Cato.	220 B.C.	Origines.
L. Cassius Hemina.	150 B.C.	Annales.
Q. Fabius Maximus.	150 B.C.	Annales.
C. Fannius.	150 B.C.	Annales.
C. Sempronius.	150 B.C.	Annales.
L. Caelius Antipater.	120 B.C.	Annales.
C. Licinius Macer.	100 B.C.	Annales.
Cn. Gellius.	100 B.C.	Annales.
L. Calpurnius Piso.	100 B.C.	Annales.
Q. Claudius.	100 B.C.	Annales.
Q. Valerius Antias.	100 B.C.	Annales.
L. Cornelius Sisenna.	100 B.C.	Historiæ.
P. Sempronius Asellio.	100 B.C.	Historiæ.
Lucius Luceius.	80 B.C.	History of the Social and Marsic Wars.
Licinius Lucullus.	70 B.C.	History of the Social Wars.
Ælius Tubero.	60 B.C.	Annales.
C. Iulius Caesar.	60 B.C.	Commentarii de Bello Gallico; de Bello Civili.
Cornelius Nepos.	60 B.C.	Libri Exemplorum.
C. Sallustius.	50 B.C.	Bellum Catilinarium; Bellum Jugurthinum.
Asinius Pollio.	50 B.C.	History of the Civil War.
Trogus Pompeius.	50 B.C.	Historiæ Philippicæ.
T. Livius.	10 B.C.	Annales.
Velleius Paterculus.	10 B.C.	Historiæ.
Cn. Cornelius Tacitus.	70 A.D.	Historiæ and Annales.
C. Suetonius Tarquillas.	70 A.D.	XII. Cæsarum Vitæ.
Q. Curtius Rufus.	100 A.D.	Alexandri Magni Vita.
L. Annæus Florus.	100 A.D.	De Rebus Romanis.
C. Plinius Secundus.	100 A.D.	De Bello Germano Historiæ.

INTRODUCTORY NOTE TO BELLUM BRITANNICUM.

Britain in the earliest times bore the name of *Albion*, and was visited long before the time of Caesar by Phoenicians, Carthaginians and Greeks for the purpose of obtaining tin.

Roman Connection with Britain (henceforth called *Britannia*) dates from **55 B.C.**, the year of Caesar's first invasion, to **410 A.D.**, when the Romans, hard pressed in Italy by the Goths and the Vandals, were compelled to withdraw their forces from Britain in order to defend themselves at home.

Caesar did not occupy Britain. He simply made two military landings for the purpose of completing the subjugation of Gaul by intimidating the British Celts from giving further aid to their Gallic kinsmen. Hence it is that the chapters known as "*Bellum Britannicum*" were written as part of



BRITANNIA
under the Romans.
CALEDONIA
Tava
Boderia (Firth of Forth)
ANTONINE'S WALL
VALENTIA
HADRIAN'S WALL
Tina (Tyne)
HIBERNIA
(Solway Firth)
MAXIMA
MONÆDA V. MONA (Isle of Man)
Eboracum (York)
CÆSARIENSIS
MONA (Anglesey)
FLAVIA
CÆSARIENSIS
BRITANNIA SECUNDA (Wales)
Silures
Iceni
(St Albans)
Londinium
Tamesis
Cantium
Rhutupiae
(Dover)
PRIMA
BRITANNIA
Anderida
Itius Portus
(Boulogne)
VECTIS
OCEANUS
BRITANNICUS
GALLIA

Caesar's commentaries *De Bello Gallico*. The history of these two landings in 55 B.C. and 54 B.C. comprises Chapters 20-36 of Book IV., and Chapters 8-23 of Book V., Bellum Gallicum. We learn from the concluding chapters that the only result of Caesar's invasion was to humble Cassivellaunus, under whom the Britons had temporarily united, and to secure hostages and an annual tribute to be paid by Britain to the Roman people. Caesar withdrew his forces and Britain was not again molested for nearly a hundred years.

Roman Occupation began under the Emperor Claudius in 43 A.D. Forty years later the great Roman general Agricola, after defeating the "large-limbed and red-haired" Caledonians at Mons Grampius, pushed north as far as the Moray Firth. He built a chain of forts between the Clyde and the Forth, and did more than any other Roman general to civilize the Britons.

In 120 A.D., **Hadrian's Wall** was built between the Solway and the Tyne, and this henceforth formed the boundary between Caledonia and the Roman province Britannia. The Roman capital was York (Eboracum). The withdrawal of the Roman military forces in 410 A.D. left the island a prey to pirates from Germany and the North. Hence the advent of the Picts and the Scots, the Angles, Saxons and Danes.

Roman occupation of Britain has left behind many lasting traces. During this period the inhabitants first learned to live in towns and engage in industries. Christianity was first introduced into the island through the medium of the Roman military. Roman roads still stretch in many directions through the island. The ruins of Roman walls and camps are still to be seen in various parts of England, and many geographical names owe their origin to Latin words, *e.g.*, Lancaster, Chester, Lincoln from *castra* and *colonia*. Thus it may be said that Caesar's two demonstrations of Roman power in 55 and 54 B.C. paved the way to the modern civilization of Britain, as exhibited in the *social condition*, *the religion*, and *the language* of the people. Hence the Bellum Britannicum must for all time possess a special interest for English-speaking readers the world over.

THE ROMAN EXPEDITIONS TO BRITAIN.

1st Expedition.

55 B.C. —At the close of this year **Julius Caesar** lands, but stays only a few days.

54 B.C. —Caesar again lands, defeats **Cassivellaunus**, King of the Cassi, and penetrates as far as St. Albans.

2nd Expedition.

In consequence of the civil wars from 49 B.C. 31 B.C., Britain was neglected by the Romans. The policy of Augustus (31 B.C.–14 A.D.) was non-agressive, and Tiberius (14 A.D.–37 A.D.) adhered to the example of his predecessor. Caligula (37 A.D. 41 A.D.) intended to subdue Britain but nothing was done.

43 A.D.—Bericus, a petty king, having been expelled from the island, appealed to **Claudius**, who took up his cause. Aulus Plautius was sent out and defeated **Caractacus** and Togodumnus. Claudius also in person commanded at a victory which he gained near the Thames.

49 A.D.—Ostorius Scapula succeeded, and built a line of forts from the Avon to the Nen. He defeated the Silures and made Caractacus a prisoner.

59 A.D.—Suetonius Paulinus succeeded, and defeated the Iceni and Trinobantes under **Boadicea**.

3rd Expedition.

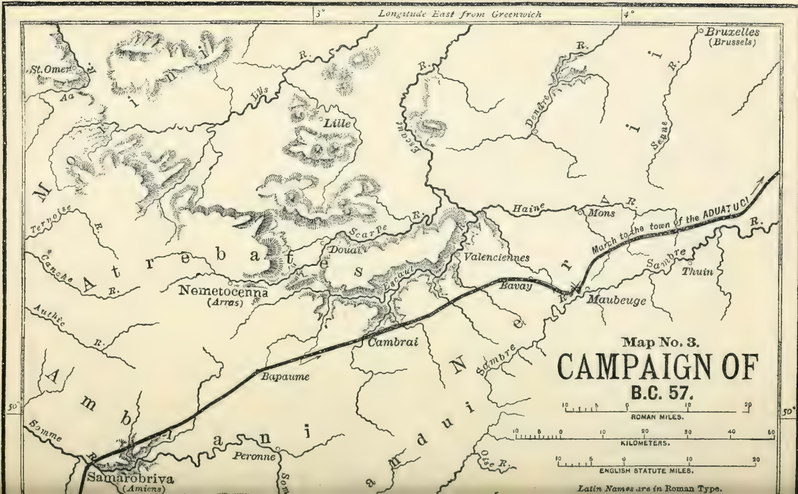
78 A.D.—**Agricola** succeeds, and reduces Mona (Anglesey).

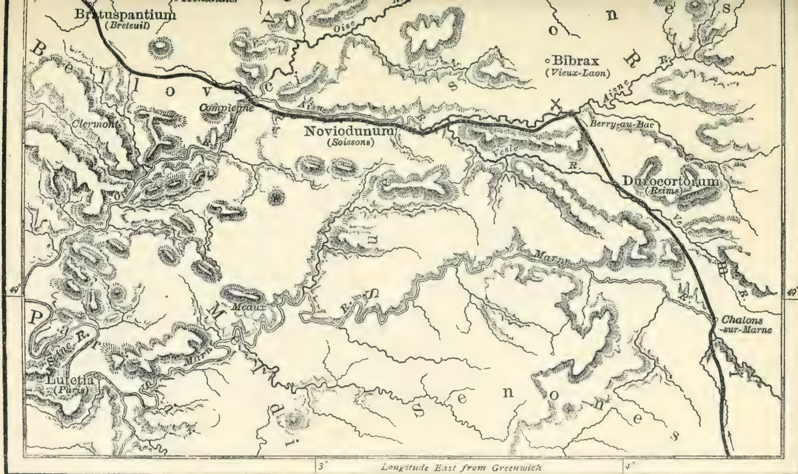
89 A.D.—He advances as far as the Tay, and defeats **Galgacus**, at the foot of the Grampians or **Mons Grampius**.

After this period the Romans maintained a pacific policy towards Britain.

120 A.D.—Hadrian's wall built and the Romans retire to the south of it.

410 A.D.—The Romans withdraw.


Map No. 3.
CAMPAIGN OF
B.C. 57.
ROMAN MILES.
KILOMETERS.
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
Latin Names are in Roman Type.
Longitude East from Greenwich
3°
4°
50°
Bruxelles
(Brussels)
St. Omer
Aa
Lys R.
Lille
Escaut
Dendre R.
Senne R.
Morini
Atrebates
Nervii
Ambiani
Viromandui
Ternoise R.
Canche R.
Authie R.
Somme R.
Scarpe R.
Douai
Nemetocenna
(Arras)
Haine R.
Mons
Valenciennes
Bavay
Maubeuge
Sambre R.
Thuin
March to the town of the ADUATUCI
Cambrai
Bapaume
Peronne
Samarobriva
(Amiens)
Oise R.


Bratuspantium
(Breteuil)
Bellovaci
Remi
Bibrax
(Vieux-Laon)
Suessiones
Oise
Aisne
Aisne R.
Compiegne
Clermont
Noviodunum
(Soissons)
Berry-au-Bac
Vesle
R.
Durocortorum
(Reims)
Vesle
Marne
R.
Marne R.
Chalons
-sur-Marne
Meaux
Meldi
Parisii
Seine R.
Marne
Lutetia
(Paris)
Senones
Oise
49°
3°
4°
Longitude East from Greenwich



C. JULIUS CAESAR.

C. IULI CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER SECUNDUS.

Historical Bearing of Book II.—The first book has narrated the two pretexts for interference in Gaul, the curbing of the Helvetii and the expelling of the German interloper Ariovistus. In other words, Caesar has shown that he began military operations in Gaul outside of the Roman Province simply as a keeper of the peace in the interest of his Gallic allies, the Aeduans. The second book now describes his terrible struggle against the Belgae to maintain the footing he has gained in Gaul, his complete triumph and the final assertion of a Roman protectorate over the whole country. The succeeding books relate the subjugation of Britain and the unavailing efforts of the Gauls to throw off the Roman yoke. Book II., therefore, forms the key-stone to the conquest of Gaul.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE BELGAE, 57 B.C.

All the Belgae rise against Caesar,

I.—CUM esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia in hibernis ita uti supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores adferebantur, literisque item Labieni certior fiebat omnes Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus, contra Populum Romanum coniurare obsidesque inter se dare: coniurandi has esse causas: primum, quod vererentur ne omni pacata Gallia ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur; deinde, quod ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur, partim qui, ut Germanos diutius in Gallia versari noluerant, ita Populi Romani exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Gallia moleste ferebant, partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis imperiis studebant; ab nonnullis etiam, quod in Gallia a potentioribus atque his, qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, vulgo regna occupabantur, qui minus facile eam rem in imperio nostro consequi poterant.

who marches quickly into their territory. The Remi surrender.

II.—His nuntiis literisque commotus Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas conscripsit, et inita aestate in interiorem Galliam qui deduceret Quintum Pedium legatum misit. Ipse cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet ad exercitum venit: dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea quae apud eos gerantur cognoscant seque de his rebus certiorem faciant. Hi constanter omnes nuntiaverunt manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conduci. Tum vero dubitandum non existimavit quin ad eos proficisceretur. Re frumentaria comparata castra movet diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

III.—Eo cum de improviso celeriusque omnium opinione venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legatos Iccium et Andocumborium primos civitatis miserunt qui dicerent, se suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem Populi Romani permittere: neque se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse neque contra Populum Romanum omnino coniurasse, paratosque esse et obsides dare

et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare: reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque qui cis Rhenum incolant sese cum his coniunxisse, tantumque esse eorum omnium furorem ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eodem iure et eisdem legibus utantur, unum imperium unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, deterrere potuerint quin cum his consentirent.

IV.—Cum ab his quaereret quae civitates quantaeque in armis essent et quid in bello possent, sic reperiebat: plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis Rhenumque antiquitus transductos propter loci fertilitatem ibi consedisse, Gallosque qui ea loca incolerent expulisse, solosque esse qui patrum nostrorum memoria omni Gallia vexata Teutonos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingredi prohibuerint. Qua ex re fieri uti earum rerum memoria magnam sibi auctoritatem magnosque spiritus in re militari sumerent. De numero eorum omnia se habere explorata Remi dicebant, propterea quod propinquitatibus adfinitatibusque coniuncti quantam quisque multitudinem in communi Belgarum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognoverint. Plurimum inter eos Bellovacos et virtute et auctoritate et hominum numero valere: hos posse conficere armata millia centum, pollicitos ex eo numero electa millia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimos: fines latissimos feracissimosque agros possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem nostra etiam memoria Divitiacum, totius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse regem Galbam: ad hunc propter iustitiam prudentiamque totius belli summam omnium voluntate deferri: oppida habere numero duodecim, polliceri millia armata quinquaginta: totidem Nervios, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habeantur longissimeque absint: quindecim millia Atrebates, Ambianos decem millia, Morinos viginti quinque millia, Menapios septem millia, Caletos decem millia, Velocasses et Veromanduos

Origin and forces of the Belgae.

totidem, Aduatucos decem et novem millia; Condrusos, Eburones, Caeraesos, Paemonos, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad quadraginta millia.

BIBRAX.

Caesar marches to the Axona: the Belgae attack Bibrax.

V.—Caesar Remos cohortatus liberaliterque oratione prosequutus omnem senatum ad se convenire principumque liberos obsides ad se adduci iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiacum Aeduum magno opere cohortatus docet quanto opere reipublicae communisque salutis intersit manus hostium distineri, ne cum tanta multitudine uno tempore confligendum sit. Id fieri posse si suas copias Aedui in fines Bellovacorum introduxerint et eorum agros populari coeperint. His mandatis eum ab se dimittit. Postquam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas ad se venire vidit, neque iam longe abesse ab his quos miserat exploratoribus et ab Remis cognovit, flumen Axonam, quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exercitum transducere maturavit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat et, post eum quae essent, tuta ab hostibus reddebat, et commeatus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus ut sine periculo ad eum portari possent efficiebat. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit et in altera parte fluminis Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallo fossaque duodeviginti pedum munire iubet.

How the Belgae storm a town.

VI.—Ab his castris oppidum Remorum nomine Bibrax aberat millia passuum octo. Id ex itinere magno impetu Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die sustentatum est. Gallorum eadem atque Belgarum oppugnatio est haec. Ubi, circumiecta multitudine hominum totis moenibus, undique lapides in murum iaci coepti sunt, murusque defensoribus nudatus est, testudine facta portas succedunt murumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiebat. Nam cum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conicerent, in muro

consistendi potestas erat nulli. Cum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius Remus, summa nobilitate et gratia inter suos, qui tum oppido praeerat, unus ex his qui legati de pace ad Caesarem venerant, nuntium ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

VII.—Eo de media nocte Caesar, iisdem ducibus usus qui nuntii ab Iccio venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios et funditores Baleares subsidio oppidanis mittit; quorum adventu et Remis cum spe defensionis studium propugnandi accessit, et hostibus eadem de causa spes potiundi oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morati agrosque Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis aedificiisque quos adire potuerant incensis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contenderunt et ab millibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fumo atque ignibus significabatur, amplius millibus passuum octo in latitudinem patebant.

Caesar relieves the town, and fortifies his camp.

VIII.—Caesar primo et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opinionem virtutis proelio supersedere statuit; quotidie tamen equestribus proeliis quid hostis virtute posset et quid nostri auderent sollicitationibus periclitabatur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiores intellexit, loco pro castris ad aciem instruendam natura opportuno atque idoneo, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex planitie editus tantum adversus in latitudinem patebat quantum loci acies instructa occupare poterat, atque ex utraque parte lateris deiectus habebat et in fronte leniter fastigatus paulatim ad planitiem redibat, ab utroque latere eius collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum quadringentorum, et ad extremas fossas castella constituit ibique tormenta collocavit, ne, cum aciem instruxisset, hostes, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes suos circumvenire possent. Hoc facto duabus legionibus quas proxime conscripserat in castris relictis ut, si quo opus esset, subsidio duci possent, reliquas

sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant.

CAMP NEAR THE AXONA ATTACKED.

IX.—Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent hostes exspectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos adgrederentur parati in armis erant. Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, secundiore equitum proelio nostris, Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt, eo consilio ut, si possent, castellum cui praeerat Quintus Titurius legatus expugnarent pontemque interscinderent; si minus potuissent, agros Remorum popularentur, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatuque nostros prohiberent.

The Belgae attack the position of Titurius,

X.—Caesar certior factus ab Titurio omnem equitatum et levis armaturae Numidas, funditores sagittariosque pontem transducit atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi magnum eorum numerum occiderunt. Per eorum corpora reliquos audacissime transire conantes multitudine telorum reppulerunt; primos qui transierant equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes, ubi et de expugnando oppido et de flumine transeundo spem se fefellisse intellexerunt neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnandi causa viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere coepit, concilio convocato constituerunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti, ut quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, et potius in suis quam in alienis finibus decertarent et domesticis copiis rei frumentariae uterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacum

but are defeated,

atque Aeduos finibus Bellovacorum adpropinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi ut diutius morarentur neque suis auxilium ferrent non poterat.

XI.—Ea re constituta, secunda vigilia magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris egressi nullo certo ordine neque imperio, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per speculatores cognita insidias veritus, quod qua de causa discederent nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Prima luce confirmata re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum qui novissimum agmen moraretur praemisit. His Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praefecit. Titum Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimos adorti et multa millia passuum prosequuti magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt, cum ab extremo agmine ad quos ventum erat consisterent fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent prioresque, quod abesse a periculo viderentur, neque ulla necessitate neque imperio continerentur, exaudito clamore perturbatis ordinibus omnes in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent. Ita sine ullo periculo tantam eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt quantum fuit diei spatium. sub occasumque solis destiterunt, seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

and pursued with awful slaughter.

NOVIODUNUM AND BRATUSPANTIUM.

XII.—Postridie eius diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere confecto ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quod vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem paucis defendentibus expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis vineas agere quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter

A forced march and attack on Noviodunum, which surrenders.

vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere iacto turribusque constitutis, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti legatos ad Caesarem de deditione mittunt, et petentibus Remis, ut conservarentur impetrant.

XIII.—Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditionem Suessiones accepit exercitumque in Bellovacos ducit. Qui cum se suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitu circiter millia passuum quinque abesset, omnes maiores natu ex oppido egressi manus ad Caesarem tendere et voce significare coeperunt sese in eius fidem ac potestatem venire neque contra Populum Romanum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi poneret, pueri mulieresque ex muro passis manibus suo more pacem ab Romanis petierunt.

The surrender of the Bellovaci also.

XIV.—Pro his Divitiacus, nam post discessum Belgarum dimissis Aeduorum copiis ad eum reverterat, facit verba: Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Aeduae fuisse: impulsos a suis principibus qui dicerent Aeduos a Caesare in servitutem redactos omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre, et ab Aeduis defecisse et Populo Romano bellum intulisse. Qui huius consilii principes fuissent, quod intelligerent quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacos sed etiam pro his Aeduos ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur. Quod si fecerit, Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificaturum; quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint.

Divitiacus pleads for the Bellovaci.

THE NERVII.

XV.—Caesar honoris Divitiaci atque Aeduorum causa sese eos in fidem recepturum et conservaturum dixit: quod erat civitas magna inter Belgas auctoritate atque hominum multitudine praestabat, sexcentos obsides popos-

cit. His traditis omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se suaque omnia sine mora dediderunt. Eorum fines Nervii attingebant: quorum de natura moribusque Caesar quum quaereret, sic reperiebat: Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus: nihil pati vini reliquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod his rebus relanguescere animos et remitti virtutem existimarent: esse homines feros magnaeque virtutis; increpitare atque incusare reliquos Belgas qui se Populo Romano dedidissent patriamque virtutem proiecissent: confirmare sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam conditionem pacis accepturos.

Facts about the Nervii.

XVI.—Cum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniebat ex captivis Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius millia passuum decem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedisse adventumque ibi Romanorum exspectare una cum Atrebatibus et Veromanduis finitimis suis, nam his utrisque persuaserant uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur: exspectari etiam ab his Aduatucorum copias atque esse in itinere: mulieres quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur in eum locum coniecisse, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

The Nervi await the enemy.

XVII.—His rebus cognitis exploratores centurionesque praemittit qui locum idoneum castris deligant. Cumque ex dediticiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesarem sequuti una iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt atque iis demonstrarunt inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse quicquam negotii, cum prima legio in castra venisset, reliquaeque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri: qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis futurum ut reliquae contra consistere non auderent. Adiuvabat etiam eorum consilium qui rem deferebant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitatu nihil possent -- neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed quicquid possunt,

They resolve to attack Caesar's advance guard.

pedestribus valent copiis, —quo facilius finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causa ad eos venisset, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis crebris in latitudinem ramis et rubis sentibusque interiectis, effecerant ut instar muri hae sepes munimenta praeberent, quo non modo intrari, sed ne perspici quidem posset. His rebus cum iter agminis nostri impediretur, non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii existimaverunt.

BATTLE WITH THE NERVII.

Position of the Romans and of the enemy.

XVIII.—Loci natura erat haec, quem locum nostri castris delegerant. Collis ab summo aequaliter declivis ad flumen Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebat. Ab eo flumine pari acclivitate collis nascebatur adversus huic et contrarius passus circiter ducentos, infimus apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris ut non facile introrsus perspici posset. Inter eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant: in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo pedum circiter trium.

The skilful attack of the Nervii.

XIX.—Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequebatur omnibus copiis: sed ratio ordoque agminis aliter se habebat ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam, quod ad hostes appropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat: post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocarat: inde duae legiones quae proxime conscriptae erant totum agmen claudebant praesidioque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi cum hostium equitatu proelium commiserunt. Cum se illi identidem in silvas ad suos reciperent ac rursus ex silva in nostros impetum facerent, neque nostri longius quam quem ad finem porrecta ac loca aperta pertinebant cedentes insequi auderent, interim legiones sex, quae primae venerant, opere dimenso castra munire coeperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab his qui in silvis abditi latebant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eos committendi proelii convenerat, ita, ut

intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituerant atque ipsi sese confirmaverant, subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt impetumque in nostros equites fecerunt. His facile pulsis ac proturbatis incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucurrerunt, ut paene uno tempore et ad silvas et in flumine et iam in manibus nostris hostes viderentur. Eadem autem celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra atque eos qui in opere occupati erant contenderunt.

XX.—Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum proponendum, quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurri oporteret, signum tuba dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, qui paulo longius aggeris petendi causa processerant arcessendi, acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas et successus et incursus hostium impediebat. His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, scientia atque usus militum, quod superioribus proeliis exercitati, quid fieri oporteret non minus commode ipsi sibi praescribere quam ab aliis doceri poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere, nisi munitis castris vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectabant, sed per se quae videbantur administrabant.

But the skill and experience of the Romans were of great assistance.

XXI.—Caesar necessariis rebus imperatis ad cohortandos milites quam in partem fors obtulit decucurrit et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione cohortatus quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent neu perturbarentur animo hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant quam quo telum adici posset, proelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causa profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induendas scutisque tegumenta detrahenda tempus defuerit. Quam quisque in partem ab opere casu devenit

The enemy attack before the Romans can arm themselves.

quaeque prima signa conspexit, ad haec constitit, ne in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

All is confusion.

XXII.—Instructo exercitu magis ut loci natura deiectusque collis et necessitas temporis quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cum diversis locis legiones aliae alia in parte hostibus resisterent, sepibusque densissimis, ut ante demonstravimus, interiectis prospectus impediretur, neque certa subsidia collocari, neque quid in quaque parte opus esset provideri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque in tanta rerum iniquitate fortunae quoque eventus varii sequebantur.

Legions IX and X on the left drive the Atrebates across the river.

The XIth and VIIIth in the centre rout the Veromandui.

The XIIth and VIIth on the right surrounded by the Nervii,

XXIII.—Legionis nonae et decimae milites, ut in sinistra parte acie constiterant, pilis emissis cursu ac lassitudine exanimatos vulneribusque confectos Atrebates—nam his ea pars obvenerat,—celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen compulerunt et transire conantes insequuti gladiis magnam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flumen non dubitaverunt, et in locum iniquum progressi rursus regressos ac resistentes hostes redintegrato proelio in fugam dederunt. Item alia in parte diversae duae legiones, undecima et octava, profligatis Veromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. At tum totis fere a fronte et ab sinistra parte nudatis castris, cum in dextro cornu legio duodecima et non magno ab ea intervallo septima constitisset, omnes Nervii confertissimo agmine duce Boduognato qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum locum contenderunt: quorum pars aperto latere legiones circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere coepit.

who seize the Roman camp.

XXIV.—Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armaturae pedites, qui cum iis una fuerant, quos primo hostium impetu pulsos dixeram, cum se in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrebant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant: et calones, qui ab decumana porta ac summo iugo collis nostros victores flumen transisse conspexerant, praedandi causa egressi, cum respexissent

et hostes in nostris castris versari vidissent, praecipites fugae sese mandabant. Simul eorum qui cum impedimentis veniebant clamor fremitusque oriebatur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferebantur. Quibus omnibus rebus permoti equites Treveri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singularis, qui auxilii causa ab civitate missi ad Caesarem venerant, cum multitudine hostium castra nostra compleri, legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri, calones, equites, funditores, Numidas, diversos dissipatosque, in omnes partes fugere vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus, domum contenderunt: Romanos pulsos superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostes potitos civitati renuntiaverunt.

The Treveri desert.

XXV.—Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis signiferoque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo Publio Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto ut iam se sustinere non posset; reliquos esse tardiores, et nonnullos ab novissimis deserto proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostes neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere et ab utroque latere instare, et rem esse in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse subsidium quod submitti posset, scuto ab novissimis uni militi detracto, quod ipse eo sine scuto venerat, in primam aciem processit centurionibusque nominatim appellatis reliquos cohortatus milites signa inferre et manipulos laxare iussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent. Cuius adventu spe illata militibus ac redintegrato animo, cum pro se quisque in conspectu imperatoris et iam in extremis suis rebus operam navare cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardatus est.

Caesar to the rescue of the XIIth.

His courage and coolness.

XXVI.—Caesar cum septimam legionem, quae iuxta constiterat item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum

The Romans rally.

monuit ut paulatim sese legiones coniungerent et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, cum alius alii subsidium ferret, neque timerent ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare coeperunt. Interim milites legionum duarum, quae in novissimo agmine praesidio impedimentis fuerant, proelio nuntiato, cursu incitato, in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur. Et Titus Labienus castris hostium potitus et ex loco superiore quae res in nostris castris gererentur conspicatus decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit. Qui cum ex equitum et calonum fuga, quo in loco res esset, quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

The xth to the rescue.

XXVII.—Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio facta est ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuissent, scutis innixi proelium redintegrarent, tum calones perterritos hostes conspicati etiam inermes armatis occurrerent, equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtute delerent, omnibus in locis pugnae se legionariis militibus praeferrent. At hostes etiam in extrema spe salutis tantam virtutem praestiterunt ut, cum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi iacentibus insisterent atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent: his deiectis et coacervatis cadaveribus, qui superessent, ut ex tumulo tela in nostros conicerent et pila intercepta remitterent: ut non nequiquam tantae virtutis homines iudicari deberet ausos esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo redegerat.

Finally the Nervii are routed.

XXVIII.—Hoc proelio facto et prope internecionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto maiores natu, quos una cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes collectos dixeramus, hac pugna nuntiata, cum victoribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tutum arbitrarentur, omnium qui supererant consensu legatos ad Caesarem miserunt seque ei dediderunt, et in commemoranda civitatis cala-

Caesar's clemency.

mitate ex sexcentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum millibus sexaginta vix ad quingentos qui arma ferre possent sese redactos esse dixerunt. Quos Caesar, ut in miseros ac supplices usus misericordia videretur, diligentissime conservavit suisque finibus atque oppidis uti iussit, et finitimis imperavit ut ab iniuria et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.

THE ADUATUCI.

XXIX.—Aduatuci, de quibus supra scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio Nerviis venirent, hac pugna nuntiata ex itinere domum reverterunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppidum egregie natura munitum contulerunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus altissimas rupes despectusque haberet, una ex parte leniter acclivis aditus in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum relinquebatur: quem locum duplici altissimo muro munierant, tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacutas trabes in muro collocarant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prognati, qui, cum iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iis impedimentis, quae secum agere ac portare non poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis custodiam ex suis ac praesidio sex millia hominum reliquerunt. Hi post eorum obitum multos annos a finitimis exagitati, cum alias bellum inferrent, alias illatum defenderent, consensu eorum omnium pace facta hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.

The Aduatuci prepare for a desperate resistance.

XXX.—Ac primo adventu exercitus nostri crebras ex oppido excursiones faciebant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendebant: postea vallo pedum duodecim in circuitu quindecim millium crebrisque castellis circummuniti oppido sese continebant. Ubi vineis actis aggere exstructo turrim procul constitui viderunt, primum irridere ex muro atque increpitare vocibus, quod tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio institueretur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim homines tantulae staturae, nam plerumque hominibus Gallis prae magnitu-

They taunt the Romans from the walls,

dine corporum suorum brevitas nostra contemptui est, tanti oneris turrim in muro sese collocare confiderent?

XXXI.—Ubi vero moveri et appropinquare moenibus viderunt, nova atque inusitata specie commoti legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui ad hunc modum loquuti: Non se existimare Romanos sine ope divina bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tanta celeritate promovere et ex propinquitate pugnare possent, se suaque omnia eorum potestati permittere dixerunt. Unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret: sibi omnes fere finitimos esse inimicos ac suae virtuti invidere, a quibus se defendere traditis armis non possent. Sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a Populo Romano pati quam ab his per cruciatum interfici inter quos dominari consuessent.

but they soon lose confidence and offer to surrender.

XXXII.—Ad haec Caesar respondit: Se magis consutudine sua quam merito eorum civitatem conservaturum, si prius quam murum aries attigisset se dedidissent: sed deditionis nullam esse conditionem nisi armis traditis: se id quod in Nerviis fecisset facturum finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam dediticiis Populi Romani iniuriam inferrent. Re nuntiata ad suos, quae imperarentur facere dixerunt. Armorum magna multitudine de muro in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iacta sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adaequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut postea perspectum est, celata atque in oppido retenta, portis patefactis eo die pace sunt usi.

They must disarm, but are promised protection.

XXXIII.—Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque ex oppido exire iussit ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus iniuriam acciperent. Illi ante inito, ut intellectum est, consilio, quod deditione facta nostros praesidia deducturos aut denique indiligentius servaturos crediderant, partim cum his quae retinuerant et celaverant armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis, quae

The final struggle and terrible fate of the Nervii.

subito, ut temporis exiguitas postulabat, pellibus induxerant, tertia vigilia, qua minime arduus ad nostras munitiones ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis repentino ex oppido eruptionem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus significatione facta, ex proximis castellis eo concursum est, pugnatumque ab hostibus ita acriter ut a viris fortibus in extrema spe salutis iniquo loco contra eos qui ex vallo turribusque tela iacerent pugnari debuit, cum in una virtute omnis spes salutis consisteret. Occisis ad hominum millibus quatuor reliqui in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridie eius diei refractis portis, cum iam defenderet nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris sectionem eius oppidi universam Caesar vendidit. Ab his qui emerant capitum numerus ad eum relatus est millium quinquaginta trium.

XXXIV.—Eodem tempore a Publio Crasso, quem cum legione una miserat ad Venetos, Unellos, Osismios, Curiosolitas, Sesuvios, Aulercos, Rhedones, quae sunt maritimae civitates Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnes eas civitates in ditionem potestatemque Populi Romani esse redactas.

All the maritime states submit to the Romans.

XXXV.—His rebus gestis omni Gallia pacata, tanta huius belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est uti ab his nationibus quae trans Rhenum incolerent mitterentur legati ad Caesarem, qui se obsides daturas, imperata facturas pollicerentur ; quas legationes Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properabat, inita proxima aestate ad se reverti iussit. Ipse in Carnutes, Andes, Turonesque, quae civitates propinquae his locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus in hiberna deductis, in Italiam profectus est : ob easque res ex literis Caesaris dies quindecim supplicatio decreta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.

A thanksgiving for the conquest of Gaul decreed.

NOTES.

BOOK II.

NOTES.

BOOK II.

NOTE.—F.L. = First Latin Book ; P.L. = Primary Latin Book. In the case of the former the numbers refer to the *pages* and *sections* ; of the latter, the Roman numerals refer to the *part* of the book, and the Arabic to the *sub-section*.

CHAPTER I.

esset : for subjunctive : F.L. 203, 3 ; P.L. II., 169. The date is 57 B.C., in the consulship of P. Cornelius Lentulus and Q. Metellus Nepos.

in hibernis : *hiberna* generally means the winter quarters of an army engaged in a war. Here *in hibernis* may mean, "at the place where he was spending the winter."

ita uti : "just as."

quam : agrees with the word in the predicate rather than with its regular antecedent : translate, however : "who, as we have said, form the third part of Gaul."

coniurare : "had formed a league." There is no necessity to take this word here in the sense of "to form a conspiracy" : cp. Greek *συνωμοσία*, "a league."

inter se dare : "were exchanging." Explain the tense of the inf.

quod vererentur : the subjunctive shows that the reasons were given on the authority of the Belgae : F.L. 198, 2 ; P.L. II., 165 (b).

Gallia = Gallia Celtica : the central part of Gaul is meant.

partim qui : "some of whom" : *partim—partim* refer to *nonnullis Gallis*, who are classed in two divisions. The word *partim*, though accusative in form, is used by Caesar and Cicero as a word of distribution without any respect to its case.

ut—ita : "as—so."

inveterascere: "should become settled": literally, "should grow old."

moleste ferebant = *χαλεπῶς ἔφερον*: "they were annoyed."

partim—studebant: "(while) others of these, in consequence of their instability and fickleness of disposition, were aiming at a revolution."—*imperiis*: F.L. 105, 9; P.L. II., 55.

ab nonnullis etiam, scil. *quod sollicitarentur*: "thirdly because they were being instigated by a few, since in Gaul power was commonly being seized by the more powerful and by those who had means to hire men (and) who were able less easily to carry out this object under our sway." Note the different clauses in opposition to *causas* are introduced by *primum*, *deinde*, *etiam*.

imperio nostro: "under our sway": abl. of time and cause.

CHAPTER II.

nuntiis literisque: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (a).

duas legiones: the XIII. and XIV. Caesar now had eight legions, numbering from VII. to XIV. inclusive. The regular soldiers with the auxiliaries in Gaul would now number about 60,000 men.

inita aestate: abl. absolute: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II., 48. Join this to *qui deduceret*.

interiorem Galliam: "into central Gaul.

qui deduceret, scil. *eas*: "to lead them." For *qui*=*ut is*: F. L. 184, 1; P.L. II., 25.

cum—inciperet: the subjunctive is used because the abundance of fodder was the occasion of his coming: F. L. 198, 3; P. L. II., 167.

exercitum: probably now at Vesontio *(Besançon)*.

dat negotium: historical present: "he directs." What is the rule for the sequence of tenses? Is it observed here? F.L. 178, 2; P.L. II., 28.

finitimi Belgis: What adjectives govern the dative? F.L. 60, 2; P.L. II., 102.

gerantur: for the subjunctive: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. II., 43.

se certiorem: why not *eum certiorem?* F.L. 105, 7; P.L. III., 91.

constanter: "uniformly," "unanimously."

tum—proficisceretur: "then, indeed, he thought that he ought not to delay about setting out against them": the negative *quin* introduces the dependent clause because of the negative character of the main statement. This idiom is still preserved in French: *je ne doutais pas que vous n'eussiez raison*: F.L. 188, 6; P.L. II., 156. Note that *non dubitare* with infinitive denotes an *act* done without hesitation: cp. Caesar *de Bell. Gall.* 23: *transire flumen non dubitaverunt*, while *non dubitare quin* with subjunctive, denotes a *resolution* made without hesitation.

CHAPTER III.

eo=ad fines Belgarum.

de improviso: cf. the English colloquial phrase, "of a sudden"; "unexpectedly."

celerius omni opinione: "more quickly than any one had expected": literally, "than every expectation": F.L. 55, 5; P.L. II., 123 (c).

Remi: for the boundaries of these people, see Proper Names.

proximi Galliae: for the dative: F.L. 60, 2; P.L. II., 102. What other constructions may *proximi* have?

ex Belgis=inter Belgas.

qui—dicerent: *qui=ut ei*, hence the subjunctive: F.L. 184, 1; P.L. II., 25. In what other ways may this be expressed?

se: give chief rules for oblique narration: F.L. 209; P.L. II., 212-219.

neque=et non.

omnino: note that *omnino* after negatives="at all."

oppidis: the *local* ablative.

iuvare, scil., *eum*, i.e., *Caesarem.*

cis Rhenum: Caesar is writing from the standpoint of the Roman *Provincia*: cp. *Gallia Citerior*, *Gallia Cisalpina.*

his=Belgis.—eorum omnium=Belgarum et Germanorum.

ne—quidem: the emphatic word comes between *ne* and *quidem*. Note that *Suessiones* is the object of *deterrere.*

iure—legibus: for ablative: F.L. 116; P.L. II., 65. *ius* is often used in the sense of political rights as here: cp. *ius civitatis*, *ius Romanum*: *lex* is properly an enactment made in the Roman *comitia.*

utantur: why subjunctive? F.L. 209 (2); P.L. II., 214 (2): "though they enjoyed."

potuerint: governed by *ut*. Note *ut*, expressing a consequence never takes pluperfect subjunctive: "that they had been unable."

quin—consentirent: "from uniting": would *quominus* be permissible here? F.L. 185, 2 and note; P.L. II., 156.

CHAPTER IV.

quum: F.L. 203, 3; P.L. II., 169.

his: scil., *legatis*, mentioned in the beginning of the preceding chapter.

essent—possent: for subjunctive of indirect question: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. II., 43.

ortos a Germanis: it is probable that Caesar's statement here applies to those Belgae only near the German frontier. The main body of the people were of Gallic or Keltic origin. This is proved from the ancient Geographical names. Why is *a* expressed? F. L. 156, 4.

Rhenum: governed by the preposition *trans* in *traductos*: F.L. 96, 3; P.L. II., 72.

ibi: on the west bank of the river Rhine.

memoria: ablative of time within which: "within the memory of."

omni—vexata: abl. abs.: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II. 49: "when all Gaul was harrassed."

Teutones Cimbrosque: the Teutones and Cimbri appeared first at Noreia, on the extreme N.E. of Italy, about 113 B.C. After devastating Northern Italy, defeating seven consular armies, both were defeated by Marius, the former at Aquae Sextiae (*Aix*) in Southern Gaul in 102 B.C., the latter at Campi Raudii near Vercellae in Northern Italy in 101 B.C.

ingredi prohibuerint: for subjunctive. What constructions may verbs of *hindering* take? F.L. 185, 2; P.L. II., 156.

fieri: the subject of this verb is the following clause: *uti—sumerent*.

memoria: for ablative: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (b).

omnia—habere: "that they had complete information." Properly *explorare* is, to find out a person by calling out his name.

propinquitatibus affinitatibusque coniuncti: *propinquitas*, properly called *cognatio*, is "kinship," the relationship that springs from common parents: *affinitas* is that derived from intermarriage. The *affines* of the wife are the *cognati* of the husband, *i.e.*, the husband's father, brothers, etc., while the *affines* of the husband are the *cognati* of the wife, *i.e.*, the wife's father, brothers, etc.

quisque: "each representative."

pollicitus sit: subjunctive of dependent clause in oblique narrative: F.L. 209 (2); P.L. II., 214 (2).

cognoverint: F.L. 209 (2); P.L. II., 214 (2).

conficere: "to muster."—*armata millia centum* = *millia centum armatorum hominum.*

sibi: the Bellovaci: *suos* refers to Remi subject of *dicebant.*

cum—tum = *non solum—sed etiam.*

Nervios: the names of peoples in the chapter show how persistently modern Geography preserves even in a corrupt form the memory of former days. The Bellovaci were settled near *Beauvais*; Suessiones, near *Soissons*; Ambiani, near *Amiens*; Caleti, near *Calais*; Atrebates, near *Arras*; Morini, near *Boulogne*; *Velocasses* had a capital Ratomagus, now *Rouen*; Veromandui were settled at *Vermandois* on the Upper Oise; the Menapii on the lower Scheldt; the Aduatuci, on the upper Meuse; *Condrusi*, near *Codroz*; Eburones and Caeroesi in the *Ardennes* region; the Paemani, in *Marche la Famine.*

Germani: the word is said to mean in Keltic, "hill-men," "highlanders": for other derivations see Proper Names.

CHAPTER V.

liberaliterque—prosecutus: "having dismissed them with friendly words."

prosequi verbis is a technical term, "to bid good-bye" to a person going into exile.

senatum: Caesar applies a Roman term to the council of the Belgae. So also Caesar: *de Bell. Gall.* II., 28, he uses the word *senatores.*

diligenter ad diem: "punctually to a day."

quanto—sit: "how important it is to the interests of the state and their

common safety that the forces of the enemy be kept apart that they may not be compelled to fight at one time with so great a number." *reipublicae*: F.L. 166, 3; P.L. II., 63.—*intersit*: for subjunctive:—*contligendum sit*: F.L. 183, 2; P.L. II. 25.

introduxerint: for mood and tense: F.L. 206, 4; P.L. 214 (3).

neque iam = *et iam non*.

flumen exercitum: F.L. 96, 3; P.L. II., 72.

extremis: reckoning from the *Marne* where Caesar entered the territory of the Remi.

quae res: "this position."

ripis: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (a).

et reddebat: construe *et reddebat* (*ea loca*) *quae essent post eum* (*esse*) *tuta ab hostibus*. For mood of *essent*: F.L. 188, 4; P.L. II., 34.

efficiebat ut: "made it possible that."

pedum: F.L. 130, 8; P.L. II., 115.

CHAPTER VI.

nomine: abl. of specification.

ex itinere magno: "while on a forced march"; cp. *ex itinere*: B.I., Chapter XXV. The expression shows there was no interruption of the march when the attack was made.

eo die: the ablative is sometimes used for periods of duration so short as to be equivalent to a point of time.

eadem atque: "just the same as."

ubi—subruunt: "when they have placed a continuous line of men all along the fortifications and begun to shower stones from every side upon the wall and (when once) the wall has been cleared of its defenders, then they form a *testudo*, push on to the wall and proceed to pull it down."—*circumiecta multitudine*: F. L. 100, 5; P. L. II., 49.—*totis moenibus*: abl. of place.—*coepti sunt*: why passive?—*murus*: distinguish in meaning *moenia, murus, paries, maceria*.—*testudine*: Caesar gives the tactics of the Belgae a Roman name. In forming a *testudo*, the Roman soldiers held their shields over their heads close to one another so as to form an unbroken defence against the missiles from above. It obtained its name from the

appearance the shield had to a *tortoise shell* (*testudo*). Note that *-que* sometimes as here connects actions described as happening at some distance of time from each other.

multitudo—conicerent: the plural verb expresses numerous separate and individual actions. Had the singular been used there would have been the idea of unity.

nulli: decline. Note emphatic position.

fecisset: F.L. 203, 3; P.L. II., 169.

summa nobilitate: ablative of description: F.L. 131, 9; P.L. II., 124 (3).

oppido: for dative: F.L. 120, 2; P.L. II., 104.

sibi—sese: Iccius.

submittatur: what is the force of *sub* in composition here?

CHAPTER VII.

eo; i.e., to Bibrax.

de media nocte: "soon after midnight": so *de tertia vigilia* is, "after the third watch was set": what would *tertia vigilia* mean?

iisdem—venerant: "using as guides the same persons who had come as messengers." For pronouns in opposition to nouns, compare note on *his ducibus qui iter cognoverant.*

Numidas, *Cretas*, *Baleares*: those three nations supplied the light skirmishers to the Roman armies. For an account of them see Proper Names.

subsidio—oppidanis: for the two datives: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. II., 75. Join *oppidanis* with *subsidio*, not with *mittit.*

quorum—discessit: "and at the arrival of these the Remi were inspired with eagerness to ward off the attack, as well as with the hope of a successful defence, while, for the same reason, the enemy gave up all hope of becoming masters of the town."—*adventu*; abl. of time and cause.—*et Remis—accessit*: literally, "there was both added to the Remi": F.L. 120, 2; P.L. II., 56.—*hostibus*. Note that many verbs compounded with *ab*, *di*, *ex*, as *adimo*, *discedo*, *eripio*, may take a dat. of person and acc. of thing in the active, or if they are intr., as here, a dat. of person.

potiundi oppidi: the genitive implies that *potior* may govern the accusative as it does in old Latin: Ter Adelph. 5, 4, 22: *miseriam omnem ego capio*, *hic potitur gaudia.*

morati, scil. *hostes.*

quos : account for the gender of the relative.

copiis : abl. of accompaniment.

ab—posuerunt : this construction is best explained by *hyperbaton* (inversion in order of words), the regular construction being : *posuerunt castra minus duobus passuum ab* (*castris Caesaris*). The abl. *millibus* is ablative of difference : F.L. 58, 6 ; P.L. II., 124 (d).—*minus*, *plus*, *amplius* have no influence on the construction : cp. *ἔλασσον*, *πλεῖον* in Gk. : *ἀπέχει πλεῖον σταδίους δέκα*.—*millibus* ablative of measure : F. L. 131, 9 ; P. L. II., 124 (3).

CHAPTER VIII.

propter—virtutis : "on account of their fine reputation for valour."

proelio supersedere : "to delay the battle."—*supersedeo* means primarily, "to sit upon" in the sense of a presiding judge : Cato R. R. 5, B. I. : *vilicus litibus familiae supersedeat* : then "to refrain from" a thing in the sense of passing it over ; hence, "to delay."—*proelio* : ablative.

equestribus proeliis—periclitabatur : literally "he kept trying to find out by cavalry skirmishes what the enemy could do by their valour and what daring our men had in skirmishing."—*proeliis* : ablative of means.—*posset—auderent* : dependent question : F.L. 176, 2 ; P. L. II., 45.—*periclitabatur* =*periculum faciebat*. The original meaning of *periculum* is "a trial," "a test."

loco—idoneo : "the ground in front of the camp being naturally well adapted and suitable for drawing up his troops." The present participle of the verb *esse* being wanting we often find an adjective agreeing in predicate relation with a noun in abl. absolute :—*ad—instruendam* : for gerundive : F.L. 170, 3 ; P.L. II., 140.

quod—redibat : "because that hill on which the camp was pitched, rising a little from the plain, extended in width towards the enemy far enough to form an army in line, and on both sides it had steep banks and in front gently sloping upward it gradually resumed a level."—*ubi* = *in quo*.—*tantum* : acc. sing. neut. of adjective : acc. of extent of space.—*adversus* : predicate adjective after *patebat—loci* : F. L. 69, 10 ; P. L. II., 114.—*lateris deiectus* : literally, "slopes of the side."

transversam fossam : "an intrenchment at right angles," to the direction of the hill.

ad—fossas : "at the end of the intrenchments."

tormenta : (from root TORC, "to whirl") was the generic term under which were included *balistae, onagri, scorpiones, catapulta.*

quod—poterant : "because they were so strong in numbers."

multitudine : abl. of cause.

legionibus : the XIIIth and XIVth, which he had raised the previous summer in *Gallia Cisalpina.*

si quo opus esset : "if any where there was need." Explain the tense of the subjunctive.

subsidio : dat. of purpose : "as a reserve force."

suas instruxerant = *suas copias ex castris eduxerant et instruxerant* : note that the Latins often express by a participle and a verb two co-ordinate clauses.

CHAPTER IX.

palus : distinguish in meaning *pălūs, pālŭs.*

hanc—erant : "the enemy were waiting to see whether our soldiers would cross this (marsh); our men, on the other hand, were under arms waiting to attack them (the enemy) when stuck fast (in the marsh), if they (the enemy) should first begin to cross it."—*hanc*, scil. *paludem.*—*transirent* : F.L. 96, 2 ; P.L. II., 95.—*si—fieret* : literally, "if a beginning of crossing (the marsh) should be made by them" : for the subjunctive : F.L. 209, 1 (2) ; P.L. II., 220.

proelio—contendebatur : "a cavalry battle was fought between the two lines." For the passive *contendebatur* : F.L. 164, 2 : P.L. II., 57.

secundiore—nostris : "the cavalry battle being more fortunate than usual to our men." For abl. abs. ; F.L. 100, 5 ; P.L. II., 52 (a).

eo consilio : "with the object."

castellum : a redoubt which Titurius occupied with six cohorts on the south bank of the Axona (*Aisne*).

expugnarent : distinguish in meaning *oppugno, expugno.*

si—potuissent : the construction is : *partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt eo consilio ut, si minus potuissent pontem expugnare et interscindere.* The tense in *potuissent* implies the condition after the attempt had been made.

nobis usui : F.L. 134, 1 ; P.L. II., 75.

commeatu : abl. of separation : F.L. 158, 2 ; P.L. II., 73.

CHAPTER X.

equitatum—pontem : for the two accusatives : F.L. 96, 3 ; P.L. II., 73.

levis armaturae : for genitive of description ; F.L. 130, 7, 8 ; P.L. II., 115.

eo loco : the battle is said to have taken place between the mouth of the little stream *Miette*, which flows through the marsh mentioned in Chapter IX. into the Axona (*Aisne*), and the modern village of *Pontavert*.

impeditos : "hampered in their movements."

circumventos interfecerunt=circumvenerunt et interfecerunt : see last note on Chapter VIII.

hostes : the main body of the Belgae who remained drawn up in battle array, differing from the *hostes impeditos* mentioned before who were simply a detachment.

oppido : Bibrax.

spem se fefellisse : literally, "that their hope had deceived them."

neque=et non.

iniquiorem : "less favourable" for them than the original position where the legions were drawn up.

constituerunt -esse—(ut) convenirent : *constituo* takes either—(1) the infinitive or (2) *ut* or *ne* with subjunctive, generally when the subjects of the main verb and dependent verb differ. Rarely do we find the construction varied in the same clause as here.

domum : what words are construed like the names of towns? F.L. 85, 1 ; P.L. II., 93 (a).

introduxissent : F.L. 209, 1, (2) ; P.L. II., 214 (2).

convenirent : in direct discourse this would be *conveniamus*, *convenite*.

copiis : "supplies" here : what are the usual meanings of *copia* in singular and plural? F.L. 278, 3 ; P.L. III., 54 (e).

finibus : for the dative ; F.L. 120, 2 ; P. L. II., 56.

his—poterat : "these could not be persuaded to delay any longer or to refrain from bringing aid to their countrymen."—*his* : F.L. 164, 1 : P.L. II. 57.

CHAPTER XI.

ea—constituta : express this by other constructions.

secunda vigilia : from 9–12 P.M.

castris egressi=*ex castris egressi* : for abl. : F. L. 158, 2 (1) ; P. L. II., 123 (a).

nullo imperio : "without any definite marching order," or "command." The abl. absolute is explained by *cum—tumultu* and by *cum—properaret*.

primum—locum : "the first place in the line of march," *i.e.*, to get at the head of the retreating column.

fecerunt—videretur : "they so managed matters that their setting out had all the appearance of a rout." For subjunctive : F. L. 187, 2 ; P. L. II., 33.

per exploratores. Distinguish this from *ab exploratoribus* in meaning.

nondum perspexerat : "he had as yet no intelligence."

exercitum=*peditatum* : as the foot soldiers made up the bulk of the Roman army, *milites* is often used for *pedites* : *exercitus* for *peditatus*.

castris=*in castris*.

qui moraretur=*ut is moraretur* : "to stop" : F.L. 184, 1 ; P.L. II., 25.

his=*equitibus* implied in *equitatum*.

novissimos, scil. *hostes* : "the rear of the enemy.

magnam—conciderunt : "slew a great number of them as they were fleeing." Distinguish *concīdo*, *concĭdo* in derivation and meaning.

cum—consisterent : "since those on the rear of their column, to whom the Romans had come, were making a stand."—*ventum est* : F.L. 164, 2 ; P.L. II., 57.

priores—ponerent : "(while) those in advance (of the rear guard), because they thought they were out of danger, and were not kept together by any necessity or command of their officers, when the shout reached their ears, all broke up their ranks in confusion and rested their hope in flight." *priores*, scil. *hostes* : those at the head of the retreating column.—*viderentur*

—continerentur: subjunctive by attraction.—*perturbatis ordinibus* is more closely connected with verb *ponerent* than the first abl. abs.: *exaudito clamore.—ponerent*: F.L. 198, 2; P.L. II., 165 (a).

quantum—spatium: "as long as the length of the day permitted," *i.e.*, as long as it was daylight.

CHAPTER XII.

postridie eius diei: *posteri die*, *cotidie* are locatives merged in a dative; cp. in old Latin *die quinti*, *die crastini*. Others take *posteri die* as ablative and compare *antea*, *postea—eius die* is a pleonasm. For the genitive cp. τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ τῆς μάχης.

priusquam se—reciperent: "before the enemy could recover themselves": F.L. 201, 5; P.L. II., 175.

magno itinere confecto: "by making a forced march." What was the length of a regular day's march? What, of a forced march? See Introduction, p. XXII., V.

Noviodunum: the ending *-dun* is Keltic for "town"; cp. *Lugdunum*: *Melodunum*: so that *Noviodunum* means *Newtown*. The modern *Soissons* (a corruption of Suessiones) is on its site, nearly 30 miles west of *Berry-au-Bac*.

ex itinere: "on his march."

latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem: note the *chiasmus*.

paucis defendentibus = *quamvis pauci (id) defenderent*: "though those who defended it were few": the abl. absol. is concessive here.

usui: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. II., 75.

vineas agere: "to get ready the *vineae*." The *vineae* were wooden frames, eight feet high, seven wide and sixteen long, protected with raw or wet hides. Under this protection the men advanced to the wall of the enemy, undermined the wall or filled up the ditch.

aggere iacto: "a platform being constructed." The *aggeres* were platforms for the artillery or for movable towers.

magnitudine—celeritate: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (a).

operum: "siege works."

Galli: appositive: "they, as Gauls."

et—impetrant: "and at the request of the Remi, they (Suessiones) obtained their wish that their lives should be spared."

CHAPTER XIII.

primis = principibus.

Bratuspantium: an old town *Bratuspante* which once stood near *Breteuil* in Picardie, at the head of the Somme Valley.

contulissent—abesset: bring out in translation the differences in tense: so also in *accessisset—poneret.*

sese—venire: "that they placed themselves under his protection and power."—*eius* may be both objective and subjective genitive and hence implies a mutual pledge being given.

neque = et non.

pueri: "children": not necessarily "boys" merely.

passis manibus: "with outstretched hands," expressing humiliation.

more: abl. of manner: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (b).

CHAPTER XIV.

pro his = pro Bellovacis: "in defence of these."—*cum = Caesarem.*

reverterat: conjugate this verb. What verbs are semi-deponent?

facit verba: "intercedes."

Bellovacos: what are the chief rules for oblique narration: F.L. 209, 1, 2; P.L. II., 213-220. In *verba facit* is implied *dixit* on which the indirect narrative depends.

omni tempore: note that the acc. *omne tempus* is not ordinarily used to express duration of time.

qui dicerent: "who kept saying": F.L. 209, 1 (2); P.L. II., 214 (2).

omnes—perferre: "endured every kind of ill-treatment and insult." Explain the use of the plural of abstract nouns.

qui: the antecedent of this is *eos* understood, the subject of *profugisse.*

principes = auctores: "advisers."

in Britanniam profugisse: Britain has often been a refuge for French agitators as in the recent case of Boulanger.

ut—utatur: "that he would exercise his well-known clemency and moderation towards them." What verbs govern the ablative? F.L. 116; P.L. II., 65.

fecerit: explain the fut. perf.

quorum—consuerint: "by whose aid and help, whatever wars happened they (Aedui) were wont to hold out."—*auxiliis—opibus*: abl. means. Change from *Bellovacos* to the end of the chapter into direct narrative.

CHAPTER XV.

honoris—causa: "out of regard for Divitiacus and the Aedui."—*Divitiaci*: objective genitive.

auctoritate: F. L. 131, 9; P. L. II., 124 (b) 3.—*multitudine*: F. L. 71, 3; P. L. II., 124 (a).

eo loco: Bratuspantium.

Nervii: these were looked upon as the most savage people of the Belgae.

natura: "character."

nullum—mercatoribus: "traders have no access to these." These traders were mainly from Massilia (*Marseilles*) and were probably Greeks and Italians who followed the Roman camp.

nihil—pati = (*eos*) *non pati quicquam vini*: "they do not at all permit the use of wine": for the partitive genitive: F. L. 69, 10; P. L. II., 113.—*reliquarum rerum* governed by *quicquam* implied in *nihil*. For a similar statement regarding the Belgae generally see Chapter I., B. I.

iis rebus: "by these enjoyments."

quod—existimarent: what two reasons for the subjunctive?—*Eorum*: would *suos* be permitted here?

increpitare atque incusare: "they rebuked and even blamed." Distinguish *et*, *atque* and *-que* as connectives. Supply *eos* as subject of *increpitare*, *incusare*.—*qui* = *quippe qui*: "inasmuch as they": F. L. 198, 4; P. L. II., 196.

CHAPTER XVI.

eorum = *Nerviorum*.

triduum: scil., *spatium*, acc. of duration of time = *tres dies*.

millia: note that *plus*, *minus*, *amplius* have no influence on constructions of extent of time or space.

in itinere: "(already) on the march."

mulieres—coniecisse: the construction is: *inveniebat* (*eos*) *coniecisse nulieres* (*homines*) *que qui*, etc.

CHAPTER XVII.

qui—deligant: "to pick out."—*qui = ut ei*: F. L. 184, 1; P.L. III., 25.

ex—Gallis: join this with *complures*.

dedititiis: the Ambiani, Suessiones, and Bellovaci.

eorum—perspecta: "the usual marching order on the part of our army during these days being observed."

eorum dierum: depends on *itineris*.

inter—intercedere: "that between every two legions a great number of beasts of burden were placed." Distinguish *impedimentum*, *impedimenta*, and *sarcina* in meaning. The *impedimenta* seem here to refer to the horses, waggons or any beast of burden used in transporting the heavy material of the army.

neque—adoriri: "and that there was no trouble, when the first legion reached the camp, and (when) the other legions were a long way off, in attacking this (legion) still encumbered with baggage." *negotii*: partitive genitive after *quidquam*.—*spatium*: F. L. 69, 9; P. L. II., 92.

futurum esse: depending on *demonstrarunt*, and having the clause *ut—auderent* for subject: "the result would be that the other legions would not be bold enough to withstand the attack": F. L. 187, 1; P. L. II., 33. —*reliquae*, scil., *legiones*.

adiuvabat—posset: "the following fact added weight to the advice of those who brought this intelligence, that the Nervii, long ago, since they could do nothing with cavalry (for up to this time they do not pay any heed to this branch of the service, but whatever power they have rests in their infantry), that the more easily they might obstruct the operations of the cavalry of their neighbours, if they came against them (Nervii) for the purpose of plunder, had caused, by lopping the trees when young and by intertwining the branches which grew out thick in a lateral direction and by interposing brambles and briars, these hedges like a wall to form a defence,

which far from being able to enter they could not even see through." Such is the literal translation. Break up the sentence into several separate sentences for a good English version.

antiquitus: explain the ending of the adverb.—*quo*: F. L. 183, 5; P. L. II., 26. *venissent*: F. L. 209, I (2); P. L. II., 214 (2).—*effecerant ut*: F. L. 181, 3; P. L. II., 208. *instar muri*: *instar* is an indeclinable substantive.—*non modo = non modo non*: cp. the Greek use of *οὐ μόνον* for *οὐ μόνον οὐ*.

non—consilium: "this plan should not be neglected by them": for dative *sibi*: F. L. 173, 4; P. L. II., 105.

CHAPTER XVIII.

loci—quem locum: the repetition of the antecedent with the relative is frequent in Caesar, especially when exactness is required. This place is said to be on the River Sabis (now *Sambre*) in France, near the Belgian frontier, about two miles S. W. of *Maubeuge*.

declivis: a hill sloping from the top to the bottom was called *declivis*: from the bottom to the top, *acclivis*.

huic—contrarius: "facing and opposite to this." There is little difference between *adversus* and *contrarius*: the former seems to mean that the two hills corresponded in form and extent.

passus—ducentos: some say that the hill began to rise about 200 paces from the margin of the river, others that it was 200 paces from the bottom to the top.—*passus*: acc. of extent: F.L. 69, 9; P.L. II., 92.

infimus apertus=infima parte apertus opposed to *ab superiore parte silvestris*; "thickly wooded on the top, so that it was not easy to see into it."

secundum: here a preposition: "down the river": we have also *secundo flumine*, *adverso flumine* for "down the river," "up the river": *secundo* and *adverso* being adjs. in abl. absolute, agreeing with *flumine*.

pedum—trium: genitive of description: F.L. 130, 7; P.L. II., 115.

CHAPTER XIX.

copiis: ablative of accompaniment: F. L. 12, 3; P. L. II., 124 (1).

ratio—detulerant: "the system and arrangement of the army was differ-

ent from what the Belgae had reported to the Nervii."—*habebat*: sing. from the *unity* of idea contained in *ordo ratioque*.—*ac*.: with words signifying difference, = "than."

suâ consuetudine: "according to his usual custom": abl. of manner.

expeditas: "without baggage."

duae legiones: the XIIIth and XIVth legions.

totum—claudebant: "brought up the whole rear."

praesidio impedimentis: for the two datives: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. II., 75.

identidem: "repeatedly."

neque—auderent: "and when our soldiers did not dare to follow those in retreat further than the level and open ground extended in front." *neque=et non.*—*quem ad finem=ad eum finem ad quem=usque eo quo.*—*porrecta*: literally, "stretching in front."

quae—venerant: "which had been the first to come up."

opere dimenso: "the work allotted to each being measured out." After picking out a place for the camp (Chapter XVIII., *locum idoneum castris deligere*), the six legions which first came up began to fortify the camp (*castra munire*) after the ground had been marked out for each by the surveyors (*castrorum metatores*, or *mensores*). Note that *dimenso* is passive. The participles of deponent verbs are used often passively: Madvig., § 153.

ubi—fecerunt: "when the first part of the baggage train of our army was seen by those who were concealed in ambush in the forest, which had been agreed upon among them as the proper time for beginning the battle, on a sudden they darted forth with all their forces, and made an onset on our cavalry in the same order as they had drawn up their line of battle and ranks within the woods, and as they had encouraged each other to do."

quod—convenerat: in apposition to the clause *ubi—visa sunt.*—*tempus*: predicate after *convenerat.*—*omnibus copiis*: abl. of accompaniment: F.L. 12, 3; P.L. II., 124 (1).

proturbatis: "driven forward in confusion." Another reading is *perturbatis.*

paene—tempore: "almost in one and the same moment."

ad silvas: "at the edge of the woods."

• *in manibus*: may mean what a person has under his hand; hence what

is in his power, or as here what is close at hand; cp. Sall. Bell. Jug. 1, 57: *cupere proelium in manibus facere.*

adverso colle: "up the hill": cp. *secundum* in Chapter XVIII. They made straight for the Roman camp with the hill before them.

CHAPTER XX.

Caesari: for dative: F. L. 173, 4; P. L. II., 105.

vexillum—dandum: notice the *asyndeton* in this sentence. Why does Caesar here use it?—*vexillum* (diminutive of *velum*, "a sail") was a crimson flag hung out from the *praetorium* as the signal of battle. Plutarch calls it *φοινικοῦς χιτών*, "a crimson cloak."

quum—oporteret: "when they had to rush to arms." Explain the subjunctive here: F.L. 203, 3; P.L. II., 169.

signum: "the signal of battle." The various instruments in Caesar's army were: (1) *tuba*: a trumpet, straight, with a funnel-shaped opening and used for giving signals to form in line, advance, and retreat; (2) *cornu*: horn, originally made of buffalo horn, gave the signal to the army to assemble and hear the address of the commander, or the sentence of death pronounced; (3) *bucina*: clarion was sounded to mark a change of watch. In Caesar's time the *lituus* was also used, though not mentioned by him. It was used for cavalry and had a harsh and high note.

qui arcessendi: "those who had gone a little too far to seek materials or the mound had to be summoned." The antecedent of *qui* is *ei milites* understood, subject of *arcessendi sunt.*

milites cohortandi: referring to the usual harangue (*militum cohortatio*) of the general before the action began.

signum dandum: it is better to take this—*signum committendi proelii dandum est*: "the first order to charge." Others say it refers to the *tessera* or watch-word given to the men, so that by calling it they might avoid mistake or confusion in distinguishing friends and foes. It was usually some auspicious term or name. The watch-word of Caesar was usually *Venus Genetrix*; of Brutus, *Libertas.* With *tessera*: cp. Greek *σύνθημα.*

successus: "approach" of the Nervii from below.

his—militum: "two things, namely, the skill and experience of the soldiers were of assistance to him to meet these difficulties."—*difficultatibus*;

dative, depending on *subsidio* :—*usus* : a more important word than *scientia* in Caesar's eyes. Note *ac*, or *atque* join words of which the latter is the more important.

non—poterant : "they were able to give the command to themselves with no less advantage than to receive the command from others." This shows the high degree of discipline to which Caesar had brought his legions.

ab—vetuerat : "Caesar had forbidden the different lieutenants to leave the fortifications and their respective legions, except after the camp was fortified." For distributive numeral : F L. 69, 8 ; P.L. III., 58 (c).

nisi—castris : the full construction : *nisi decessissent munitis castris* : for abl. absol.: F.L. 100, 5 ; P.L. II., 49.

nihil (=*ne hilum* : "not a mark," or =*ne filum*, "not a thread,") is here used for an emphatic *non*.

videbantur, scil. *administranda esse* : "but they did of their own accord what they thought ought to be done."

CHAPTER XXI.

necessariis—imperatis : "having given (only) the necessary orders": F.L. 100, 5 ; P.L. II. 49.

quam in partem—obtulit : the full construction is : *in eam partem quam partem fors obtulit* : "in the direction which fortune first presented."—*fors* : (from *fero*,) whatever fortune brings.

retinerent—posset : for the imperfect subjunctives. Note the force of the imperfect denoting continuous action.

neu =*et ne* : cp. Caes. *de Bell. Gall.*, 4, 17 : *ut—his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur neu ponti nocerent.*

animo=*in animo.*

quod—posset : this gives the reason for *signum dedit.*

quam quo=*quam ut eo* : "than the throw of a dart" : F.L. 198, 4 ; P.L. II., 196.

pugnantibus occurrit : "he finds them already engaged in fighting."

insignia : these seem to be the *cristae*, feathers black and red, and other ornaments worn by the Roman soldiers to distinguish the legions and cohorts. These were movable and were not worn on the march.

scutis: abl. of separation: F.L. 158, 2 (1); P.L. II., 123 (a). The *scutum* was protected on the march with a leathern cover to shield it from the effects of the weather.

quam—conspexit: the full expression would be: *hac in parte et ad haec signa quisque constitit, quam primam in partem devenit, et quae prima signa conspexit.* On ordinary occasions it was a serious offence for a soldier to be absent from his regular post.

in—suis = *in quaerendo sua* (*signa*): "in seeking out his own standard."

CHAPTER XXII.

magis—postulabat: "more in accordance with the position of the ground, the slope of the hill, and the urgency of the occasion than with the principles and arrangement approved of by military science." *magis ut—postulabat*: distinguish the use of the indic. and the subjunctive with *ut* following the comparative.

cum—resisterent: "since, as the different legions were scattered, different places held out against the enemy."—*diversis—legionibus*: abl. absolute.

resisterent—impediretur: for casual *quum*: F.L. 203, 1; P.L. II., 167.

sepibusque—interiectis: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II., 49.

provideri, scil., *poterat*: the subject of which is the clause *quid—esset.*

fortunae: genitive depending on *eventus*: "the varying success of fortune also followed": that is, some divisions were victorious and some defeated.

CHAPTER XXIII.

acie: genitive = *aciei*. Compare Aulus Gellius: *Caius Caesar in libro de Analogia secundo, huius die et huius specie dicendum putat.*

ea pars: the *sinistra pars* occupied by the soldiers of the IXth and Xth legions.—*his* = *Atrebatibus*.

ex loco superiore: the prepositional abl. absolute: "since they occupied the higher ground."

conantes, scil., *eos* (*Atrebates*): "as they (the Atrebates) were trying."

ipsi = *legionum nonae et decimae milites*.

transire: for infinitive after *non dubitaverunt* see note under Chapter II., B. II.

diversae : "separately."

erant congressi : scil. *milites*, from *legiones.*

ex loco—proeliabantur : "had gone down from the high ground and were fighting on the banks of the river." Explain the force of the imperfect.

nudatis: "being stripped" of defenders.

intervallo : abl. of difference : F.L. 58, 6 ; P.L. II., 124 (d).

latere aperto : their flank being left uncovered" : abl. abs. In this case *latus=latus sinistrum.*

summum—locum : "the height occupied by the camp."

CHAPTER XXIV.

levis armaturae: see note on *levis armaturae* : Chapter X., B. II.
adversis : "face to face."

decumana porta : the Roman camp had four gates : *porta praetoria*, in front, facing the enemy, and called from being near the *praetorium* or headquarters of the general ; opposite to this was the *porta decumana* in the rear of the camp, and so called because the 10th cohorts of the legion *(decima cohors)* were stationed there ; *porta principalis dextra*, in the centre on the right hand side of the camp, and *porta principalis sinistra*, on the left hand side.

respexissent—vidissent: F.L. 203, 3 ; P.L. II., 169.

quorum—singularis : "whose reputation for valour is very high among the Gauls."—*opinio* sometimes means, as here, the impression conveyed to others.

auxilia—civitate=auxiliorum loco ab civibus : "as auxiliaries by their countrymen." This accounts for *ab.* So also at the end of this chapter *civitate=civibus.*

castris: for ablative: F. L. 116 ; P. L. II., 65. *Potior* governs the genitive when it means *to be master of.*

CHAPTER XXV.

Caesar—scuto—detracto—processit: to this main sentence there is a long *prothesis* or introduction which may conveniently be divided into two parts, the first extending to *esse impedimento vidit*, and the second, to *submitti posset.*

ab—cohortatione=*ab decima legione quam cohortatus erat.*

signis—collatis : causative to *esse impedimento* : "since the standards (of the maniples) were crowded together." Distinguish *aquila*, *signum*, *vexillum* in meaning.

centurionibus occisis : this and the four succeeding ablatives absolute are causal to *reliquos esse tardiores* : "all the centurions of the fourth cohort were slain, etc., therefore, all the rest of the men were getting cowed." —*primipilo* : *primuspilus* was the first centurion of the first *manipulus* of the *triarii* and was the first in rank of the sixty centurions of the legion. He was entrusted with the eagle of the legion, ranked among the *equites* as regards pay, and had a place in the council of war along with the consul and tribunes.

et—excedere=*et nonnullos ab novissimis locum deserere ac proelio excedere* : "while some in the rear were quitting their posts and withdrawing from the battle." Others have *desertos* : "abandoned by those in the rear." It is better to supply *loco* with *deserto*. For *proelio* : F.L. 158, 2 ; P.L., 123 (a).

hostes—instare : "and that the enemy both in front did not cease coming up, and on both sides were pressing (our men) hard." With *instare* supply *nostris militibus*.

et rem—vidit : "as he also saw that the danger was great." With *angusto*, scil *loco*. We still in American *parlance* speak of a man being in a "tight place." The length of the sentence and the number of the dependent clauses led Caesar to repeat *vidit*.

subsidium : "reserves" : the XIIIth and XIVth legions were too far off to be of any assistance.

scuto—detracto : "snatching a shield from a soldier in the rear." In *uni militi* we have a dative of reference after *detracto*. Many verbs compounded with, *ab*, *de*, *ex*, like *adimo*, *detraho*, take in the active an acc. of the thing and dat. of the person, the latter instead of an abl. of separation. With this meaning of *uni* : cp. the English *a*, *an* : A.S. *ân*, Fr. *un*, all really same.

signa—laxare : "to advance and to open out their ranks." Distinguish *signa inferre*, *referre*, *convertere*, *efferre* : *ad signa convenire*, *a signis discedere*, *collatis signis confligere*, *signis infestis ire aut incedere*. The original meaning of *manipulus* was a handful (*manus*, *pleo*) of grass at the top of a pole referred to by Ovid. Fasti. III., 115. The pole was changed into a spear and the wisp of grass was replaced by gilded, silver, or bronze animals, of which the *eagle* was retained as the emblem of the legion.

Afterwards the animals were replaced by a round ball of metal.—*laxare*: to give full play to the sword and to lessen the deadly effect of the enemies' missiles.

militibus: dative; F.L. 120, 1; P.L. II., 69.

pro se quisque: "each man to the best of his ability."

etiam—cuperet: "even in the most critical moment desired to do his best."—*navare=gnavare*: "to do actively": cp. *gnarus*.

CHAPTER XXVI.

iuxta, scil., *duodecimam legionem*: "next to the twelfth legion."

ut—inferrent: "that the (two) legions should gradually draw together, face about and charge the enemy." The seventh legion took up its position in rear of the twelfth, so that it faced in the opposite direction and thus the two would present a double front to the enemy. The expression *conversa* would thus refer to the seventh only, the two forming thus one continuous line. For *conversa signa—inferrent=converterent signa et—inferrent*. Note this use of the participle gives a compactness to the Latin sentence.

ferret—timerent: F.L. 203, 1; P.L. II., 169. With *timerent*, scil., *hostes*. Explain the use of *ut* and *ne* after verbs of *fearing*: F.L. 185, 3, 4; P.L. II., 154.

aversi: "in the rear."

legionum—duarum: XIIIth and XIVth.

castris: the IXth and Xth legions under Labienus had driven the Atrebates across the river and gained possession of the enemy's camp.

gererentur—esset—versaretur: for subjunctives: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. II., 43.

qui: referring to *milites* implied in *legiones*.

versaretur: agreeing with the nearest nominative as the most important subject.

nihil—fecerunt: "they came up as fast as they could": literally, "they left nothing undone with respect to speed." For the partitive genitive *reliqui*: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. II., 113.

CHAPTER XXVII.

etiam qui—procubuissent: "even such as had lain down badly wounded":

literally, "spent with wounds." For subjunctive: F.L. 188, 5 (a); P.L. II., 34.

scutis innixi: "supporting themselves on their shields." Note that *nitor* and its compounds govern the ablative: F.L. 116; P.L. II., 65.

equites vero—praeferrent: the construction is *tanta rerum commutatio est facta ut equites vero—praeferrent*: "such a change in the battle took place that indeed the cavalry, to wipe out by their valour their disgraceful flight, put themselves in front of the common soldiers in every part of the field." For *militibus*: F. L. 120, 1; P. L. II., 69.

at: often used to introduce a new subject, or a transition from one part of a description to another.

in—salutis: "even in the utter despair of safety."

his deiectis: "when these in turn were struck down."

qui superessent: scil. *ei hostes qui superessent*: for subjunctive of indefinite antecedent: F. L. 188, 5 (a); P L. II., 34.

ut ex tumulo: "as from a hillock."

ut—locum: "so that it ought to be concluded, that men of so great valour had not without sufficient reason dared to cross a very broad river, ascend very high banks, (and) enter upon a very disadvantageous position." *nequidquam*, here=*frustra*. What is the usual distinction between *frustra* and *nequidquam?*

quae—redegerat: "all of which things, though in themselves most difficult, their great courage had rendered easy of accomplishment." *redegerat*=*reddiderat*.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

prope—redacto: "when the nation and name of the Nervii had been almost exterminated." There seems to be some exaggeration in this statement, as the Nervii aided the Gauls in their uprising against the Romans B. C. 52: see Caesar, *de Bell. Gall.* 7, 75.

pueris: "children."

quum—arbitrarentur: "since they saw that nothing would stop the conquerors nor defend the vanquished." On causal *cum*: F. L. 203, 1; P. L. II., 167.

omnium: depending on *consensu*.

millibus—sexaginta : in Chapter IV. the Nervii had promised 50,000.

vix ad quingentos : hyperbaton for *ad vix quingentos* : for a similar inversion of order, see Caesar *de Bell. Gall.* B. I., Chapter VI., *vix qua singuli.* Probably the exaggeration of the losses was for the purpose of exciting pity in Caesar.

possent: F. L. 209, 1 (2); P. L. II., 214 (2).

finitimis imperavit : translate, *milites civitati imperavit* : *militibus imperavit.*

CHAPTER XXIX.

supra : Chapter XVI., B. II.

omnibus copiis : ablative of accompaniment : F. L. 12, 3; P. L. II., 124 (1).

auxilio Nerviis : for two datives : F. L. 134, 1; P. L. II., 75.

venirent = in itinere essent : "were on the march."

oppidum : some say that this town, Aduatucum, was on the plateau at the junction of the Meuse and the Sambre, now *Namur*, not far from the field of Waterloo. Others say it was situated on the hill Falhize, on the north bank of the Meuse, opposite the town of Huy, some miles below Namur.

quod cum : "and though this (town)" : *quod = et id*, scil., *oppidum.*

despectus : "wide prospect :" owing to the height of the hill on which it was built.

in—pedum : join *ducentorum pedum* with *aditus.* For case of *pedum* : F. L. 130, 7; P. L. II., 115.

magni ponderis : F. L. 130, 7; P. L. II., 115.

ex—pugnati : according to some the name Aduatuci is purely Keltic, from *aduat*, "runners."

citra flumen : on the west side of the Rhine.

custodiam—ac praesidio : we have also *custodiam—ac praesidium* ; *custodiae—ac praesidio.* Some also omit *una.*

eorum : the Cimbri and Teutones who fell at Aquae Sextiae 102 B. C., and at Campi Raudii 101 B. C.

quum—defenderent : "when at one time they carried on an aggressive war (against their enemies), at another time warded it off when made upon

themselves." With *bellum inferrent*, scil. *hostibus*: with *illatum* scil. *sibi*. Observe that *inferre bellum*, not *invadere*, is the technical term "to invade."

CHAPTER XXX.

primo adventu: "as soon as they arrived": cp. *prima luce*: "as soon as day dawned."

parvulis proeliis: "in skirmishes."

pedum duodecim, scil. in *altitudinem*: for the genitive of description: F.L. 130, 7; P. L. II., 115.—*oppido*, scil. *in*.

vineis—constitui: the *vineae* were brought forward to cover the men who raised the platform (*agger*) on which the tower (*turris*) was to be placed and brought up to the wall. The men in the tower then drove the besieged from the wall: cp. Sallust. Bell. Jug. c. 76.—*turrim*: what nouns have (1) the accusative singular in *-im*: (2) in *-im* or *-em?*

irridere—increpitare: historical infinitives.

quod—instrueretur: the *quod* introduces the reason of the Gauls, not of Caesar: F. L. 198, 2; P. L. II., 165 (a).—*ab* properly governs *muro* understood.—*tanto spatio*: ablative of degree of difference: F. L. 58, 6; P. L. II., 124 (d).

tantulae staturae: "of such trifling stature": F. L. 130, 7; P. L. II., 115.

brevitas nostra = *brevitas nostrorum militum*.

confiderent: what would the form be in direct discourse? F. L. 209, 1 (5); P. L. II., 214 (a) 1.

CHAPTER XXXI.

moveri, scil. *turrim*.

specie: "sight."

non: join this with *sine ope divina*.

qui—possent = *quippe qui—possent*: "inasmuch as they—were able": F.L. 198, 4; P.L. II., 196.

quam—audirent: "of which they had constantly heard from others." *Audio*, as ἀκούω in Greek, has often a perfect meaning in the present. For the mood of *despoliaret*: F.L. 181, 3; P.L. II., 27, 208.

traditis armis = *si arma tradita essent*.

sibi—consuessent: "that it would be better for them, if they should be brought to such a condition, to endure any lot whatever at the hands of the Roman people than to be tortured to death by those over whom they had been accustomed to hold absolute sway." The subject of *praestare* is the part *quamvis—consuessent.*

CHAPTER XXXII.

consuetudine sua: "in accordance with his habit": of treating mercifully a defeated foe: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (b).

aries: generally the Romans spared the inhabitants, if the city surrendered before the battering ram was applied.

in Nerviis: "in the case of the Nervii."

ne quam: is *quam* here from *quis* or *qui?*

re—suos: "when the answer was reported to their people they said they were ready to do whatever was ordered (by Caesar)." *ad suos*: explain *ad.* Why may not *suis* be read for *ad suos?* F.L. 6, 3; P.L. II., 93 (a).—*facere*, scil. *eos*, i.e., *Aduatucos.*

muri, i.e., of the town: *agger*, of the Romans.

pace sunt usi: "they enjoyed peace," "they kept quiet." What verbs govern the ablative? F.L. 116; P.L. II., 65.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

sub vesperum: "at the approach of evening": cp. *ὑπὸ νύκτα.* There is also a reading *sub vespere*, which has not quite the same meaning. In Caesar, *de Bell. Gall.* 5, 13, *sub bruma* means "in the depth of winter." Sometimes *sub* with acc. means also "a little after:" Livy 21, 18: *sub hanc vocem—succlamatum est.*

illi: afterwards distributed by *partim—partim* so as to form a divided subject of *fecerunt.*

ante inito consilio: "having previously formed a plot."

quod—crediderant: what does the indic. here express? F.L. 198, 2; P.L. II., 165 (a).

deditione facta: express this in other ways.—*praesidia deducturos*, scil., *esse*: "would either withdraw their outposts," from the line of circumvallation where the Roman sentries kept watch. Supply *aut* with *deducturos* (*esse*).—*denique*: "at least," here=*saltem.*

scutis—intentis: "having made shields of bark or of osiers intertwined." The *ex* governs *viminibus* as well as *cortice*. Others take *viminibus intertextis* as abl. absolute.

tertia vigilia: with the Romans the civil day began at midnight and ended at midnight as with us; the natural day began at twilight and ended at dark. The day and the night were divided into twelve hours each, the length of each hour depending on the season. The night was also divided into four watches (*vigiliae*) of three hours each: from 6–9 P. M.: 9–12: 1–3: 3–6.

ascensus: because the Roman works were on a height above the level of the plain.

omnibus copiis: abl. of accompaniment: F. L. 12, 3; P. L. II., 124 (1).

repentino: adverb for the more usual form *repente* which some have.

ignibus: "by fire signals."—*proximis*: nearest that part of the town from which the sally was made.

concursum est: cp. *itur*, *ventum est*: F.L. 164, 2; P.L. III., 72 (h).

ut—debuit: "as brave men were bound to fight, when their case was nearly desperate, on disadvantageous terms against men hurling their missiles from a rampart and towers."—*in extrema—salutis*: the prepositional ablative absolute: F.L. 188, 5 (a); P.L. II., 34.

sectio: "booty," in this case the inhabitants as well as their goods. Properly speaking *sectio* was property sold on the public account whether it was property taken in war, or property forfeited to the *populus*, or property sold for the payment of a penalty. *Sector* was a purchaser of such property. Some say the word is derived (1) from *sequi*, "to follow," on account of the merchants (*mercatores*) following the army for the purpose of speculating in such property, or, (2) from *secare*, "to retail," because the purchaser (*sector*) retailed to the merchant what he bought in a lump.

millium quinquaginta trium: predicate genitive of characteristic: F.L. 130, 7; P.L. II., 115.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

Venetos: The names of the tribes here mentioned still survive in corrupted forms: *Veneti*, in the modern *Vannes;* Redones, in *Rennes;* Aulerci Eburovices, in *Evreux;* Sesuvios, in *Séez*. So in Chapter XXXV., Carnutes, Andes, Turones, may be seen in the modern *Chartres*, *Angers*, and *Tours*.

CHAPTER XXXV.

quae incolerent: for subjunctive of attraction: F. L. 188, 5; P. L. II., 220.

se: referring to *nationibus*.

qui—pollicerentur = ut ei pollicerentur: F.L. 198, 4; P.L. II., 196.

legationes = legatos: abstract for concrete.

Italiam: Caesar means Gallia Cisalpina, or Citerior, which, though within the natural boundaries of Italy, formed no part of Italy in a political sense at this time. Gallia Cisalpina was a *provincia*.

ex—Caesaris: "in accordance with the letters of Caesar."

dies—supplicatio: we have also mention of *supplicationes* in Caesar, de Bell. Gall., 4, 38; 7, 90. In these cases the genitive *dierum* is used. Of course *dies* is acc. of duration of time. A *supplicatio* was a religious thanksgiving and festival for a successful victory, proclaimed by a resolution of the senate and celebrated with or without a triumph.

accidit nulli: the longest celebration before this time was the *supplicatio*, lasting for ten days, in honour of Pompey's victory over Mithradates. Note emphatic position of *nulli*. See Chapter VI., B. II.

SHORT EXERCISES

BASED ON CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, B. II.

For Oral Translation into Latin.

I.

1. We have mentioned above that Caesar was in winter-quarters in Hither Gaul and that frequent reports were brought to him that the Gauls had formed a league against him. 2. The Gauls were afraid that Caesar would lead his army against them. 3. They were instigated by some tribes who did not wish the Roman army to remain in these places. 4. The people were constantly aiming at a revolution because they were annoyed (*moleste ferre*) that the Romans had conquered them. 5. They hired men who were able very easily to carry out their plans.

II.

1. Caesar was greatly disturbed by the letters and news which he received from his lieutenant. 2. At the beginning of the summer he enlisted two legions and sent his soldiers into the territory of the Belgae to carry on war. 3. He directs his lieutenant to find out what the Gauls were doing. 4. The lieutenant informed him that the enemy had collected large bands and had brought together a large army within ten days into one spot. 5. He thought that he should provide corn and that he should move his camp into the territory of the Belgae.

III.

1. Sooner than any one expected, Caesar came into the territory of the Remi, who dwelt next the river Rhine. 2. The ambassadors of the Remi, the leading men of the state, were sent to say that they would give up all their (possessions) to the Romans. 3. "We have not," said one of the ambassadors, "formed a league with the rest of the Belgae, nor have we entered into a conspiracy at all." 4. We are ready to aid you with (supplies of) corn and arms. 5. The Germans who dwelt across the Rhine were unable to deter them from forming a league with the Gauls.

IV.

(*a*)

1. He asked what states were in arms against the republic. 2. Most of the Belgae are descended from the Germans, and in ancient times crossed the Rhine. 3. They drove out all the Gauls from that district and prevented the Cimbri and Teutoni from entering their territory. 4. We found out how many men each tribe had promised for the war. 5. The Helvetii are the most powerful tribe of all Gaul on account of their valour, influence and number of population.

(*b*)

1. They promised to supply ten thousand picked men. 2. Among them lived a King, the most powerful of all Gaul, who held sway not merely over the greater part of that district, but also over Britain. 3. We entrusted to Galba the supreme command of the whole war. 4. On account of his valour, this man held sway (*regnum obtinere*) for many years among the Nervii. 5. All these tribes are called by the general (*unus*) name of Gauls.

V.

(*a*)

1. When Caesar had cheered the Remi by his speech, the whole senate came to him. 2. He orders the enemy to bring hostages to him. 3. He informed the Aedui how important it was for him that all things should be done punctually (*ad diem*). 4. "We must not fight," said he, "so many enemies at one time." 5. We began to lead our men into the territories of the Belgae. 6. Our men began to be led into the territories of the Belgae.

(*b*)

1. All the forces assembled on that day at one spot. 2. He hears from spies that the river Axona is about ten miles off. 3. He led his army across the river and pitched his camp on the farther bank. 4. The ditch and rampart rendered the rear of the camp safe. 5. He was able to convey corn to the camp without any danger.

VI.

1. The camp of Caesar was distant from the town about ten miles. 2. This town began to be besieged by the Belgae (with) all their forces. 3. When a large number of the enemy surrounded all the walls, they began to hurl stones from every side. 4. They formed a *testudo*, after they had

hurled stones and darts against the enemy. 5. Night put an end to the seige. 6. "Unless they send aid to me," said he, "I am not able to hold out long."

VII.

1. The archers and slingers were ordered to aid the citizens. 2. At the arrival of Caesar hope came to the Remi. 3. He delayed a few days in the neighbourhood of the town and devastated the territory of the enemy. 4. He burned all the villages which he could approach and pitched his camp (at a distance) less than three miles off. 5. It was plain by the camp-fires how great this camp was.

VIII.

1. He daily tested the valour of the enemy and the daring of our soldiers. 2. When it was noticed that our men were not inferior to the enemy, he drew up his line in front of the camp on a hill. 3. The hill in front gradually slopes to a plain. 4. The enemy were not able to surround our men because Caesar had planned a redoubt (*castellum*) on each flank. 5. The two legions which he had left in the camp he was able to hold as reserves.

IX.

1. The enemy crossed a small marsh while our men were waiting. 2. The general was ready to attack the enemy if they began to cross the river. 3. When both lines had been engaged in battle, the enemy were led back to their camp. 4. We have mentioned above that the river Axona to which the enemy set out, was in the rear of our army. 5. They led some of their forces across the river with the intention of destroying the bridge. 6. They devastated the lands of the Remi and kept our men from (obtaining) supplies.

X.

(*a*)

1. Titurius, who was of great service to Caesar, informed him that the archers had been led across the river. 2. In the plain a fierce battle is fought with the cavalry of the enemy. 3. Our men having slain a large number of the enemy attempted to cross the stream. 4. He said that he had been disappointed in crossing the river. 5. On that day corn began to fail the army.

(*b*)

1. He thought it was best for all the soldiers to return home. 2. After summoning a council, they led the soldiers into the territories of the Remi. 3. The Remi assembled on all sides to defend their homes. 4. They preferred (*malo*) to fight in their own territories rather than in those of another. 5. He could not persuade them to attack the Romans in battle or to bring aid to their allies.

XI.

(*a*)

1. They set out from home with great din at the fourth watch and hastened to reach the camp at daybreak. 2. Their departure seemed very like a rout. 3. This fact was learned by the spies, who, fearing an ambuscade, told Caesar why the enemy left. 4. Caesar sent forward all his cavalry to keep the enemy within the camp. 5. He appoints two lieutenants over the legions and orders them to follow closely with all the cavalry.

(*b*)

1. These lieutenants attacked the van and followed the enemy for three miles. 2. After many of the fugitives were slain, the rear of the enemy halted. 3. They boldly withstood the attack of our men since they saw they were out of danger. 4. Just before sunset they give up the pursuit and withdrew to the camp. 5. The general had given this order to his soldiers.

XII.

1. Before the enemy recovered from the panic the general set out for Rome. 2. The army was led by the commander into the territory of the Belgae who are next to the Germans. 3. He heard that he was not able to take this town by storm. 4. The camp began to be fortified with a ditch and rampart. 5. The Romans threw up a mound and built towers on the next night. 6. Ambassadors were sent to Caesar to treat for surrender and begged that the Romans spare them, their wives and children.

XIII.

1. Caesar received as hostages the leading men of the state and the two sons of King Galba. 2. After the Suessiones had been received in surrender, they gave up their arms. 3. All collected their property at the city of Rome, which was about five miles distant from that place. 4. All

the aged began to leave the town since they were not able to fight in battle against the Roman people. 5. According to their custom, when the Romans came to that place, after pitching their camp, they fortified it with a rampart and ditch.

XIV.

1. "The Bellovaci," said he, "are in allegiance to our state." 2. We have been instigated by our chiefs to say that we have suffered all kinds of insults. 3. Those revolted from the Aedui and carried on war against our state. 4. They fled into Britain because they knew what loss the enemy had inflicted on their lands. 5. They begged the Romans that they would show their mercy to them.

XV.

1. "I," said Caesar, "shall receive you into allegiance and will protect you." 2. Our state excelled the rest of Gaul in the number of the population. 3. They gave up their arms and surrendered themselves to the Romans without delay. 4. Nothing is imported into the territory of the Aedui which is supposed to tend to luxury. 5. He declared that he had not sent ambassadors nor had he accepted any conditions of peace.

XVI.

1. Through our territories he made a march of three days. 2. "The river Sambre is not," said he, "more than four miles distant from our camp." 3. The Nervii took up their position across this river and awaited there the arrival of the soldiers. 4. When he had persuaded the allies to await the arrival of our men, he found out that the enemy had crossed the river. 5. He collected all the women into a place to which ~~(of us)~~ there was no access, since they were useless for war.

XVII.

1. He learned all these things from the scouts who were sent forward to pick out a place suitable for a camp. 2. He afterwards learned from the captives that our route was watched by the enemy. 3. "It is no trouble," said he, "to defeat the Romans hampered-with-baggage *(sub sarcinis)*, since they will not dare to make a stand if we repulse them in battle." 4. Of old the Nervii were very powerful in infantry although they had no cavalry force. 5. No one was able to enter the brambles and briars which formed a protection to their territories. 6. Our journey was hindered by the hedges which the Nervii had made.

XVIII.

1. Our men chose as a place for the camp a hill which sloped to the river Sambre. 2. You could not easily see into it because it was covered with woods from the bottom to the top. 3. Amid these woods for many days the enemy conceal themselves. 4. Down the river were many outposts, which were seen by our men. 5. The river was about five feet deep.

XIX.

(a)

1. Caesar sent forward his cavalry to pursue the enemy. 2. The Belgae reported to the Nervii the place and arrangement of our line. 3. When the enemy approached our camp, Caesar, according to custom, led out the tenth legion against them. 4. The two legions which he had lately enrolled in Gaul were protecting the baggage. 5. He crossed the river with the slingers and bowmen to engage in battle with the enemies' cavalry.

1. After making an attack on our men they withdrew to the woods. 2. The legions which were the first to begin the battle pursued the retreating (enemy). 3. They agreed among themselves that this was the time for beginning the battle. 4. When they had drawn up their line and ranks among the woods they suddenly rushed forward from every side. 5. Almost at one and the same time the enemy rush down against our camp with incredible speed.

XX.

1. Caesar saw that he must do all things at one and the same time. 2. The soldiers had to rush to arms, had to form in line and advance against the enemy. 3. The onset of the enemy prevented a great many of those things from being done. 4. Amidst these difficulties the experience of the soldiers was of great service. 5. The soldiers were so trained by their former battles that they knew what they ought to do. 6. They did not wait for any order from the general, but carried out on their own responsibility what plans they thought fit.

XXI.

1. Caesar, after cheering the cavalry, hastened down with the soldiers of the seventh legion. 2. "Remember," said he, "your former valour; be not disturbed in spirit, but boldly withstand the attack of the enemy." 3. The

general made a speech shorter than he was accustomed *(soleo)* to do. 4. So eager for the fight were the Gauls that the Romans had not time to draw their swords before they rushed upon them. 5. The Roman soldiers take up their positions at their standards which they saw in the van.

XXII.

1. He drew up his army after he had learned these things from his lieutenants. 2. One legion opposed the enemy in one place, another in another. 3. We have mentioned before that the view was obstructed by the intervening trees. 4. They could not collect all their supplies, nor could they find out what (supplies) it was necessary to provide. 5. Amid such unevenness of ground the general could not carry out all the orders which he gave to the lieutenants.

XXIII.

1. The soldiers of the tenth legion take up their stand on the right wing and drive the enemy into the river. 2. After a great number of them had been slain they pursued the rest across the river. 3. When they had put to flight the enemy they did not hesitate to return to the camp. 4. For five hours a battle was fought *(pugnatum est)* on the very summit of the hill. 5. The Nervii had a king named Boduognatus, who attempted to reach that place.

XXIV.

1. All the light-armed soldiers were driven back at the first onset of our troops. 2. After they met the enemy (who were) opposing (them) they drove them headlong in flight to the banks of the river. 3. The enemy who had gone out of the camp for the purpose of foraging, saw that our men had crossed the river. 4. The Romans saw that the Treveri, terrified by the noise of those who were pursuing hard, fled in all directions. 5. "We," said they, "have defeated the Romans, and we have gained possession of your camp."

XXV.

(a)

1. Having set out to the right wing we saw that our men were hard pressed by the enemy. 2. "I see," said Caesar, "that our baggage is a great hindrance to the soldiers on the march." 3. The standard-bearer and all the centurions of the fifth cohort were slain in that battle. 4. The

man was so severely wounded that he was not able to carry his arms. 5. Some in the rear left the battle and thus (*ita*) avoided the darts.

(*b*)

1. The battle was in a critical condition because we had no reserves who could be sent to aid our soldiers. 2. Caesar, drawing a shield from one soldier, armed himself and advanced against the foe. 3. He orders the cohorts to extend their line so that they might use their spears the more easily. 4. By the approach of the general hope was inspired in the soldiers. 5. Each one of the Roman soldiers desired to exert himself since he was fighting in sight of the general.

XXVI.

1. Caesar saw that our men were hard pressed by the enemy. 2. He advises the tribune to advance against the enemy. 3. One brought aid to one, another to another, and they were not afraid that the enemy would surround them. 4. The soldiers who were in the rear were a great protection to the baggage. 5. Titus Labienus sent his soldiers to aid our troops. 6. They watched from the height what deeds the general did in war.

XXVII.

1. Many of our men were so severely wounded by the javelins of the enemy that they were unable to renew the battle. 2. A great change took place in the battle, because the camp followers terrified the enemy who rushed against our men. 3. The cavalry blotted out the disgrace because they placed themselves in front of the common soldiers. 4. The soldiers fought very bravely since the front rank displayed such valour. 5. The enemy threw their javelins from the mound and hurled back against our men the intercepted darts. 6. Their valour rendered it an easy matter to cross the stream.

XXVIII.

1. The nation of the Nervii by this battle were almost exterminated. 2. All the women, children and elders were collected in the estuaries and fens. 3. All who survived, with one consent, surrendered to Caesar. 4. "We," said they, "have been reduced to a few who are able to bear arms." 5. He restrained all the neighbours from wrong-doing and ordered his soldiers to protect the Nervii.

XXIX.

1. The Aduatuci with many thousand men came to aid the Nervii. 2. All their towns and redoubts were deserted when the approach of our army was known. 3. On every side, all round, this town had such high rocks that it could easily be defended. 4. The wall was defended by rocks of great weight and beams were placed on it. 5. All the baggage which they did not take with them, they placed across the river Rhine. 6. Six thousand men were left to guard the redoubts. 7. After these had picked out a place for an abode, peace was made with the unanimous *(unus)* consent of all.

XXX.

1. Frequent sallies were made from the town by our army. 2. Caesar moved forward the *vineae*, raised a mound and built a tower near the town. 3. When so great a tower was being built so far off, the Nervii began to jeer. 4. The Gauls compared to the Romans were of great size. 5. "Do you think," said they, "to place so high a tower on our walls."

XXXI.

1. When the tower was nearing the walls, ambassadors were sent to Caesar to treat for peace. 2. "We do not think," said one of the ambassadors, "that the Romans have carried on this war without the aid of the gods." 4. "You," said he, "have moved forward engines of war of such height that we do not think that you could do this alone." 4. We ask one thing, that you will save our citizens and not take our arms from us. 5. We are willing to suffer any punishment whatever at the hands of the Romans rather than be slain by our enemies.

XXXII.

"I," said Caesar, "according to my custom, will save you if you will surrender yourselves before the battering-ram touches the wall." 2. You must surrender your arms and do no harm to the allies of the Roman people. 3. "We," says he, "will do whatever you order." 4. So great was the heap of arms that it almost reached the top of the mound of the camp. 5. They opened their gates on that day, but concealed their arms in the town.

XXXIII.

1. Just before evening the gates were shut and the soldiers were ordered to leave the town. 2. The enemy previously entered into a plan because

they believed that our men would protect the camp somewhat carelessly. 3. At the second watch a sally was made suddenly against that part where the fewest soldiers were stationed. 4. Where the camp fires were fewest the enemy made an onset, and fought most valiantly against our men in a very disadvantageous place. 5. On the next day the gates were burst open and all the booty of that town was sold by Caesar.

XXXIV.—XXXV.

1. On that day they informed Caesar that the enemy had sent an embassy. 2. All these States were reduced under the sway of the Romans in that year. 3. All the nations who dwelt across the Rhine sent ambassadors to Caesar to promise that they would give hostages. 4. In the beginning of the next summer he carried on war with these states, and afterwards set out by forced marches to Italy. 5. The Senate decreed a thanksgiving of ten days, a thing which never happened to anyone before, since the days of Marius.

BOOK III.

C. IULI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER TERTIUS.

Contents of Book III.—Campaign of 56, B.C. Gaul has nominally submitted to a Roman protectorate, but some of the tribes are rebellious.—Galba in the Alps, chs. 1-6.—Naval war against the Veněti, chs. 7-16.—Crassus subdues Aquitania, chs. 17-27.—Caesar goes in pursuit of the Morini, chs. 28-29.

I.—CUM in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legione duodecima, et parte equitatus, in Nantuates, Veragros, Sedunosque misit, qui ab finibus Allobrogum, et lacu Lemanno, et flumine Rhodano, ad summas Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit, quod iter per Alpes, quo, magno cum periculo magnisque cum portoriis, mercatores ire consuerant, patefieri volebat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitraretur, uti in eis locis legionem hiemandi causa collocaret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis, castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis, obsidibusque datis, et pace facta, constituit cohortes duas in Nantuatibus collocare, et ipse cum reliquis eius legionis cohortibus in vico Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare : qui vicus, positus in valle, non magna adiecta planitie, altissimis montibus undique continetur. Cum hic in duas partes flumine divideretur, alteram partem eius vici Gallis concessit, alteram, vacuam ab illis relictam, cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vallo fossaque munivit.

Caesar sends Galba to open up a new route from Italy to Gaul.

II.—Cum dies hibernorum complures transissent, frumentumque eo comportari iussisset, subito per exploratores certior factus est ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse, montesque, qui impenderent, a maxima multitudine Sedunorum et Veragrorum teneri. Id aliquot de causis acciderat, ut subito Galli belli renovandi legionisque opprimendae consilium cape-

The natives attack the Romans.

rent : primum, quod legionem, neque eam plenissimam, detractis cohortibus duabus, et compluribus singillatim, qui commeatus petendi causa missi erant, absentibus, propter paucitatem despiciebant : tum etiam, quod, propter iniquitatem loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem decurrerent, et tela conicerent, ne primum quidem posse impetum sustinere existimabant. Accedebat, quod suos ab se liberos abstractos obsidum nomine dolebant : et Romanos non solum itinerum causa, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis, culmina Alpium occupare conari, et ea loca finitimae provinciae adiungere, sibi persuasum habebant.

III.—His nuntiis acceptis, Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum munitionesque plene essent perfectae, neque de frumento reliquoque commeatu satis esset provisum, quod, deditione facta, obsidibusque acceptis, nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato, sententias exquirere coepit. Quo in consilio, cum tantum repentini periculi praeter opinionem accidisset, ac iam omnia fere superiora loca multitudine armatorum completa conspicerentur, neque subsidio veniri, neque commeatus supportari interclusis itineribus possent, prope iam desperata salute, nonnullae huiusmodi sententiae dicebantur, ut, impedimentis relictis, eruptione facta, iisdem itineribus, quibus eo pervenissent, ad salutem contenderent. Maiori tamen parti placuit, hoc reservato ad extremum consilio, interim rei eventum experiri, et castra defendere.

who are in serious danger,

IV.—Brevi spatio interiecto, vix ut his rebus, quas constituissent, collocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostes ex omnibus partibus, signo dato, decurrere, lapides gaesaque in vallum conicere : nostri primo integris viribus fortiter repugnare, neque ullum frustra telum ex loco superiore mittere : ut quaeque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrere, et auxilium ferre : sed hoc superari, quod diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant : quarum rerum a nostris propter paucitatem fieri

and almost over-whelmed.

nihil poterat ; ac non modo defesso ex pugna excedendi, sed ne saucio quidem eius loci, ubi constiterat, relinquendi, ac sui recipiendi, facultas dabatur.

V.—Cum iam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur, ac non solum vires, sed etiam tela, nostris deficerent, atque hostes acrius instarent, languidioribusque nostris vallum scindere, et fossas complere coepissent, resque esset iam ad extremum perducta casum, Publius Sextius Baculus, primi pili centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item Caius Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt, atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta extremum auxilium experirentur. Itaque, convocatis centurionibus, celeriter milites certiores facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium, ac tantummodo tela missa exciperent, seque ex labore reficerent ; post, dato signo, ex castris erumperent, atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponerent.

Things at a crisis when a sally is ordered.

VI.—Quod iussi sunt, faciunt ; ac, subito omnibus portis eruptione facta, neque cognoscendi, quid fieret, neque sui colligendi, hostibus facultatem relinquunt. Ita, commutata fortuna, eos, qui in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant, undique circumventos interficiunt ; et, ex hominum millibus amplius triginta, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat, plus tertia parte interfecta, reliquos perterritos in fugam coniciunt, ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patiuntur. Sic, omnibus hostium copiis fusis, armisque exutis, se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quo proelio facto, quod saepius fortunam tentare Galba nolebat, atque alio sese in hiberna consilio venisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rebus viderat, maxime frumenti commeatusque inopia permotus, postero die omnibus eius vici aedificiis incensis, in Provinciam reverti contendit ; ac, nullo hoste prohibente aut iter demorante, incolumem legionem in Nantuates, inde in Allobrogas perduxit, ibique hiemavit.

The camp is saved, but the Romans retire.

totidem, Aduatucos decem et novem millia; Condrusos, Eburones, Caeraesos, Paemonos, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad quadraginta millia.

BIBRAX.

V.—Caesar Remos cohortatus liberaliterque oratione prosequutus omnem senatum ad se convenire principumque liberos obsides ad se adduci iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiacum Aeduum magno opere cohortatus docet quanto opere reipublicae communisque salutis intersit manus hostium distineri, ne cum tanta multitudine uno tempore confligendum sit. Id fieri posse si suas copias Aedui in fines Bellovacorum introduxerint et eorum agros populari coeperint. His mandatis eum ab se dimittit. Postquam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas ad se venire vidit, neque iam longe abesse ab his quos miserat exploratoribus et ab Remis cognovit, flumen Axonam, quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exercitum transducere maturavit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat et, post eum quae essent, tuta ab hostibus reddebat, et commeatus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus ut sine periculo ad eum portari possent efficiebat. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit et in altera parte fluminis Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallo fossaque duodeviginti pedum munire iubet.

Caesar marches to the Axona: the Belgae attack Bibrax.

VI.—Ab his castris oppidum Remorum nomine Bibrax aberat millia passuum octo. Id ex itinere magno impetu Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die sustentatum est. Gallorum eadem atque Belgarum oppugnatio est haec. Ubi, circumiecta multitudine hominum totis moenibus, undique lapides in murum iaci coepti sunt, murusque defensoribus nudatus est, testudine facta portas succedunt murumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiebat. Nam cum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conicerent, in muro

How the Belgae storm a town.

consistendi potestas erat nulli. Cum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius Remus, summa nobilitate et gratia inter suos, qui tum oppido praeerat, unus ex his qui legati de pace ad Caesarem venerant, nuntium ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

VII.—Eo de media nocte Caesar, iisdem ducibus usus qui nuntii ab Iccio venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios et funditores Baleares subsidio oppidanis mittit; quorum adventu et Remis cum spe defensionis studium propugnandi accessit, et hostibus eadem de causa spes potiundi oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morati agrosque Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis aedificiisque quos adire potuerant incensis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contenderunt et ab millibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fumo atque ignibus significabatur, amplius millibus passuum octo in latitudinem patebant.

Caesar relieves the town, and fortifies his camp.

VIII.—Caesar primo et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opinionem virtutis proelio supersedere statuit; quotidie tamen equestribus proeliis quid hostis virtute posset et quid nostri auderent sollicitationibus periclitabatur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiores intellexit, loco pro castris ad aciem instruendam natura opportuno atque idoneo, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex planitie editus tantum adversus in latitudinem patebat quantum loci acies instructa occupare poterat, atque ex utraque parte lateris deiectus habebat et in fronte leniter fastigatus paulatim ad planitiem redibat, ab utroque latere eius collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum quadringentorum, et ad extremas fossas castella constituit ibique tormenta collocavit, ne, cum aciem instruxisset, hostes, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes suos circumvenire possent. Hoc facto duabus legionibus quas proxime conscripserat in castris relictis ut, si quo opus esset, subsidio duci possent, reliquas

sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant.

CAMP NEAR THE AXONA ATTACKED.

The Belgae attack the position of Titurius,

IX.—Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent hostes exspectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos adgrederentur parati in armis erant. Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, secundiore equitum proelio nostris, Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt, eo consilio ut, si possent, castellum cui praeerat Quintus Titurius legatus expugnarent pontemque interscinderent; si minus potuissent, agros Remorum popularentur, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatuque nostros prohiberent.

but are defeated,

X.—Caesar certior factus ab Titurio omnem equitatum et levis armaturae Numidas, funditores sagittariosque pontem transducit atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi magnum eorum numerum occiderunt. Per eorum corpora reliquos audacissime transire conantes multitudine telorum reppulerunt: primos qui transierant equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes, ubi et de expugnando oppido et de flumine transeundo spem se fefellisse intellexerunt neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnandi causa viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere coepit, concilio convocato constituerunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti, ut quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, et potius in suis quam in alienis finibus decertarent et domesticis copiis rei frumentariae uterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacum

atque Aeduos finibus Bellovacorum adpropinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi ut diutius morarentur neque suis auxilium ferrent non poterat.

XI.—Ea re constituta, secunda vigilia magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris egressi nullo certo ordine neque imperio, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per speculatores cognita insidias veritus, quod qua de causa discederent nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Prima luce confirmata re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum qui novissimum agmen moraretur praemisit. His Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praefecit. Titum Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimos adorti et multa millia passuum prosequuti magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt, cum ab extremo agmine ad quos ventum erat consisterent fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent prioresque, quod abesse a periculo viderentur, neque ulla necessitate neque imperio continerentur, exaudito clamore perturbatis ordinibus omnes in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent. Ita sine ullo periculo tantam eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt quantum fuit diei spatium. sub occasumque solis destiterunt, seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

and pursued with awful slaughter.

NOVIODUNUM AND BRATUSPANTIUM.

XII.—Postridie eius diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere confecto ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quod vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem paucis defendentibus expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis vineas agere quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter

A forced march and attack on Noviodunum, which surrenders.

vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere iacto turribusque constitutis, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti legatos ad Caesarem de deditione mittunt. et petentibus Remis, ut conservarentur impetrant.

XIII.—Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditionem Suessiones accepit exercitumque in Bellovacos ducit. Qui cum se suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitu circiter millia passuum quinque abesset, omnes maiores natu ex oppido egressi manus ad Caesarem tendere et voce significare coeperunt sese in eius fidem ac potestatem venire neque contra Populum Romanum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi poneret, pueri mulieresque ex muro passis manibus suo more pacem ab Romanis petierunt.

The surrender of the Bellovaci also.

XIV.—Pro his Divitiacus, nam post discessum Belgarum dimissis Aeduorum copiis ad eum reverterat, facit verba: Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Aeduae fuisse: impulsos a suis principibus qui dicerent Aeduos a Caesare in servitutem redactos omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre, et ab Aeduis defecisse et Populo Romano bellum intulisse. Qui huius consilii principes fuissent, quod intelligerent quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacos sed etiam pro his Aeduos ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur. Quod si fecerit, Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificaturum; quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint.

Divitiacus pleads for the Bellovaci.

THE NERVII.

XV.—Caesar honoris Divitiaci atque Aeduorum causa sese eos in fidem recepturum et conservaturum dixit: quod erat civitas magna inter Belgas auctoritate atque hominum multitudine praestabat, sexcentos obsides popos-

cit. His traditis omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se suaque omnia sine mora dediderunt. Eorum fines Nervii attingebant: quorum de natura moribusque Caesar quum quaereret, sic reperiebat: Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus: nihil pati vini reliquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod his rebus relanguescere animos et remitti virtutem existimarent: esse homines feros magnaeque virtutis; increpitare atque incusare reliquos Belgas qui se Populo Romano dedidissent patriamque virtutem proiecissent: confirmare sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam conditionem pacis accepturos.

Facts about the Nervii.

XVI.—Cum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniebat ex captivis Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius millia passuum decem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedisse adventumque ibi Romanorum exspectare una cum Atrebatibus et Veromanduis finitimis suis, nam his utrisque persuaserant uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur: exspectari etiam ab his Aduatucorum copias atque esse in itinere: mulieres quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur in eum locum coniecisse, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

The Nervi await the enemy.

XVII.—His rebus cognitis exploratores centurionesque praemittit qui locum idoneum castris deligant. Cumque ex dediticiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesarem sequuti una iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt atque iis demonstrarunt inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse quicquam negotii, cum prima legio in castra venisset, reliquaeque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri: qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis futurum ut reliquae contra consistere non auderent. Adiuvabat etiam eorum consilium qui rem deferebant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitatu nihil possent--neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed quicquid possunt.

They resolve to attack Caesar's advance guard.

pedestribus valent copiis,—quo facilius finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causa ad eos venisset, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis crebris in latitudinem ramis et rubis sentibusque interiectis, effecerant ut instar muri hae sepes munimenta praeberent, quo non modo intrari, sed ne perspici quidem posset. His rebus cum iter agminis nostri impediretur, non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii existimaverunt.

BATTLE WITH THE NERVII.

Position of the Romans and of the enemy.

XVIII.—Loci natura erat haec, quem locum nostri castris delegerant. Collis ab summo aequaliter declivis ad flumen Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebat. Ab eo flumine pari acclivitate collis nascebatur adversus huic et contrarius passus circiter ducentos, infimus apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris ut non facile introrsus perspici posset. Inter eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant: in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo pedum circiter trium.

The skilful attack of the Nervii.

XIX.—Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequebatur omnibus copiis: sed ratio ordoque agminis aliter se habebat ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam, quod ad hostes appropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat: post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocarat: inde duae legiones quae proxime conscriptae erant totum agmen claudebant praesidioque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi cum hostium equitatu proelium commiserunt. Cum se illi identidem in silvas ad suos reciperent ac rursus ex silva in nostros impetum facerent, neque nostri longius quam quem ad finem porrecta ac loca aperta pertinebant cedentes insequi auderent, interim legiones sex, quae primae venerant, opere dimenso castra munire coeperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab his qui in silvis abditi latebant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eos committendi proelii convenerat, ita, ut

intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituerant atque ipsi sese confirmaverant, subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt impetumque in nostros equites fecerunt. His facile pulsis ac proturbatis incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucurrerunt, ut paene uno tempore et ad silvas et in flumine et iam in manibus nostris hostes viderentur. Eadem autem celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra atque eos qui in opere occupati erant contenderunt.

XX.—Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum proponendum, quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurri oporteret, signum tuba dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, qui paulo longius aggeris petendi causa processerant arcessendi, acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas et successus et incursus hostium impediebat. His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, scientia atque usus militum, quod superioribus proeliis exercitati, quid fieri oporteret non minus commode ipsi sibi praescribere quam ab aliis doceri poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere, nisi munitis castris vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectabant, sed per se quae videbantur administrabant.

But the skill and experience of the Romans were of great assistance.

XXI.—Caesar necessariis rebus imperatis ad cohortandos milites quam in partem fors obtulit decucurrit et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione cohortatus quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent neu perturbarentur animo hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant quam quo telum adici posset, proelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causa profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induendas scutisque tegumenta detrahenda tempus defuerit. Quam quisque in partem ab opere casu devenit

The enemy attack before the Romans can arm themselves.

quaeque prima signa conspexit, ad haec constitit, ne in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

All is confusion.

XXII. —Instructo exercitu magis ut loci natura deiectusque collis et necessitas temporis quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cum diversis locis legiones aliae alia in parte hostibus resisterent, sepibusque densissimis, ut ante demonstravimus, interiectis prospectus impediretur, neque certa subsidia collocari, neque quid in quaque parte opus esset provideri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque in tanta rerum iniquitate fortunae quoque eventus varii sequebantur.

Legions IX and X on the left drive the Atrebates across the river.

The XIth and VIIIth in the centre rout the Veromandui

XXIII.—Legionis nonae et decimae milites, ut in sinistra parte acie constiterant, pilis emissis cursu ac lassitudine exanimatos vulneribusque confectos Atrebates —nam his ea pars obvenerat, —celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen compulerunt et transire conantes insequuti gladiis magnam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flumen non dubitaverunt, et in locum iniquum progressi rursus regressos ac resistentes hostes redintegrato proelio in fugam dederunt. Item alia in parte diversae duae legiones, undecima et octava, profligatis Veromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. At tum totis fere a fronte et ab sinistra parte nudatis castris, cum in dextro cornu legio duodecima et non magno ab ea intervallo septima constitisset, omnes Nervii confertissimo agmine duce Boduognato qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum locum contenderunt: quorum pars aperto latere legiones circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere coepit.

The XIIth and VIIth on the right surrounded by the Nervii,

who seize the Roman camp.

XXIV.—Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armaturae pedites, qui cum iis una fuerant, quos primo hostium impetu pulsos dixeram, cum se in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrebant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant: et calones, qui ab decumana porta ac summo jugo collis nostros victores flumen transisse conspexerant, praedandi causa egressi, cum respexissent

et hostes in nostris castris versari vidissent, praecipites fugae sese mandabant. Simul eorum qui cum impedimentis veniebant clamor fremitusque oriebatur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferebantur. Quibus omnibus rebus permoti equites Treveri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singularis, qui auxilii causa ab civitate missi ad Caesarem venerant, cum multitudine hostium castra nostra compleri, legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri, calones, equites, funditores, Numidas, diversos dissipatosque, in omnes partes fugere vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus, domum contenderunt: Romanos pulsos superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostes potitos civitati renuntiaverunt.

The Treveri desert.

XXV.—Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis signiferoque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo Publio Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto ut iam se sustinere non posset: reliquos esse tardiores, et nonnullos ab novissimis deserto proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostes neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere et ab utroque latere instare, et rem esse in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse subsidium quod submitti posset, scuto ab novissimis uni militi detracto, quod ipse eo sine scuto venerat, in primam aciem processit centurionibusque nominatim appellatis reliquos cohortatus milites signa inferre et manipulos laxare iussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent. Cuius adventu spe illata militibus ac redintegrato animo, cum pro se quisque in conspectu imperatoris et iam in extremis suis rebus operam navare cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardatus est.

Caesar to the rescue of the xiith.

His courage and coolness.

XXVI.—Caesar cum septimam legionem, quae iuxta constiterat item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum

The Romans rally.

monuit ut paulatim sese legiones coniungerent et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, cum alius alii subsidium ferret, neque timerent ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare coeperunt. Interim milites legionum duarum, quae in novissimo agmine praesidio impedimentis fuerant, proelio nuntiato, cursu incitato, in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur. Et Titus Labienus castris hostium potitus et ex loco superiore quae res in nostris castris gererentur conspicatus decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit. Qui cum ex equitum et calonum fuga, quo in loco res esset, quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

The xth to the rescue.

XXVII.—Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio facta est ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuissent, scutis innixi proelium redintegrarent, tum calones perterritos hostes conspicati etiam inermes armatis occurrerent, equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtute delerent, omnibus in locis pugnae se legionariis militibus praeferrent. At hostes etiam in extrema spe salutis tantam virtutem praestiterunt ut, cum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi iacentibus insisterent atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent : his deiectis et coacervatis cadaveribus, qui superessent, ut ex tumulo tela in nostros conicerent et pila intercepta remitterent : ut non nequiquam tantae virtutis homines iudicari deberet ausos esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum ; quae facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo redegerat.

Finally the Nervii are routed.

XXVIII.—Hoc proelio facto et prope internecionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto maiores natu, quos una cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes collectos dixeramus, hac pugna nuntiata, cum victoribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tutum arbitrarentur, omnium qui supererant consensu legatos ad Caesarem miserunt seque ei dediderunt, et in commemoranda civitatis cala-

Caesar's clemency.

mitate ex sexcentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum millibus sexaginta vix ad quingentos qui arma ferre possent sese redactos esse dixerunt. Quos Caesar, ut in miseros ac supplices usus misericordia videretur, diligentissime conservavit suisque finibus atque oppidis uti iussit, et finitimis imperavit ut ab iniuria et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.

THE ADUATUCI.

XXIX.—Aduatuci, de quibus supra scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio Nerviis venirent, hac pugna nuntiata ex itinere domum reverterunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppidum egregie natura munitum contulerunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus altissimas rupes despectusque haberet, una ex parte leniter acclivis aditus in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum relinquebatur: quem locum duplici altissimo muro munierant, tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacutas trabes in muro collocarant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prognati, qui, cum iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iis impedimentis, quae secum agere ac portare non poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis custodiam ex suis ac praesidio sex millia hominum reliquerunt. Hi post eorum obitum multos annos a finitimis exagitati, cum alias bellum inferrent, alias illatum defenderent, consensu eorum omnium pace facta hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.

The Aduatuci prepare for a desperate resistance.

XXX.—Ac primo adventu exercitus nostri crebras ex oppido excursiones faciebant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendebant; postea vallo pedum duodecim in circuitu quindecim millium crebrisque castellis circummuniti oppido sese continebant. Ubi vineis actis aggere exstructo turrim procul constitui viderunt, primum irridere ex muro atque increpitare vocibus, quod tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio institueretur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim homines tantulae staturae, nam plerumque hominibus Gallis prae magnitu-

They taunt the Romans from the walls,

dine corporum suorum brevitas nostra contemptui est, tanti oneris turrim in muro sese collocare confiderent?

XXXI.—Ubi vero moveri et appropinquare moenibus viderunt, nova atque inusitata specie commoti legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui ad hunc modum loquuti: Non se existimare Romanos sine ope divina bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tanta celeritate promovere et ex propinquitate pugnare possent, se suaque omnia eorum potestati permittere dixerunt. Unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret: sibi omnes fere finitimos esse inimicos ac suae virtuti invidere, a quibus se defendere traditis armis non possent. Sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a Populo Romano pati quam ab his per cruciatum interfici inter quos dominari consuessent.

but they soon lose confidence and offer to surrender.

XXXII.—Ad haec Caesar respondit: Se magis consuetudine sua quam merito eorum civitatem conservaturum, si prius quam murum aries attigisset se dedidissent: sed deditionis nullam esse conditionem nisi armis traditis: se id quod in Nerviis fecisset facturum finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam dediticiis Populi Romani iniuriam inferrent. Re nuntiata ad suos, quae imperarentur facere dixerunt. Armorum magna multitudine de muro in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iacta sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adaequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut postea perspectum est, celata atque in oppido retenta, portis patefactis eo die pace sunt usi.

They must disarm, but are promised protection.

XXXIII.—Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque ex oppido exire iussit ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus iniuriam acciperent. Illi ante inito, ut intellectum est, consilio, quod deditione facta nostros praesidia deducturos aut denique indiligentius servaturos crediderant, partim cum his quae retinuerant et celaverant armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis, quae

The final struggle and terrible fate of the Nervii.

subito, ut temporis exiguitas postulabat, pellibus induxerant, tertia vigilia, qua minime arduus ad nostras munitiones ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis repentino ex oppido eruptionem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus significatione facta, ex proximis castellis eo concursum est, pugnatumque ab hostibus ita acriter ut a viris fortibus in extrema spe salutis iniquo loco contra eos qui ex vallo turribusque tela iacerent pugnari debuit, cum in una virtute omnis spes salutis consisteret. Occisis ad hominum millibus quatuor reliqui in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridie eius diei refractis portis, cum iam defenderet nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris sectionem eius oppidi universam Caesar vendidit. Ab his qui emerant capitum numerus ad eum relatus est millium quinquaginta trium.

XXXIV.—Eodem tempore a Publio Crasso, quem cum legione una miserat ad Venetos, Unellos, Osismios, Curiosolitas, Sesuvios, Aulercos, Rhedones, quae sunt maritimae civitates Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnes eas civitates in ditionem potestatemque Populi Romani esse redactas.

All the maritime states submit to the Romans.

XXXV.—His rebus gestis omni Gallia pacata, tanta huius belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est uti ab his nationibus quae trans Rhenum incolerent mitterentur legati ad Caesarem, qui se obsides daturas, imperata facturas pollicerentur; quas legationes Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properabat, inita proxima aestate ad se reverti iussit. Ipse in Carnutes, Andes, Turonesque, quae civitates propinquae his locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus in hiberna deductis, in Italiam profectus est: ob easque res ex literis Caesaris dies quindecim supplicatio decreta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.

A thanksgiving for the conquest of Gaul decreed.

NOTES.

BOOK II.

NOTES.

BOOK II.

NOTE.—F.L. = First Latin Book ; P.L. = Primary Latin Book. In the case of the former the numbers refer to the *pages* and *sections* ; of the latter, the Roman numerals refer to the *part* of the book, and the Arabic to the *sub-section.*

CHAPTER I.

esset : for subjunctive : F.L. 203, 3 ; P.L. II., 169. The date is 57 B.C., in the consulship of P. Cornelius Lentulus and Q. Metellus Nepos.

in hibernis : *hiberna* generally means the winter quarters of an army engaged in a war. Here *in hibernis* may mean, "at the place where he was spending the winter."

ita uti : "just as."

quam : agrees with the word in the predicate rather than with its regular antecedent : translate, however : "who, as we have said, form the third part of Gaul."

coniurare : "had formed a league." There is no necessity to take this word here in the sense of "to form a conspiracy" : cp. Greek συνωμοσία, "a league."

inter se dare : "were exchanging." Explain the tense of the inf.

quod vererentur : the subjunctive shows that the reasons were given on the authority of the Belgae : F.L. 198, 2 ; P.L. II., 165 (b).

Gallia = Gallia Celtica : the central part of Gaul is meant.

partim qui : "some of whom" : *partim—partim* refer to *nonnullis Gallis*, who are classed in two divisions. The word *partim*, though accusative in form, is used by Caesar and Cicero as a word of distribution without any respect to its case.

ut—ita : "as—so."

inveterascere: "should become settled": literally, "should grow old."

moleste ferebant = *χαλεπῶς ἔφερον*: "they were annoyed."

partim—studebant: "(while) others of these, in consequence of their instability and fickleness of disposition, were aiming at a revolution."—*imperiis*: F.L. 105, 9; P.L. II., 55.

ab nonnullis etiam, scil. *quod sollicitarentur*: "thirdly because they were being instigated by a few, since in Gaul power was commonly being seized by the more powerful and by those who had means to hire men (and) who were able less easily to carry out this object under our sway." Note the different clauses in opposition to *causas* are introduced by *primum*, *deinde*, *etiam*.

imperio nostro: "under our sway": abl. of time and cause.

CHAPTER II.

nuntiis literisque: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (a).

duas legiones: the XIII. and XIV. Caesar now had eight legions, numbering from VII. to XIV. inclusive. The regular soldiers with the auxiliaries in Gaul would now number about 60,000 men.

inita aestate: abl. absolute: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II., 48. Join this to *qui deduceret*.

interiorem Galliam: "into central Gaul.

qui deduceret, scil. *eas*: "to lead them." For *qui*=*ut is*: F.L. 184, 1; P.L. II., 25.

cum — inciperet: the subjunctive is used because the abundance of fodder was the occasion of his coming: F. L. 198, 3; P. L. II., 167.

exercitum: probably now at Vesontio *(Besançon)*.

dat negotium: historical present: "he directs." What is the rule for the sequence of tenses? Is it observed here? F. L. 178, 2; P.L. II., 28.

finitimi Belgis: What adjectives govern the dative? F.L. 60, 2; P.L. II., 102.

gerantur: for the subjunctive: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. II., 43.

se certiorem: why not *eum certiorem?* F.L. 105, 7; P.L. III., 91.

constanter: "uniformly," "unanimously."

tum—proficisceretur: "then, indeed, he thought that he ought not to delay about setting out against them": the negative *quin* introduces the dependent clause because of the negative character of the main statement. This idiom is still preserved in French: *je ne doutais pas que vous n'eussiez raison*: F.L. 188, 6; P.L. II., 156. Note that *non dubitare* with infinitive denotes an *act* done without hesitation: cp. Caesar *de Bell. Gall.* 23: *transire flumen non dubitaverunt*, while *non dubitare quin* with subjunctive, denotes a *resolution* made without hesitation.

CHAPTER III.

eo=ad fines Belgarum.

de improviso: cf. the English colloquial phrase, "of a sudden"; "unexpectedly."

celerius omni opinione: "more quickly than any one had expected": literally, "than every expectation": F.L. 55, 5; P.L. II., 123 (c).

Remi: for the boundaries of these people, see Proper Names.

proximi Galliae: for the dative: F.L. 60, 2; P.L. II., 102. What other constructions may *proximi* have?

ex Belgis=inter Belgas.

qui—dicerent: *qui=ut ei*, hence the subjunctive: F.L. 184, 1; P.L. II., 25. In what other ways may this be expressed?

se: give chief rules for oblique narration: F.L. 209; P.L. II., 212-219.

neque=et non.

omnino: note that *omnino* after negatives="at all."

oppidis: the *local* ablative.

iuvare, scil., *eum*, i.e., *Caesarem.*

cis Rhenum: Caesar is writing from the standpoint of the Roman *Provincia*: cp. *Gallia Citerior, Gallia Cisalpina.*

his=Belgis.—eorum omnium=Belgarum et Germanorum.

ne—quidem: the emphatic word comes between *ne* and *quidem.* Note that *Suessiones* is the object of *deterrere.*

iure—legibus: for ablative: F.L. 116; P.L. II., 65. *ius* is often used in the sense of political rights as here: cp. *ius civitatis, ius Romanum*: *lex* is properly an enactment made in the Roman *comitia.*

utantur: why subjunctive? F.L. 209 (2); P.L. II., 214 (2): "though they enjoyed."

potuerint: governed by *ut*. Note *ut*, expressing a consequence never takes pluperfect subjunctive: "that they had been unable."

quin—consentirent: "from uniting": would *quominus* be permissible here? F.L. 185, 2 and note; P.L. II., 156.

CHAPTER IV.

quum: F.L. 203, 3; P.L. II., 169.

his: scil., *legatis*, mentioned in the beginning of the preceding chapter.

essent—possent: for subjunctive of indirect question: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. II., 43.

ortos a Germanis: it is probable that Caesar's statement here applies to those Belgae only near the German frontier. The main body of the people were of Gallic or Keltic origin. This is proved from the ancient Geographical names. Why is *a* expressed? F. L. 156, 4.

Rhenum: governed by the preposition *trans* in *traductos*: F.L. 96, 3; P.L. II., 72.

ibi: on the west bank of the river Rhine.

memoria: ablative of time within which: "within the memory of."

omni—vexata: abl. abs.: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II. 49: "when all Gaul was harrassed."

Teutones Cimbrosque: the Teutones and Cimbri appeared first at Noreia, on the extreme N.E. of Italy, about 113 B.C. After devastating Northern Italy, defeating seven consular armies, both were defeated by Marius, the former at Aquae Sextiae (*Aix*) in Southern Gaul in 102 B.C., the latter at Campi Raudii near Vercellae in Northern Italy in 101 B.C.

ingredi prohibuerint: for subjunctive. What constructions may verbs of *hindering* take? F.L. 185, 2; P.L. II., 156.

fieri: the subject of this verb is the following clause: *uti—sumerent.*

memoria: for ablative: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (b).

omnia—habere: "that they had complete information." Properly *explorare* is, to find out a person by calling out his name.

propinquitatibus affinitatibusque coniuncti: *propinquitas*, properly called *cognatio*, is "kinship," the relationship that springs from common parents: *affinitas* is that derived from intermarriage. The *affines* of the wife are the *cognati* of the husband, *i.e.*, the husband's father, brothers, etc., while the *affines* of the husband are the *cognati* of the wife, *i.e.*, the wife's father, brothers, etc.

quisque: "each representative."

pollicitus sit: subjunctive of dependent clause in oblique narrative: F.L. 209 (2); P.L. II., 214 (2).

cognoverint: F.L. 209 (2); P.L. II., 214 (2).

conficere: "to muster."—*armata millia centum* = *millia centum armatorum hominum.*

sibi: the Bellovaci: *suos* refers to Remi subject of *dicebant.*

cum—tum = *non solum—sed etiam.*

Nervios: the names of peoples in the chapter show how persistently modern Geography preserves even in a corrupt form the memory of former days. The Bellovaci were settled near *Beauvais*; Suessiones, near *Soissons*; Ambiani, near *Amiens*; Caleti, near *Calais*; Atrebates, near *Arras*; Morini, near *Boulogne*; *Velocasses* had a capital Ratomagus, now *Rouen*; Veromandui were settled at *Vermandois* on the Upper Oise; the Menapii on the lower Scheldt; the Aduatuci, on the upper Meuse; *Condrusi*, near *Codroz*; Eburones and Caeroesi in the *Ardennes* region; the Paemani, in *Marche la Famine.*

Germani: the word is said to mean in Keltic, "hill-men," "highlanders": for other derivations see Proper Names.

CHAPTER V.

liberaliterque—prosecutus: "having dismissed them with friendly words."

prosequi verbis is a technical term, "to bid good-bye" to a person going into exile.

senatum: Caesar applies a Roman term to the council of the Belgae. So also Caesar: *de Bell. Gall.* II., 28, he uses the word *senatores.*

diligenter ad diem: "punctually to a day."

quanto—sit: "how important it is to the interests of the state and their

common safety that the forces of the enemy be kept apart that they may not be compelled to fight at one time with so great a number." *reipublicae*: F.L. 166, 3; P.L. II., 63.—*intersit*: for subjunctive:—*confligendum sit*: F.L. 183, 2; P.L. II. 25.

introduxerint: for mood and tense: F.L. 206, 4; P.L. 214 (3).

neque iam = et iam non.

flumen exercitum: F.L. 96, 3; P.L. II., 72.

extremis: reckoning from the *Marne* where Caesar entered the territory of the Remi.

quae res: "this position."

ripis: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (a).

et reddebat: construe *et reddebat* (*ea loca*) *quae essent post eum* (*esse*) *tuta ab hostibus.* For mood of *essent*: F.L. 188, 4; P.L. II., 34.

efficiebat ut: "made it possible that."

pedum: F.L. 130, 8; P.L. II., 115.

CHAPTER VI.

nomine: abl. of specification.

ex itinere magno: "while on a forced march"; cp. *ex itinere*: B.I., Chapter XXV. The expression shows there was no interruption of the march when the attack was made.

eo die: the ablative is sometimes used for periods of duration so short as to be equivalent to a point of time.

eadem atque: "just the same as."

ubi—subruunt: "when they have placed a continuous line of men all along the fortifications and begun to shower stones from every side upon the wall and (when once) the wall has been cleared of its defenders, then they form a *testudo*, push on to the wall and proceed to pull it down."—*circumiecta multitudine*: F. L. 100, 5; P. L. II., 49.—*totis moenibus*: abl. of place.—*coepti sunt*: why passive?—*murus*: distinguish in meaning *moenia*, *murus*, *paries*, *maceria*.—*testudine*: Caesar gives the tactics of the Belgae a Roman name. In forming a *testudo*, the Roman soldiers held their shields over their heads close to one another so as to form an unbroken defence against the missiles from above. It obtained its name from the

appearance the shield had to a *tortoise shell* (*testudo*). Note that *-que* sometimes as here connects actions described as happening at some distance of time from each other.

multitudo—conicerent: the plural verb expresses numerous separate and individual actions. Had the singular been used there would have been the idea of unity.

nulli: decline. Note emphatic position.

fecisset: F.L. 203, 3; P.L. II., 169.

summa nobilitate: ablative of description: F.L. 131, 9; P.L. II., 124 (3).

oppido: for dative: F.L. 120, 2; P.L. II., 104.

sibi—*sese*: Iccius.

submittatur: what is the force of *sub* in composition here?

CHAPTER VII.

eo; i.e., to Bibrax.

de media nocte: "soon after midnight": so *de tertia vigilia* is, "after the third watch was set": what would *tertia vigilia* mean?

iisdem—venerant: "using as guides the same persons who had come as messengers." For pronouns in opposition to nouns, compare note on *his ducibus qui iter cognoverant*.

Numidas, *Cretas*, *Baleares*: those three nations supplied the light skirmishers to the Roman armies. For an account of them see Proper Names.

subsidio—oppidanis: for the two datives: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. II., 75. Join *oppidanis* with *subsidio*, not with *mittit*.

quorum—discessit: "and at the arrival of these the Remi were inspired with eagerness to ward off the attack, as well as with the hope of a successful defence, while, for the same reason, the enemy gave up all hope of becoming masters of the town."—*adventu*: abl. of time and cause.—*et Remis—accessit*: literally, "there was both added to the Remi": F.L. 120, 2: P.L. II., 56.—*hostibus*. Note that many verbs compounded with *ab*, *di*, *ex*, as *adimo*, *discedo*, *eripio*, may take a dat. of person and acc. of thing in the active, or if they are intr., as here, a dat. of person.

potiundi oppidi: the genitive implies that *potior* may govern the accusative as it does in old Latin: Ter Adelph. 5, 4, 22: *miseriam omnem ego capio*, *hic potitur gaudia*.

morati, scil. *hostes*.

quos : account for the gender of the relative.

copiis : abl. of accompaniment.

ab—posuerunt : this construction is best explained by *hyperbaton* (inversion in order of words), the regular construction being : *posuerunt castra minus duobus passuum ab* (*castris Caesaris*). The abl. *millibus* is ablative of difference : F.L. 58, 6 ; P.L. II., 124 (d).—*minus*, *plus*, *amplius* have no influence on the construction : cp. *ἔλασσον*, *πλεῖον* in Gk.: *ἀπέχει πλεῖον σταδίους δέκα*.—*millibus* ablative of measure : F. L. 131, 9 ; P. L. II., 124 (3).

CHAPTER VIII.

propter—virtutis : "on account of their fine reputation for valour."

proelio supersedere : "to delay the battle."—*supersedeo* means primarily, "to sit upon" in the sense of a presiding judge : Cato R. R. 5, B. I. : *vilicus litibus familiae supersedeat* : then "to refrain from" a thing in the sense of passing it over ; hence, "to delay."—*proelio* : ablative.

equestribus proeliis—periclitabatur : literally "he kept trying to find out by cavalry skirmishes what the enemy could do by their valour and what daring our men had in skirmishing."—*proeliis* : ablative of means.—*posset—auderent* : dependent question : F.L. 176, 2 ; P. L. II., 45.—*periclitabatur* =*periculum faciebat*. The original meaning of *periculum* is "a trial," "a test."

loco—idoneo : "the ground in front of the camp being naturally well adapted and suitable for drawing up his troops." The present participle of the verb *esse* being wanting we often find an adjective agreeing in predicate relation with a noun in abl. absolute :—*ad—instruendam* : for gerundive : F.L. 170, 3 ; P.L. II., 140.

quod—redibat : "because that hill on which the camp was pitched, rising a little from the plain, extended in width towards the enemy far enough to form an army in line, and on both sides it had steep banks and in front gently sloping upward it gradually resumed a level."—*ubi*= *in quo*.—*tantum* : acc. sing. neut. of adjective : acc. of extent of space. —*adversus* : predicate adjective after *patebat—loci* : F. L. 69, 10 ; P. L. II., 114.—*lateris deiectus* : literally, "slopes of the side."

transversam fossam : "an intrenchment at right angles," to the direction of the hill.

ad—fossas : "at the end of the intrenchments."

tormenta : (from root TORC, "to whirl") was the generic term under which were included *balistae*, *onagri*, *scorpiones*, *catapulta*.

quod—poterant : "because they were so strong in numbers."

multitudine : abl. of cause.

legionibus : the XIIIth and XIVth, which he had raised the previous summer in *Gallia Cisalpina*.

si quo opus esset : "if any where there was need." Explain the tense of the subjunctive.

subsidio : dat. of purpose : "as a reserve force."

suas—instruxerant = *suas copias ex castris eduxerant et instruxerant* : note that the Latins often express by a participle and a verb two co-ordinate clauses.

CHAPTER IX.

palus : distinguish in meaning *pălūs*, *pālŭs*.

hanc—erant : "the enemy were waiting to see whether our soldiers would cross this (marsh); our men, on the other hand, were under arms waiting to attack them (the enemy) when stuck fast (in the marsh), if they (the enemy) should first begin to cross it."—*hanc*, scil. *paludem*.—*transirent* : F.L. 96, 2 ; P.L. II., 95.—*si—fieret* : literally, "if a beginning of crossing (the marsh) should be made by them" : for the subjunctive : F.L. 209, 1 (2) ; P.L. II., 220.

proelio contendebatur : "a cavalry battle was fought between the two lines." For the passive *contendebatur* : F.L. 164, 2 : P.L. II., 57.

secundiore—nostris : "the cavalry battle being more fortunate than usual to our men." For abl. abs. ; F.L. 100, 5 ; P.L. II., 52 (a).

eo consilio : "with the object."

castellum : a redoubt which Titurius occupied with six cohorts on the south bank of the Axona (*Aisne*).

expugnarent : distinguish in meaning *oppugno*, *expugno*.

si—potuissent : the construction is : *partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt eo consilio ut, si minus potuissent pontem expugnare et interscindere.* The tense in *potuissent* implies the condition after the attempt had been made.

nobis usui: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. II., 75.

commeatu: abl. of separation: F.L. 158, 2; P.L. II., 73.

CHAPTER X.

equitatum—pontem: for the two accusatives: F.L. 96, 3; P.L. II., 73.

levis armaturae: for genitive of description; F.L. 130, 7, 8; P.L. II., 115.

eo loco: the battle is said to have taken place between the mouth of the little stream *Miette*, which flows through the marsh mentioned in Chapter IX. into the Axona (*Aisne*), and the modern village of *Pontavert*.

impeditos: "hampered in their movements."

circumventos interfecerunt=circumvenerunt et interfecerunt: see last note on Chapter VIII.

hostes: the main body of the Belgae who remained drawn up in battle array, differing from the *hostes impeditos* mentioned before who were simply a detachment.

oppido: Bibrax.

spem se fefellisse; literally, "that their hope had deceived them."

neque=et non.

iniquiorem: "less favourable" for them than the original position where the legions were drawn up.

constituerunt—esse—(ut) convenirent: *constituo* takes either—(1) the infinitive or (2) *ut* or *ne* with subjunctive, generally when the subjects of the main verb and dependent verb differ. Rarely do we find the construction varied in the same clause as here.

domum: what words are construed like the names of towns? F.L. 85, 1; P.L. II., 93 (a)

introduxissent: F.L. 209, 1, (2); P.L. II., 214 (2).

convenirent: in direct discourse this would be *conveniamus, convenite.*

copiis: "supplies" here: what are the usual meanings of *copia* in singular and plural? F.L. 278, 3; P.L. III., 54 (e).

finibus: for the dative; F.L. 120, 2; P. L. II., 56.

his—poterat: "these could not be persuaded to delay any longer or to refrain from bringing aid to their countrymen."—*his*: F.L. 164, 1 : P.L. II. 57.

CHAPTER XI.

ea—constituta: express this by other constructions.

secunda vigilia: from 9–12 P.M.

castris egressi=ex castris egressi: for abl. : F. L. 158, 2 (1); P. L. II., 123 (a).

nullo imperio: "without any definite marching order," or "command." The abl. absolute is explained by *cum—tumultu* and by *cum—properaret*.

primum—locum: "the first place in the line of march," *i.e.*, to get at the head of the retreating column.

fecerunt—videretur: "they so managed matters that their setting out had all the appearance of a rout." For subjunctive: F. L. 187, 2; P. L. II., 33.

per exploratores. Distinguish this from *ab exploratoribus* in meaning.

nondum perspexerat: "he had as yet no intelligence."

exercitum=peditatum: as the foot soldiers made up the bulk of the Roman army, *milites* is often used for *pedites*; *exercitus* for *peditatus*.

castris=in castris.

qui moraretur=ut is moraretur: "to stop": F.L. 184, 1; P.L. II., 25.

his=equitibus implied in *equitatum*.

novissimos, scil. *hostes*: "the rear of the enemy.

magnam—conciderunt: "slew a great number of them as they were fleeing." Distinguish *concĭdo*, *concīdo* in derivation and meaning.

cum—consisterent: "since those on the rear of their column, to whom the Romans had come, were making a stand."—*ventum est*: F.L. 164, 2; P.L. II., 57.

priores—ponerent: "(while) those in advance (of the rear guard), because they thought they were out of danger, and were not kept together by any necessity or command of their officers, when the shout reached their ears, all broke up their ranks in confusion and rested their hope in flight." *priores*, scil. *hostes*: those at the head of the retreating column.—*viderentur*

—*continerentur* : subjunctive by attraction.—*perturbatis ordinibus* is more closely connected with verb *ponerent* than the first abl. abs. : *exaudito clamore*.—*ponerent* : F.L. 198, 2 ; P.L. II., 165 (a).

quantum—spatium : "as long as the length of the day permitted," *i.e.*, as long as it was daylight.

CHAPTER XII.

postridie eius diei : *posteri die*, *cotidie* are locatives merged in a dative ; cp. in old Latin *die quinti*, *die crastini*. Others take *posteri die* as ablative and compare *antea*, *postea*—*eius die* is a pleonasm. For the genitive cp. τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ τῆς μάχης.

priusquam se—reciperent : "before the enemy could recover themselves" : F.L. 201, 5 ; P.L. II., 175.

magno itinere confecto : "by making a forced march." What was the length of a regular day's march? What, of a forced march? See Introduction, p. XXII., V.

Noviodunum : the ending *-dun* is Keltic for "town" ; cp. *Lugdunum* : *Melodunum* : so that *Noviodunum* means *Newtown*. The modern *Soissons* (a corruption of Suessiones) is on its site, nearly 30 miles west of *Berry-au-Bac*.

ex itinere : "on his march."

latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem : note the *chiasmus*.

paucis defendentibus quamvis pauci (id) defenderent : "though those who defended it were few" : the abl. absol. is concessive here.

usui : F.L. 134, 1 ; P.L. II., 75.

vineas agere : "to get ready the *vineae*." The *vineae* were wooden frames, eight feet high, seven wide and sixteen long, protected with raw or wet hides. Under this protection the men advanced to the wall of the enemy, undermined the wall or filled up the ditch.

aggere iacto : "a platform being constructed." The *aggeres* were platforms for the artillery or for movable towers.

magnitudine—celeritate : F.L. 71, 3 ; P.L. II., 124 (a).

operum : "siege works."

Galli : appositive : "they, as Gauls."

et—impetrant: "and at the request of the Remi, they (Suessiones) obtained their wish that their lives should be spared."

CHAPTER XIII.

primis=principibus.

Bratuspantium: an old town *Bratuspante* which once stood near *Breteuil* in Picardie, at the head of the Somme Valley.

contulissent—abesset: bring out in translation the differences in tense: so also in *accessisset—poneret.*

sese—venire: "that they placed themselves under his protection and power."—*eius* may be both objective and subjective genitive and hence implies a mutual pledge being given.

neque=et non.

pueri: "children": not necessarily "boys" merely.

passis manibus: "with outstretched hands," expressing humiliation.

more: abl. of manner: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (b).

CHAPTER XIV.

pro his=pro Bellovacis: "in defence of these."—*eum=Caesarem.*

reverterat: conjugate this verb. What verbs are semi-deponent?

facit verba: "intercedes."

Bellovacos: what are the chief rules for oblique narration: F.L. 209, 1, 2; P.L. II., 213-220. In *verba facit* is implied *dixit* on which the indirect narrative depends.

omni tempore: note that the acc. *omne tempus* is not ordinarily used to express duration of time.

qui dicerent: "who kept saying": F.L. 209, 1 (2); P.L. II., 214 (2).

omnes—perferre: "endured every kind of ill-treatment and insult." Explain the use of the plural of abstract nouns.

qui: the antecedent of this is *eos* understood, the subject of *profugisse.*

principes=auctores: "advisers."

in Britanniam profugisse: Britain has often been a refuge for French agitators as in the recent case of Boulanger.

ut—utatur: "that he would exercise his well-known clemency and moderation towards them." What verbs govern the ablative? F.L. 116; P.L. II., 65.

fecerit: explain the fut. perf.

quorum—consuerint: "by whose aid and help, whatever wars happened they (Aedui) were wont to hold out."—*auxiliis—opibus*: abl. means. Change from *Bellovacos* to the end of the chapter into direct narrative.

CHAPTER XV.

honoris—causa: "out of regard for Divitiacus and the Aedui."—*Divitiaci*: objective genitive.

auctoritate: F. L. 131, 9; P. L. II., 124 (b) 3.—*multitudine*: F. L. 71, 3; P. L. II., 124 (a).

eo loco: Bratuspantium.

Nervii: these were looked upon as the most savage people of the Belgae.

natura: "character."

nullum—mercatoribus: "traders have no access to these." These traders were mainly from Massilia (*Marseilles*) and were probably Greeks and Italians who followed the Roman camp.

nihil—pati = (*eos*) *non pati quicquam vini*: "they do not at all permit the use of wine": for the partitive genitive: F. L. 69, 10; P. L. II., 113. —*reliquarum rerum* governed by *quicquam* implied in *nihil*. For a similar statement regarding the Belgae generally see Chapter I., B. I.

iis rebus: "by these enjoyments."

quod—existimarent: what two reasons for the subjunctive?—*Eorum*: would *suos* be permitted here?

increpitare atque incusare: "they rebuked and even blamed." Distinguish *et*, *atque* and *-que* as connectives. Supply *eos* as subject of *increpitare*, *incusare*.—*qui* = *quippe qui*: "inasmuch as they": F. L. 198, 4; P. L. II., 196.

CHAPTER XVI.

eorum = *Nerviorum*.

triduum: scil., *spatium*, acc. of duration of time = *tres dies*.

millia: note that *plus*, *minus*, *amplius* have no influence on constructions of extent of time or space.

in itinere: "(already) on the march."

mulieres—coniecisse: the construction is: *inveniebat* (*eos*) *coniecisse mulieres* (*homines*) *que qui*, etc.

CHAPTER XVII.

qui—deligant: "to pick out."—*qui = ut ei*: F. L. 184, 1; P.L. III., 25.

ex—Gallis: join this with *complures*.

dedititiis: the Ambiani, Suessiones, and Bellovaci.

eorum—perspecta: "the usual marching order on the part of our army during these days being observed."

eorum dierum: depends on *itineris*.

inter—intercedere: "that between every two legions a great number of beasts of burden were placed." Distinguish *impedimentum*, *impedimenta*, and *sarcina* in meaning. The *impedimenta* seem here to refer to the horses, waggons or any beast of burden used in transporting the heavy material of the army.

neque—adoriri: "and that there was no trouble, when the first legion reached the camp, and (when) the other legions were a long way off, in attacking this (legion) still encumbered with baggage."—*negotii*: partitive genitive after *quidquam*.—*spatium*: F. L. 69, 9; P. L. II., 92.

futurum esse: depending on *demonstrarunt*, and having the clause *ut—auderent* for subject: "the result would be that the other legions would not be bold enough to withstand the attack": F. L. 187, 1; P. L. II., 33. —*reliquae*, scil., *legiones*.

adiuvabat—posset: "the following fact added weight to the advice of those who brought this intelligence, that the Nervii, long ago, since they could do nothing with cavalry (for up to this time they do not pay any heed to this branch of the service, but whatever power they have rests in their infantry), that the more easily they might obstruct the operations of the cavalry of their neighbours, if they came against them (Nervii) for the purpose of plunder, had caused, by lopping the trees when young and by intertwining the branches which grew out thick in a lateral direction and by interposing brambles and briars, these hedges like a wall to form a defence,

which far from being able to enter they could not even see through." Such is the literal translation. Break up the sentence into several separate sentences for a good English version.

antiquitus: explain the ending of the adverb.—*quo*: F. L. 183, 5; P. L. II., 20.—*venissent*: F. L. 209, 1 (2); P. L. II., 214 (2).—*effecerant ut*: F. L. 181, 3; P. L. II., 208.—*instar muri*: *instar* is an indeclinable substantive.—*non modo = non modo non*: cp. the Greek use of οὐ μόνον for οὐ μόνον οὐ.

non—consilium: "this plan should not be neglected by them": for dative *sibi*: F. L. 173, 4; P. L. II., 105.

CHAPTER XVIII.

loci—quem locum: the repetition of the antecedent with the relative is frequent in Caesar, especially when exactness is required. This place is said to be on the River Sabis (now *Sambre*) in France, near the Belgian frontier, about two miles S. W. of *Maubeuge*.

declivis: a hill sloping from the top to the bottom was called *declivis*: from the bottom to the top, *acclivis*.

huic—contrarius: "facing and opposite to this." There is little difference between *adversus* and *contrarius*: the former seems to mean that the two hills corresponded in form and extent.

passus—ducentos: some say that the hill began to rise about 200 paces from the margin of the river, others that it was 200 paces from the bottom to the top.—*passus*: acc. of extent: F.L. 69, 9; P.L. II., 92.

infimus apertus = infima parte apertus opposed to *ab superiore parte silvestris*; "thickly wooded on the top, so that it was not easy to see into it."

secundum: here a preposition: "down the river": we have also *secundo flumine*, *adverso flumine* for "down the river," "up the river": *secundo* and *adverso* being adjs. in abl. absolute, agreeing with *flumine*.

pedum—trium: genitive of description: F.L. 130, 7; P.L. II., 115.

CHAPTER XIX.

copiis: ablative of accompaniment: F. L. 12, 3; P. L. II., 124 (1).

ratio—detulerant: "the system and arrangement of the army was differ-

ent from what the Belgae had reported to the Nervii."—*habebat*: sing. from the *unity* of idea contained in *ordo ratioque*.—*ac*.: with words signifying difference, = "than."

sui consuetudine: "according to his usual custom": abl. of manner.

expeditas: "without baggage."

duae legiones: the XIIIth and XIVth legions.

totum—claudebant: "brought up the whole rear."

praesidio impedimentis: for the two datives: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. II., 75.

identidem: "repeatedly."

neque—auderent: "and when our soldiers did not dare to follow those in retreat further than the level and open ground extended in front." *neque*=*et non*.—*quem ad finem*=*ad eum finem ad quem*=*usque eo quo*.—*porrecta*: literally, "stretching in front."

quae—venerant: "which had been the first to come up."

opere dimenso: "the work allotted to each being measured out." After picking out a place for the camp (Chapter XVIII., *locum idoneum castris deligere*), the six legions which first came up began to fortify the camp (*castra munire*) after the ground had been marked out for each by the surveyors (*castrorum metatores*, or *mensores*). Note that *dimenso* is passive. The participles of deponent verbs are used often passively: Madvig., § 153.

ubi—fecerunt: "when the first part of the baggage train of our army was seen by those who were concealed in ambush in the forest, which had been agreed upon among them as the proper time for beginning the battle, on a sudden they darted forth with all their forces, and made an onset on our cavalry in the same order as they had drawn up their line of battle and ranks within the woods, and as they had encouraged each other to do."

quod—convenerat: in apposition to the clause *ubi—visa sunt*.—*tempus*: predicate after *convenerat*.—*omnibus copiis*: abl. of accompaniment: F.L. 12, 3; P.L. II., 124 (1).

proturbatis: "driven forward in confusion." Another reading is *perturbatis*.

paene—tempore: "almost in one and the same moment."

ad silvas: "at the edge of the woods."

in manibus: may mean what a person has under his hand; hence what

is in his power, or as here what is close at hand ; cp. Sall. Bell. Jug. 1, 57 : *cupere proelium in manibus facere.*

adverso colle : "up the hill" : cp. *secundum* in Chapter XVIII. They made straight for the Roman camp with the hill before them.

CHAPTER XX.

Caesari: for dative: F. L. 173, 4; P. L. II., 105.

vexillum—dandum : notice the *asyndeton* in this sentence. Why does Caesar here use it?—*vexillum* (diminutive of *velum*, "a sail") was a crimson flag hung out from the *praetorium* as the signal of battle. Plutarch calls it φοινικοῦς χιτών, "a crimson cloak."

quum—oporteret : "when they had to rush to arms." Explain the subjunctive here : F.L. 203, 3 ; P.L. II., 169.

signum : "the signal of battle." The various instruments in Caesar's army were : (1) *tuba* : a trumpet, straight, with a funnel-shaped opening and used for giving signals to form in line, advance, and retreat ; (2) *cornu* : horn, originally made of buffalo horn, gave the signal to the army to assemble and hear the address of the commander, or the sentence of death pronounced ; (3) *bucina* : clarion was sounded to mark a change of watch. In Caesar's time the *lituus* was also used, though not mentioned by him. It was used for cavalry and had a harsh and high note.

qui—arcessendi : "those who had gone a little too far to seek materials or the mound had to be summoned." The antecedent of *qui* is *ei milites* understood, subject of *arcessendi sunt.*

milites cohortandi : referring to the usual harangue (*militum cohortatio*) of the general before the action began.

signum dandum : it is better to take this=*signum committendi proelii dandum est*: "the first order to charge." Others say it refers to the *tessera* or watch-word given to the men, so that by calling it they might avoid mistake or confusion in distinguishing friends and foes. It was usually some auspicious term or name. The watch-word of Caesar was usually *Venus Genetrix* ; of Brutus, *Libertas*. With *tessera* : cp. Greek σύνθημα.

successus : "approach" of the Nervii from below.

his—militum : "two things, namely, the skill and experience of the soldiers were of assistance to him to meet these difficulties."—*difficultatibus* ;

dative, depending on *subsidio* :—*usus* : a more important word than *scientia* in Caesar's eyes. Note *ac*, or *atque* join words of which the latter is the more important.

non—poterant : "they were able to give the command to themselves with no less advantage than to receive the command from others." This shows the high degree of discipline to which Caesar had brought his legions.

ab—vetuerat : "Caesar had forbidden the different lieutenants to leave the fortifications and their respective legions, except after the camp was fortified." For distributive numeral : F L. 69, 8 ; P.L. III., 58 (c).

nisi—castris : the full construction : *nisi decessissent munitis castris* : for abl. absol.: F.L. 100, 5 ; P.L. II., 49.

nihil (=*ne hilum* : "not a mark," or =*ne filum*, "not a thread,") is here used for an emphatic *non.*

videbantur, scil. *administranda esse* : "but they did of their own accord what they thought ought to be done."

CHAPTER XXI.

necessariis—imperatis : "having given (only) the necessary orders": F.L. 100, 5 ; P.L. II. 49.

quam in partem—obtulit : the full construction is : *in eam partem quam partem fors obtulit* : "in the direction which fortune first presented."—*fors* : (from *fero*,) whatever fortune brings.

retinerent—posset : for the imperfect subjunctives. Note the force of the imperfect denoting continuous action.

neu=*et ne* : cp. Caes. *de Bell. Gall.*, 4, 17 : *ut—his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur neu ponti nocerent.*

animo=*in animo.*

quod—posset : this gives the reason for *signum dedit.*

quam quo=*quam ut eo* : "than the throw of a dart" : F.L. 198, 4 ; P.L. II., 196.

pugnantibus occurrit : "he finds them already engaged in fighting."

insignia : these seem to be the *cristae*, feathers black and red, and other ornaments worn by the Roman soldiers to distinguish the legions and cohorts. These were movable and were not worn on the march.

scutis: abl. of separation: F.L. 158, 2 (1); P.L. II., 123 (a). The *scutum* was protected on the march with a leathern cover to shield it from the effects of the weather.

quam—conspexit: the full expression would be: *hac in parte et ad haec signa quisque constitit, quam primam in partem devenit, et quae prima signa conspexit.* On ordinary occasions it was a serious offence for a soldier to be absent from his regular post.

in—suis = *in quaerendo sua* (*signa*): "in seeking out his own standard."

CHAPTER XXII.

magis—postulabat: "more in accordance with the position of the ground, the slope of the hill, and the urgency of the occasion than with the principles and arrangement approved of by military science."—*magis ut—postulabat*: distinguish the use of the indic. and the subjunctive with *ut* following the comparative.

cum—resisterent: "since, as the different legions were scattered, different places held out against the enemy."—*diversis—legionibus*: abl. absolute.

resisterent—impediretur: for casual *quum*: F.L. 203, 1; P.L. II., 167.

sepibusque—interiectis: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. II., 49.

provideri, scil., *poterat*: the subject of which is the clause *quid—esset.*

fortunae: genitive depending on *eventus*: "the varying success of fortune also followed": that is, some divisions were victorious and some defeated.

CHAPTER XXIII.

acie: genitive—*aciei.* Compare Aulus Gellius: *Caius Caesar in libro de Analogia secundo, huius die et huius specie dicendum putat.*

ea pars: the *sinistra pars* occupied by the soldiers of the IXth and Xth legions.—*his* = *Atrebatibus.*

ex loco superiore: the prepositional abl. absolute: "since they occupied the higher ground."

conantes, scil., *eos* (*Atrebates*): "as they (the Atrebates) were trying."

ipsi = *legionum nonae et decimae milites.*

transire: for infinitive after *non dubitaverunt* see note under Chapter II., B. II.

diversae : "separately."

erant congressi : scil. *milites*, from *legiones*.

ex loco—proeliabantur : "had gone down from the high ground and were fighting on the banks of the river." Explain the force of the imperfect.

nudatis : "being stripped" of defenders.

intervallo : abl. of difference : F.L. 58, 6 ; P.L. II., 124 (d).

latere aperto : their flank being left uncovered" : abl. abs. In this case *latus*=*latus sinistrum*.

summum—locum : "the height occupied by the camp."

CHAPTER XXIV.

levis armaturae : see note on *levis armaturae* : Chapter X., B. II.
adversis : "face to face."

decumana porta : the Roman camp had four gates : *porta praetoria*, in front, facing the enemy, and called from being near the *praetorium* or headquarters of the general ; opposite to this was the *porta decumana* in the rear of the camp, and so called because the 10th cohorts of the legion *(decima cohors)* were stationed there ; *porta principalis dextra*, in the centre on the right hand side of the camp, and *porta principalis sinistra*, on the left hand side.

respexissent—vidissent : F.L. 203, 3 ; P.L. II., 169.

quorum—singularis : "whose reputation for valour is very high among the Gauls."—*opinio* sometimes means, as here, the impression conveyed to others.

auxilia—civitate=*auxiliorum loco ab civibus* : "as auxiliaries by their countrymen." This accounts for *ab*. So also at the end of this chapter *civitate*=*civibus*.

castris : for ablative : F. L. 116 ; P. L. II., 65. *Potior* governs the genitive when it means *to be master of*.

CHAPTER XXV.

Caesar—scuto—detracto—processit : to this main sentence there is a long *prothesis* or introduction which may conveniently be divided into two parts, the first extending to *esse impedimento vidit*, and the second, to *submitti posset*.

ab—cohortatione=*ab decima legione quam cohortatus erat.*

signis—collatis: causative to *esse impedimento*: "since the standards (of the maniples) were crowded together." Distinguish *aquila*, *signum*, *vexillum* in meaning.

centurionibus occisis: this and the four succeeding ablatives absolute are causal to *reliquos esse tardiores*: "all the centurions of the fourth cohort were slain, etc., therefore, all the rest of the men were getting cowed." —*primipilo*: *primuspilus* was the first centurion of the first *manipulus* of the *triarii* and was the first in rank of the sixty centurions of the legion. He was entrusted with the eagle of the legion, ranked among the *equites* as regards pay, and had a place in the council of war along with the consul and tribunes.

et—excedere=*et nonnullos ab novissimis locum deserere ac proelio excedere*: "while some in the rear were quitting their posts and withdrawing from the battle." Others have *desertos*: "abandoned by those in the rear." It is better to supply *loco* with *deserto*. For *proelio*: F.L. 158, 2; P.L., 123 (a).

hostes—instare: "and that the enemy both in front did not cease coming up, and on both sides were pressing (our men) hard." With *instare* supply *nostris militibus.*

et rem—vidit: "as he also saw that the danger was great." With *angusto*, scil. *loco*. We still in American *parlance* speak of a man being in a "tight place." The length of the sentence and the number of the dependent clauses led Caesar to repeat *vidit.*

subsidium: "reserves": the XIIIth and XIVth legions were too far off to be of any assistance.

scuto—detracto: "snatching a shield from a soldier in the rear." In *uni militi* we have a dative of reference after *detracto*. Many verbs compounded with, *ab*, *de*, *ex*, like *adimo*, *detraho*, take in the active an acc. of the thing and dat. of the person, the latter instead of an abl. of separation. With this meaning of *uni*: cp. the English *a*, *an*: A.S. *ân*, Fr. *un*, all really same.

signa—laxare: "to advance and to open out their ranks." Distinguish *signa inferre*, *referre*, *convertere*, *efferre*: *ad signa convenire*, *a signis discedere*, *collatis signis confligere*, *signis infestis ire aut incedere*. The original meaning of *manipulus* was a handful (*manus*, *pleo*) of grass at the top of a pole referred to by Ovid. Fasti. III., 115. The pole was changed into a spear and the wisp of grass was replaced by gilded, silver, or bronze animals, of which the *eagle* was retained as the emblem of the legion.

Afterwards the animals were replaced by a round ball of metal.—*laxare*: to give full play to the sword and to lessen the deadly effect of the enemies' missiles.

militibus: dative; F.L. 120, 1; P.L. II., 69.

pro se quisque: "each man to the best of his ability."

etiam—cuperet: "even in the most critical moment desired to do his best."—*navare=gnavare*: "to do actively": cp. *gnarus*.

CHAPTER XXVI.

iuxta, scil., *duodecimam legionem*: "next to the twelfth legion."

ut—inferrent: "that the (two) legions should gradually draw together, face about and charge the enemy." The seventh legion took up its position in rear of the twelfth, so that it faced in the opposite direction and thus the two would present a double front to the enemy. The expression *conversa* would thus refer to the seventh only, the two forming thus one continuous line. For *conversa signa—inferrent=converterent signa et—inferrent*. Note this use of the participle gives a compactness to the Latin sentence.

ferret—timerent: F.L. 203, 1; P.L. II., 169. With *timerent*, scil., *hostes*. Explain the use of *ut* and *ne* after verbs of *fearing*: F.L. 185, 3, 4; P.L. II., 154.

aversi: "in the rear."

legionum—duarum: XIIIth and XIVth.

castris: the IXth and Xth legions under Labienus had driven the Atrebates across the river and gained possession of the enemy's camp.

gererentur—esset—versaretur: for subjunctives: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. II., 43.

qui: referring to *milites* implied in *legiones*.

versaretur: agreeing with the nearest nominative as the most important subject.

nihil—fecerunt: "they came up as fast as they could": literally, "they left nothing undone with respect to speed." For the partitive genitive *reliqui*: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. II., 113.

CHAPTER XXVII.

etiam qui—procubuissent: "even such as had lain down badly wounded":

literally, "spent with wounds." For subjunctive: F.L. 188, 5 (a); P.L. II., 34.

scutis innixi: "supporting themselves on their shields." Note that *nitor* and its compounds govern the ablative: F.L. 116; P.L. II., 65.

equites vero—praeferrent: the construction is *tanta rerum commutatio est facta ut equites vero—praeferrent*: "such a change in the battle took place that indeed the cavalry, to wipe out by their valour their disgraceful flight, put themselves in front of the common soldiers in every part of the field." For *militibus*: F. L. 120, 1; P. L. II., 69.

at: often used to introduce a new subject, or a transition from one part of a description to another.

in—salutis: "even in the utter despair of safety."

his deiectis: "when these in turn were struck down."

qui superessent: scil. *ei hostes qui superessent*: for subjunctive of indefinite antecedent: F. L. 188, 5 (a); P L. II., 34.

ut ex tumulo: "as from a hillock."

ut—locum: "so that it ought to be concluded, that men of so great valour had not without sufficient reason dared to cross a very broad river, ascend very high banks, (and) enter upon a very disadvantageous position." *nequidquam*, here = *frustra*. What is the usual distinction between *frustra* and *nequidquam?*

quae—redegerat: "all of which things, though in themselves most difficult, their great courage had rendered easy of accomplishment."—*redegerat* = *reddiderat*.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

prope—redacto: "when the nation and name of the Nervii had been almost exterminated." There seems to be some exaggeration in this statement, as the Nervii aided the Gauls in their uprising against the Romans B. C. 52: see Caesar, *de Bell. Gall.* 7, 75.

pueris: "children."

quum—arbitrarentur: "since they saw that nothing would stop the conquerors nor defend the vanquished." On causal *cum*: F. L. 203, 1; P. L. II., 167.

omnium: depending on *consensu*.

millibus—sexaginta: in Chapter IV. the Nervii had promised 50,000.

vix ad quingentos: hyperbaton for *ad vix quingentos*: for a similar inversion of order, see Caesar *de Bell. Gall.* B. I., Chapter VI., *vix qua singuli.* Probably the exaggeration of the losses was for the purpose of exciting pity in Caesar.

possent: F. L. 209, 1 (2); P. L. II., 214 (2).

finitimis imperavit: translate, *milites civitati imperavit*: *militibus imperavit.*

CHAPTER XXIX.

supra: Chapter XVI., B. II.

omnibus copiis: ablative of accompaniment: F. L. 12, 3; P. L. II., 124 (1).

auxilio Nerviis: for two datives: F. L. 134, 1; P. L. II., 75.

venirent = in itinere essent: "were on the march."

oppidum: some say that this town, Aduatucum, was on the plateau at the junction of the Meuse and the Sambre, now *Namur*, not far from the field of Waterloo. Others say it was situated on the hill Falhize, on the north bank of the Meuse, opposite the town of Huy, some miles below Namur.

quod cum: "and though this (town)": *quod = et id*, scil., *oppidum.*

despectus: "wide prospect:" owing to the height of the hill on which it was built.

in—pedum: join *ducentorum pedum* with *aditus.* For case of *pedum*: F. L. 130, 7; P. L. II., 115.

magni ponderis: F. L. 130, 7; P. L. II., 115.

ex—pugnati: according to some the name Aduatuci is purely Keltic, from *aduat*, "runners."

citra flumen: on the west side of the Rhine.

custodiam—ac praesidio: we have also *custodiam—ac praesidium*; *custodiae—ac praesidio.* Some also omit *una.*

eorum: the Cimbri and Teutones who fell at Aquae Sextiae 102 B. C., and at Campi Raudii 101 B. C.

quum—defenderent: "when at one time they carried on an aggressive war (against their enemies), at another time warded it off when made upon

themselves." With *bellum inferrent*, scil. *hostibus*: with *illatum* scil. *sibi*. Observe that *inferre bellum*, not *invadere*, is the technical term "to invade."

CHAPTER XXX.

primo adventu: "as soon as they arrived": cp. *prima luce*: "as soon as day dawned."

parvulis proeliis: "in skirmishes."

pedum duodecim, scil. in *altitudinem*: for the genitive of description: F.L. 130, 7; P. L. II., 115.—*oppido*, scil. *in*.

vineis—*constitui*: the *vineae* were brought forward to cover the men who raised the platform (*agger*) on which the tower (*turris*) was to be placed and brought up to the wall. The men in the tower then drove the besieged from the wall: cp. Sallust. Bell. Jug. c. 76.—*turrim*: what nouns have (1) the accusative singular in *-im*: (2) in *-im* or *-em?*

irridere—*increpitare*: historical infinitives.

quod—*instrueretur*: the *quod* introduces the reason of the Gauls, not of Caesar: F. L. 198, 2; P. L. II., 165 (a).—*ab* properly governs *muro* understood.—*tanto spatio*: ablative of degree of difference: F. L. 58, 6; P. L. II., 124 (d).

tantulae staturae: "of such trifling stature": F. L. 130, 7; P. L. II., 115.

brevitas nostra = *brevitas nostrorum militum*.

confiderent: what would the form be in direct discourse? F. L. 209, 1 (5); P. L. II., 214 (a) 1.

CHAPTER XXXI.

moveri, scil. *turrim*.

specie: "sight."

non: join this with *sine ope divina*.

qui—*possent* = *quippe qui*—*possent*: "inasmuch as they—were able": F.L. 198, 4; P.L. II., 196.

quam—*audirent*: "of which they had constantly heard from others." *Audio*, as ἀκούω in Greek, has often a perfect meaning in the present. For the mood of *despoliaret*: F.L. 181, 3; P.L. II., 27, 208.

traditis armis = *si arma tradita essent*.

sibi—consuessent: "that it would be better for them, if they should be brought to such a condition, to endure any lot whatever at the hands of the Roman people than to be tortured to death by those over whom they had been accustomed to hold absolute sway." The subject of *praestare* is the part *quamvis—consuessent.*

CHAPTER XXXII.

consuetudine sua: "in accordance with his habit": of treating mercifully a defeated foe: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. II., 124 (b).

aries: generally the Romans spared the inhabitants, if the city surrendered before the battering ram was applied.

in Nerviis: "in the case of the Nervii."

ne quam: is *quam* here from *quis* or *qui?*

re—suos: "when the answer was reported to their people they said they were ready to do whatever was ordered (by Caesar)."—*ad suos*: explain *ad.* Why may not *suis* be read for *ad suos?* F.L. 6, 3; P.L. II., 93 (a).—*facere,* scil. *eos,* i.e., *Aduatucos.*

muri, i.e., of the town: *agger,* of the Romans.

pace sunt usi: "they enjoyed peace," "they kept quiet." What verbs govern the ablative? F.L. 116; P.L. II., 65.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

sub vesperum: "at the approach of evening": cp. *ὑπὸ νύκτα.* There is also a reading *sub vespere,* which has not quite the same meaning. In Caesar, *de Bell. Gall.* 5, 13, *sub bruma* means "in the depth of winter." Sometimes *sub* with acc. means also "a little after:" Livy 21, 18: *sub hanc vocem—succlamatum est.*

illi: afterwards distributed by *partim—partim* so as to form a divided subject of *fecerunt.*

ante inito consilio: "having previously formed a plot."

quod—crediderant: what does the indic. here express? F.L. 198, 2; P.L. II., 165 (a).

deditione facta: express this in other ways.—*praesidia deducturos,* scil., *esse*: "would either withdraw their outposts," from the line of circumvallation where the Roman sentries kept watch. Supply *aut* with *deducturos* (*esse*).—*denique*: "at least," here=*saltem.*

scutis—intextis: "having made shields of bark or of osiers intertwined." The *ex* governs *viminibus* as well as *cortice*. Others take *viminibus intertextis* as abl. absolute.

tertia vigilia: with the Romans the civil day began at midnight and ended at midnight as with us; the natural day began at twilight and ended at dark. The day and the night were divided into twelve hours each, the length of each hour depending on the season. The night was also divided into four watches (*vigiliae*) of three hours each: from 6–9 P. M.: 9–12: 1–3: 3–6.

ascensus: because the Roman works were on a height above the level of the plain.

omnibus copiis: abl. of accompaniment: F. L. 12, 3; P. L. II., 124 (1).

repentino: adverb for the more usual form *repente* which some have.

ignibus: "by fire signals."—*proximis*: nearest that part of the town from which the sally was made.

concursum est: cp. *itur*, *ventum est*: F.L. 164, 2; P.L. III., 72 (h).

ut—debuit: "as brave men were bound to fight, when their case was nearly desperate, on disadvantageous terms against men hurling their missiles from a rampart and towers."—*in extrema—salutis*: the prepositional ablative absolute: F.L. 188, 5 (a); P.L. II., 34.

sectio: "booty," in this case the inhabitants as well as their goods. Properly speaking *sectio* was property sold on the public account whether it was property taken in war, or property forfeited to the *populus*, or property sold for the payment of a penalty. *Sector* was a purchaser of such property. Some say the word is derived (1) from *sequi*, "to follow," on account of the merchants (*mercatores*) following the army for the purpose of speculating in such property, or, (2) from *secare*, "to retail," because the purchaser (*sector*) retailed to the merchant what he bought in a lump.

milium quinquaginta trium: predicate genitive of characteristic: F.L. 130, 7; P.L. II., 115.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

Venetos: The names of the tribes here mentioned still survive in corrupted forms: *Veneti*, in the modern *Vannes;* Redones, in *Rennes;* Aulerci Eburovices, in *Evreux;* Sesuvios, in *Séez*. So in Chapter XXXV., Carnutes, Andes, Turones, may be seen in the modern *Chartres*, *Angers*, and *Tours*.

CHAPTER XXXV.

quae incolerent: for subjunctive of attraction: F. L. 188, 5; P. L. II., 220.

se: referring to *nationibus*.

qui—pollicerentur = ut ei pollicerentur: F.L. 198, 4; P.L. II., 196.

legationes = legatos: abstract for concrete.

Italiam: Caesar means Gallia Cisalpina, or Citerior, which, though within the natural boundaries of Italy, formed no part of Italy in a political sense at this time. Gallia Cisalpina was a *provincia*.

ex—Caesaris: "in accordance with the letters of Caesar."

dies—supplicatio: we have also mention of *supplicationes* in Caesar, de Bell. Gall., 4, 38; 7, 90. In these cases the genitive *dierum* is used. Of course *dies* is acc. of duration of time. A *supplicatio* was a religious thanksgiving and festival for a successful victory, proclaimed by a resolution of the senate and celebrated with or without a triumph.

accidit nulli: the longest celebration before this time was the *supplicatio*, lasting for ten days, in honour of Pompey's victory over Mithradates. Note emphatic position of *nulli*. See Chapter VI., B. II.

SHORT EXERCISES

BASED ON CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, B. II.

For Oral Translation into Latin.

I.

1. We have mentioned above that Caesar was in winter-quarters in Hither Gaul and that frequent reports were brought to him that the Gauls had formed a league against him. 2. The Gauls were afraid that Caesar would lead his army against them. 3. They were instigated by some tribes who did not wish the Roman army to remain in these places. 4. The people were constantly aiming at a revolution because they were annoyed (*moleste ferre*) that the Romans had conquered them. 5. They hired men who were able very easily to carry out their plans.

II.

1. Caesar was greatly disturbed by the letters and news which he received from his lieutenant. 2. At the beginning of the summer he enlisted two legions and sent his soldiers into the territory of the Belgae to carry on war. 3. He directs his lieutenant to find out what the Gauls were doing. 4. The lieutenant informed him that the enemy had collected large bands and had brought together a large army within ten days into one spot. 5. He thought that he should provide corn and that he should move his camp into the territory of the Belgae.

III.

1. Sooner than any one expected, Caesar came into the territory of the Remi, who dwelt next the river Rhine. 2. The ambassadors of the Remi, the leading men of the state, were sent to say that they would give up all their (possessions) to the Romans. 3. "We have not," said one of the ambassadors, "formed a league with the rest of the Belgae, nor have we entered into a conspiracy at all." 4. We are ready to aid you with (supplies of) corn and arms. 5. The Germans who dwelt across the Rhine were unable to deter them from forming a league with the Gauls.

IV.

(*a*)

1. He asked what states were in arms against the republic. 2. Most of the Belgae are descended from the Germans, and in ancient times crossed the Rhine. 3. They drove out all the Gauls from that district and prevented the Cimbri and Teutoni from entering their territory. 4. We found out how many men each tribe had promised for the war. 5. The Helvetii are the most powerful tribe of all Gaul on account of their valour, influence and number of population.

(*b*)

1. They promised to supply ten thousand picked men. 2. Among them lived a King, the most powerful of all Gaul, who held sway not merely over the greater part of that district, but also over Britain. 3. We entrusted to Galba the supreme command of the whole war. 4. On account of his valour, this man held sway (*regnum obtinere*) for many years among the Nervii. 5. All these tribes are called by the general (*unus*) name of Gauls.

V.

(*a*)

1. When Caesar had cheered the Remi by his speech, the whole senate came to him. 2. He orders the enemy to bring hostages to him. 3. He informed the Aedui how important it was for him that all things should be done punctually (*ad diem*). 4. "We must not fight," said he, "so many enemies at one time." 5. We began to lead our men into the territories of the Belgae. 6. Our men began to be led into the territories of the Belgae.

(*b*)

1. All the forces assembled on that day at one spot. 2. He hears from spies that the river Axona is about ten miles off. 3. He led his army across the river and pitched his camp on the farther bank. 4. The ditch and rampart rendered the rear of the camp safe. 5. He was able to convey corn to the camp without any danger.

VI.

1. The camp of Caesar was distant from the town about ten miles. 2. This town began to be besieged by the Belgae with all their forces. 3. When a large number of the enemy surrounded all the walls, they began to hurl stones from every side. 4. They formed a *testudo*, after they had

hurled stones and darts against the enemy. 5. Night put an end to the siege. 6. "Unless they send aid to me," said he, "I am not able to hold out long."

VII.

1. The archers and slingers were ordered to aid the citizens. 2. At the arrival of Caesar hope came to the Remi. 3. He delayed a few days in the neighbourhood of the town and devastated the territory of the enemy. 4. He burned all the villages which he could approach and pitched his camp (at a distance) less than three miles off. 5. It was plain by the camp-fires how great this camp was.

VIII.

1. He daily tested the valour of the enemy and the daring of our soldiers. 2. When it was noticed that our men were not inferior to the enemy, he drew up his line in front of the camp on a hill. 3. The hill in front gradually slopes to a plain. 4. The enemy were not able to surround our men because Caesar had planned a redoubt (*castellum*) on each flank. 5. The two legions which he had left in the camp he was able to hold as reserves.

IX.

1. The enemy crossed a small marsh while our men were waiting. 2. The general was ready to attack the enemy if they began to cross the river. 3. When both lines had been engaged in battle, the enemy were led back to their camp. 4. We have mentioned above that the river Axona to which the enemy set out, was in the rear of our army. 5. They led some of their forces across the river with the intention of destroying the bridge. 6. They devastated the lands of the Remi and kept our men from (obtaining) supplies.

X.

(*a*)

1. Titurius, who was of great service to Caesar, informed him that the archers had been led across the river. 2. In the plain a fierce battle is fought with the cavalry of the enemy. 3. Our men having slain a large number of the enemy attempted to cross the stream. 4. He said that he had been disappointed in crossing the river. 5. On that day corn began to fail the army.

(*b*)

1. He thought it was best for all the soldiers to return home. 2. After summoning a council, they led the soldiers into the territories of the Remi. 3. The Remi assembled on all sides to defend their homes. 4. They preferred *(malo)* to fight in their own territories rather than in those of another. 5. He could not persuade them to attack the Romans in battle or to bring aid to their allies.

XI.

(*a*)

1. They set out from home with great din at the fourth watch and hastened to reach the camp at daybreak. 2. Their departure seemed very like a rout. 3. This fact was learned by the spies, who, fearing an ambuscade, told Caesar why the enemy left. 4. Caesar sent forward all his cavalry to keep the enemy within the camp. 5. He appoints two lieutenants over the legions and orders them to follow closely with all the cavalry.

(*b*)

1. These lieutenants attacked the van and followed the enemy for three miles. 2. After many of the fugitives were slain, the rear of the enemy halted. 3. They boldly withstood the attack of our men since they saw they were out of danger. 4. Just before sunset they give up the pursuit and withdrew to the camp. 5. The general had given this order to his soldiers.

XII.

1. Before the enemy recovered from the panic the general set out for Rome. 2. The army was led by the commander into the territory of the Belgae who are next to the Germans. 3. He heard that he was not able to take this town by storm. 4. The camp began to be fortified with a ditch and rampart. 5. The Romans threw up a mound and built towers on the next night. 6. Ambassadors were sent to Caesar to treat for surrender and begged that the Romans spare them, their wives and children.

XIII.

1. Caesar received as hostages the leading men of the state and the two sons of King Galba. 2. After the Suessiones had been received in surrender, they gave up their arms. 3. All collected their property at the city of Rome, which was about five miles distant from that place. 4. All

the aged began to leave the town since they were not able to fight in battle against the Roman people. 5. According to their custom, when the Romans came to that place, after pitching their camp, they fortified it with a rampart and ditch.

XIV.

1. "The Bellovaci," said he, "are in allegiance to our state." 2. We have been instigated by our chiefs to say that we have suffered all kinds of insults. 3. Those revolted from the Aedui and carried on war against our state. 4. They fled into Britain because they knew what loss the enemy had inflicted on their lands. 5. They begged the Romans that they would show their mercy to them.

XV.

1. "I," said Caesar, "shall receive you into allegiance and will protect you." 2. Our state excelled the rest of Gaul in the number of the population. 3. They gave up their arms and surrendered themselves to the Romans without delay. 4. Nothing is imported into the territory of the Aedui which is supposed to tend to luxury. 5. He declared that he had not sent ambassadors nor had he accepted any conditions of peace.

XVI.

1. Through our territories he made a march of three days. 2. "The river Sambre is not," said he, "more than four miles distant from our camp." 3. The Nervii took up their position across this river and awaited there the arrival of the soldiers. 4. When he had persuaded the allies to await the arrival of our men, he found out that the enemy had crossed the river. 5. He collected all the women into a place to which (of us) there was no access, since they were useless for war.

XVII.

1. He learned all these things from the scouts who were sent forward to pick out a place suitable for a camp. 2. He afterwards learned from the captives that our route was watched by the enemy. 3. "It is no trouble," said he, "to defeat the Romans hampered-with-baggage *(sub sarcinis)*, since they will not dare to make a stand if we repulse them in battle." 4. Of old the Nervii were very powerful in infantry although they had no cavalry force. 5. No one was able to enter the brambles and briars which formed a protection to their territories. 6. Our journey was hindered by the hedges which the Nervii had made.

XVIII.

1. Our men chose as a place for the camp a hill which sloped to the river Sambre. 2. You could not easily see into it because it was covered with woods from the bottom to the top. 3. Amid these woods for many days the enemy conceal themselves. 4. Down the river were many outposts, which were seen by our men. 5. The river was about five feet deep.

XIX.

(a)

1. Caesar sent forward his cavalry to pursue the enemy. 2. The Belgae reported to the Nervii the place and arrangement of our line. 3. When the enemy approached our camp, Caesar, according to custom, led out the tenth legion against them. 4. The two legions which he had lately enrolled in Gaul were protecting the baggage. 5. He crossed the river with the slingers and bowmen to engage in battle with the enemies' cavalry.

(b)

1. After making an attack on our men they withdrew to the woods. 2. The legions which were the first to begin the battle pursued the retreating (enemy). 3. They agreed among themselves that this was the time for beginning the battle. 4. When they had drawn up their line and ranks among the woods they suddenly rushed forward from every side. 5. Almost at one and the same time the enemy rush down against our camp with incredible speed.

XX.

1. Caesar saw that he must do all things at one and the same time. 2. The soldiers had to rush to arms, had to form in line and advance against the enemy. 3. The onset of the enemy prevented a great many of those things from being done. 4. Amidst these difficulties the experience of the soldiers was of great service. 5. The soldiers were so trained by their former battles that they knew what they ought to do. 6. They did not wait for any order from the general, but carried out on their own responsibility what plans they thought fit.

XXI.

1. Caesar, after cheering the cavalry, hastened down with the soldiers of the seventh legion. 2. "Remember," said he, "your former valour; be not disturbed in spirit, but boldly withstand the attack of the enemy." 3. The

general made a speech shorter than he was accustomed *(soleo)* to do. 4. So eager for the fight were the Gauls that the Romans had not time to draw their swords before they rushed upon them. 5. The Roman soldiers take up their positions at their standards which they saw in the van.

XXII.

1. He drew up his army after he had learned these things from his lieutenants. 2. One legion opposed the enemy in one place, another in another. 3. We have mentioned before that the view was obstructed by the intervening trees. 4. They could not collect all their supplies, nor could they find out what (supplies) it was necessary to provide. 5. Amid such unevenness of ground the general could not carry out all the orders which he gave to the lieutenants.

XXIII.

1. The soldiers of the tenth legion take up their stand on the right wing and drive the enemy into the river. 2. After a great number of them had been slain they pursued the rest across the river. 3. When they had put to flight the enemy they did not hesitate to return to the camp. 4. For five hours a battle was fought *(pugnatum est)* on the very summit of the hill. 5. The Nervii had a king named Boduognatus, who attempted to reach that place.

XXIV.

1. All the light-armed soldiers were driven back at the first onset of our troops. 2. After they met the enemy (who were) opposing (them) they drove them headlong in flight to the banks of the river. 3. The enemy who had gone out of the camp for the purpose of foraging, saw that our men had crossed the river. 4. The Romans saw that the Treveri, terrified by the noise of those who were pursuing hard, fled in all directions. 5. "We," said they, "have defeated the Romans, and we have gained possession of your camp."

XXV.

(a)

1. Having set out to the right wing we saw that our men were hard pressed by the enemy. 2. "I see," said Caesar, "that our baggage is a great hindrance to the soldiers on the march." 3. The standard-bearer and all the centurions of the fifth cohort were slain in that battle. 4. The

man was so severely wounded that he was not able to carry his arms. 5. Some in the rear left the battle and thus (*ita*) avoided the darts.

(*b*)

1. The battle was in a critical condition because we had no reserves who could be sent to aid our soldiers. 2. Caesar, drawing a shield from one soldier, armed himself and advanced against the foe. 3. He orders the cohorts to extend their line so that they might use their spears the more easily. 4. By the approach of the general hope was inspired in the soldiers. 5. Each one of the Roman soldiers desired to exert himself since he was fighting in sight of the general.

XXVI.

1. Caesar saw that our men were hard pressed by the enemy. 2. He advises the tribune to advance against the enemy. 3. One brought aid to one, another to another, and they were not afraid that the enemy would surround them. 4. The soldiers who were in the rear were a great protection to the baggage. 5. Titus Labienus sent his soldiers to aid our troops. 6. They watched from the height what deeds the general did in war.

XXVII.

1. Many of our men were so severely wounded by the javelins of the enemy that they were unable to renew the battle. 2. A great change took place in the battle, because the camp followers terrified the enemy who rushed against our men. 3. The cavalry blotted out the disgrace because they placed themselves in front of the common soldiers. 4. The soldiers fought very bravely since the front rank displayed such valour. 5. The enemy threw their javelins from the mound and hurled back against our men the intercepted darts. 6. Their valour rendered it an easy matter to cross the stream.

XXVIII.

1. The nation of the Nervii by this battle were almost exterminated. 2. All the women, children and elders were collected in the estuaries and fens. 3. All who survived, with one consent, surrendered to Caesar. 4. "We," said they, "have been reduced to a few who are able to bear arms." 5. He restrained all the neighbours from wrong-doing and ordered his soldiers to protect the Nervii.

XXIX.

1. The Aduatuci with many thousand men came to aid the Nervii. 2. All their towns and redoubts were deserted when the approach of our army was known. 3. On every side, all round, this town had such high rocks that it could easily be defended. 4. The wall was defended by rocks of great weight and beams were placed on it. 5. All the baggage which they did not take with them, they placed across the river Rhine. 6. Six thousand men were left to guard the redoubts. 7. After these had picked out a place for an abode, peace was made with the unanimous *(unus)* consent of all.

XXX.

1. Frequent sallies were made from the town by our army. 2. Caesar moved forward the *vineae*, raised a mound and built a tower near the town. 3. When so great a tower was being built so far off, the Nervii began to jeer. 4. The Gauls compared to the Romans were of great size. 5. "Do you think," said they, "to place so high a tower on our walls."

XXXI.

1. When the tower was nearing the walls, ambassadors were sent to Caesar to treat for peace. 2. "We do not think," said one of the ambassadors, "that the Romans have carried on this war without the aid of the gods." 4. "You," said he, "have moved forward engines of war of such height that we do not think that you could do this alone." 4. We ask one thing, that you will save our citizens and not take our arms from us. 5. We are willing to suffer any punishment whatever at the hands of the Romans rather than be slain by our enemies.

XXXII.

"I," said Caesar, "according to my custom, will save you if you will surrender yourselves before the battering-ram touches the wall." 2. You must surrender your arms and do no harm to the allies of the Roman people. 3. "We," says he, "will do whatever you order." 4. So great was the heap of arms that it almost reached the top of the mound of the camp. 5. They opened their gates on that day, but concealed their arms in the town.

XXXIII.

1. Just before evening the gates were shut and the soldiers were ordered to leave the town. 2. The enemy previously entered into a plan because

they believed that our men would protect the camp somewhat carelessly. 3. At the second watch a sally was made suddenly against that part where the fewest soldiers were stationed. 4. Where the camp fires were fewest the enemy made an onset, and fought most valiantly against our men in a very disadvantageous place. 5. On the next day the gates were burst open and all the booty of that town was sold by Caesar.

XXXIV.—XXXV.

1. On that day they informed Caesar that the enemy had sent an embassy. 2. All these States were reduced under the sway of the Romans in that year. 3. All the nations who dwelt across the Rhine sent ambassadors to Caesar to promise that they would give hostages. 4. In the beginning of the next summer he carried on war with these states, and afterwards set out by forced marches to Italy. 5. The Senate decreed a thanksgiving of ten days, a thing which never happened to anyone before, since the days of Marius.

BOOK III.

C. IULI CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER TERTIUS.

Contents of Book III.—Campaign of 56, B.C. Gaul has nominally submitted to a Roman protectorate, but some of the tribes are rebellious.—Galba in the Alps, chs. 1-6.—Naval war against the Veneti, chs. 7-16.—Crassus subdues Aquitania, chs. 17-27.—Caesar goes in pursuit of the Morini, chs. 28-29.

I.—Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legione duodecima, et parte equitatus, in Nantuates, Veragros, Sedunosque misit, qui ab finibus Allobrogum, et lacu Lemanno, et flumine Rhodano, ad summas Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit, quod iter per Alpes, quo, magno cum periculo magnisque cum portoriis, mercatores ire consuerant, patefieri volebat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitraretur, uti in eis locis legionem hiemandi causa collocaret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis, castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis, obsidibusque datis, et pace facta, constituit cohortes duas in Nantuatibus collocare, et ipse cum reliquis eius legionis cohortibus in vico Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare: qui vicus, positus in valle, non magna adiecta planitie, altissimis montibus undique continetur. Cum hic in duas partes flumine divideretur, alteram partem eius vici Gallis concessit, alteram, vacuam ab illis relictam, cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vallo fossaque munivit.

Caesar sends Galba to open up a new route from Italy to Gaul.

II.—Cum dies hibernorum complures transissent, frumentumque eo comportari iussisset, subito per exploratores certior factus est ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse, montesque, qui impenderent, a maxima multitudine Sedunorum et Veragrorum teneri. Id aliquot de causis acciderat, ut subito Galli belli renovandi legionisque opprimendae consilium cape-

The natives attack the Romans.

rent : primum, quod legionem, neque eam plenissimam, detractis cohortibus duabus, et compluribus singillatim, qui commeatus petendi causa missi erant, absentibus, propter paucitatem despiciebant : tum etiam, quod, propter iniquitatem loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem decurrerent, et tela conicerent, ne primum quidem posse impetum sustinere existimabant. Accedebat, quod suos ab se liberos abstractos obsidum nomine dolebant : et Romanos non solum itinerum causa, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis, culmina Alpium occupare conari, et ea loca finitimae provinciae adiungere, sibi persuasum habebant.

III.—His nuntiis acceptis, Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum munitionesque plene essent perfectae, neque de frumento reliquoque commeatu satis esset provisum, quod, deditione facta, obsidibusque acceptis, nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato, sententias exquirere coepit. Quo in consilio, cum tantum repentini periculi praeter opinionem accidisset, ac iam omnia fere superiora loca multitudine armatorum completa conspicerentur, neque subsidio veniri, neque commeatus supportari interclusis itineribus possent, prope iam desperata salute, nonnullae huiusmodi sententiae dicebantur, ut, impedimentis relictis, eruptione facta, iisdem itineribus, quibus eo pervenissent, ad salutem contenderent. Maiori tamen parti placuit, hoc reservato ad extremum consilio, interim rei eventum experiri, et castra defendere.

who are in serious danger,

IV.—Brevi spatio interiecto, vix ut his rebus, quas constituissent, collocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostes ex omnibus partibus, signo dato, decurrere, lapides gaesaque in vallum conicere : nostri primo integris viribus fortiter repugnare, neque ullum frustra telum ex loco superiore mittere : ut quaeque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrere, et auxilium ferre : sed hoc superari, quod diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant : quarum rerum a nostris propter paucitatem fieri

and almost overwhelmed.

nihil poterat ; ac non modo defesso ex pugna excedendi, sed ne saucio quidem eius loci, ubi constiterat, relinquendi, ac sui recipiendi, facultas dabatur.

V.—Cum iam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur, ac non solum vires, sed etiam tela, nostris deficerent, atque hostes acrius instarent, languidioribusque nostris vallum scindere, et fossas complere coepissent, resque esset iam ad extremum perducta casum, Publius Sextius Baculus, primi pili centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item Caius Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt, atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta extremum auxilium experirentur. Itaque, convocatis centurionibus, celeriter milites certiores facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium, ac tantummodo tela missa exciperent, seque ex labore reficerent ; post, dato signo, ex castris erumperent, atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponerent.

Things at a crisis when a sally is ordered.

VI.—Quod iussi sunt, faciunt ; ac, subito omnibus portis eruptione facta, neque cognoscendi, quid fieret, neque sui colligendi, hostibus facultatem relinquunt. Ita, commutata fortuna, eos, qui in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant, undique circumventos interficiunt ; et, ex hominum millibus amplius triginta, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat, plus tertia parte interfecta, reliquos perterritos in fugam coniciunt, ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patiuntur. Sic, omnibus hostium copiis fusis, armisque exutis, se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quo proelio facto, quod saepius fortunam tentare Galba nolebat, atque alio sese in hiberna consilio venisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rebus viderat, maxime frumenti commeatusque inopia permotus, postero die omnibus eius vici aedificiis incensis, in Provinciam reverti contendit ; ac, nullo hoste prohibente aut iter demorante, incolumem legionem in Nantuates, inde in Allobrogas perduxit, ibique hiemavit.

The camp is saved, but the Romans retire.

RISING OF THE VENETI,—A NAVAL WAR.

A new rising in Gaul; its causes.

VII.—His rebus gestis, cum omnibus de causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret, superatis Belgis, expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedunis, atque ita, inita hieme, in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes adire, et regiones cognoscere, volebat, subitum bellum in Gallia coortum est. Eius belli haec fuit causa. Publius Crassus adolescens cum legione septima proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemarat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frumenti erat, praefectos tribunosque militum complures in finitimas civitates, frumenti commeatusque petendi causa, dimisit : quo in numero erat Titus Terrasidius, missus in Esubios ; Marcus Trebius Gallus, in Curiosolitas ; Quintus Velanius, cum Tito Silio, in Venetos.

The influence of the Veneti who headed the rising.

VIII.—Huius est civitatis longe amplissima auctoritas omnis orae maritimae regionum earum ; quod et naves habent Veneti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt, et scientiā atque usū nauticarum rerum reliquos antecedunt, et, in magno impetu maris atque aperto, paucis portibus interiectis, quos tenent ipsi, omnes fere, qui eo mari uti consuerant, habent vectigales. Ab iis fit initium retinendi Silii atque Velanii, quod per eos suos se obsides, quos Crasso dedissent, recuperaturos existimabant. Horum auctoritate finitimi adducti (ut sunt Gallorum subita et repentina consilia), eadem de causa Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et, celeriter missis legatis, per suos principes inter se coniurant, nihil nisi communi consilio acturos, eundemque omnes fortunae exitum esse laturos ; reliquasque civitates sollicitant, ut in ea libertate, quam a maioribus acceperant, permanere, quam Romanorum servitutem perferre, mallent. Omni ora maritima celeriter ad suam sententiam perducta, communem legationem ad Publium Crassum mittunt, si velit suos recipere, obsides sibi remittat.

IX.—Quibus de rebus Caesar ab Crasso certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, naves interim longas aedifi-

cari in flumine Ligeri, quod influit in Oceanum, remiges ex Provincia institui, nautas gubernatoresque comparari iubet. His rebus celeriter administratis ipse, cum primum per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Veneti, reliquaeque item civitates, cognito Caesaris adventu, simul quod quantum in se facinus admisissent intelligebant—legatos, quod nomen apud omnes nationes sanctum inviolatumque semper fuisset, retentos ab se et in vincula coniectos — pro magnitudine periculi bellum parare, et maxime ea, quae ad usum navium pertinent, providere instituunt; hoc maiore spe, quod multum natura loci confidebant. Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuariis, navigationem impeditam propter inscientiam locorum paucitatemque portuum sciebant: neque nostros exercitus propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morari posse confidebant: ac iam, ut omnia contra opinionem acciderent, tamen se plurimum navibus posse: Romanos neque ullam facultatem habere navium, neque eorum locorum, ubi bellum gesturi essent, vada, portus, insulas novisse: ac longe aliam esse navigationem in concluso mari, atque in vastissimo atque apertissimo Oceano, perspiciebant. His initis consiliis, oppida muniunt, frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant, naves in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gesturum constabat, quam plurimas possunt, cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osismios, Lexovios, Nannetes, Ambiliatos, Morinos, Diablintes, Menapios adsciscunt: auxilia ex Britannia, quae contra eas regiones posita est, arcessunt.

Preparations made on both sides.

X.—Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi, quas supra ostendimus; sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitabant: iniuriae retentorum equitum Romanorum; rebellio facta post deditionem; defectio datis obsidibus; tot civitatum coniuratio; in primis, ne, hac parte neglecta, reliquae nationes idem sibi licere arbitrarentur. Itaque cum intelligeret omnes fere Gallos novis rebus studere, et ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque excitari, omnes autem homines natura libertati studere, et conditionem servitutis

The campaign difficult, but necessary.

odisse; priusquam plures civitates conspirarent, partiendum sibi ac latius distribuendum exercitum putavit.

Distribution of the Roman troops.

XI.—Itaque Titum Labienum legatum in Treveros, qui proximi Rheno flumini sunt, cum equitatu mittit. Huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat, atque in officio contineat; Germanosque, qui auxilio a Belgis arcessiti dicebantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire conentur, prohibeat. Publium Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis duodecim et magno numero equitatus in Aquitaniam proficisci iubet, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur, ac tantae nationes coniungantur. Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum legionibus tribus in Unellos, Curiosolitas, Lexoviosque mittit, qui eam manum distinendam curet. Decimum Brutum adolescentem classi, Gallicisque navibus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pacatis regionibus convenire iusserat, praeficit, et, cum primum posset, in Venetos proficisci iubet. Ipse eo pedestribus copiis contendit.

The towns of the enemy almost inaccessible.

XII.—Erant eiusmodi fere situs oppidorum, ut, posita in extremis lingulis promontoriisque, neque pedibus aditum haberent, cum ex alto se aestus incitavisset—quod bis accidit semper horarum viginti quatuor spatio—neque navibus, quod, rursus minuente aestu, naves in vadis afflictarentur. Ita utraque re oppidorum oppugnatio impediebatur; ac, si quando magnitudine operis forte superati, extruso mari aggere ac molibus, atque his ferme oppidi moenibus adaequatis, suis fortunis desperare coeperant, magno numero navium appulso, cuius rei summam facultatem habebant, sua deportabant omnia, seque in proxima oppida recipiebant. Ibi se rursus iisdem opportunitatibus loci defendebant. Haec eo facilius magnam partem aestatis faciebant, quod nostrae naves tempestatibus detinebantur; summaque erat vasto atque aperto mari, magnis aestibus, raris ac prope nullis portibus, difficultas navigandi.

XIII.—Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant. Carinae aliquanto planiores, quam

nostrarum navium, quo facilius vada ac decessum aestus excipere possent: prorae admodum erectae, atque item puppes, ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatae; naves totae factae ex robore ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendam: transtra pedalibus in latitudinem trabibus confixa clavis ferreis, digiti pollicis crassitudine: ancorae, pro funibus, ferreis catenis revinctae: pelles pro velis, alutaeque tenuiter confectae, sive propter lini inopiam atque eius usus inscientiam, sive eo, quod est magis verisimile, quod tantas tempestates Oceani tantosque impetus ventorum sustineri, ac tanta onera navium regi velis non satis commode arbitrabantur. Cum his navibus nostrae classi eiusmodi congressus erat, ut una celeritate et pulsu remorum praestaret, reliqua, pro loci natura, pro vi tempestatum, illis essent aptiora et accommodatiora: neque enim his nostrae rostro nocere poterant, tanta in eis erat firmitudo; neque propter altitudinem facile telum adiciebatur; et eadem de causa minus commode copulis continebantur. Accedebat, ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et se vento dedissent, et tempestatem ferrent facilius, et in vadis consisterent tutius, et, ab aestu derelictae, nihil saxa et cautes timerent: quarum rerum omnium nostris navibus casus erant extimescendi.

The character of the enemy's fleet

XIV.—Compluribus expugnatis oppidis, Caesar, ubi intellexit frustra tantum laborem sumi, neque hostium fugam captis oppidis reprimi, neque his noceri posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convenit, ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ducentae et viginti naves eorum paratissimae atque omni genere armorum ornatissimae, profectae ex portu, nostris adversae constiterunt: neque satis Bruto, qui classi praeerat, vel tribunis militum centurionibusque, quibus singulae naves erant attributae, constabat, quid agerent, aut quam rationem pugnae insisterent. Rostro enim noceri non posse cognoverant; turribus autem excitatis, tamen has altitudo puppium ex barbaris navibus superabat, ut neque ex inferiore loco satis commode tela adici possent, et missa

The naval victory won by the Romans by an ingenious contrivance.

ab Gallis gravius acciderent. Una erat magno usui res praeparata a nostris, falces praeacutae, insertae affixaeque longuriis, non absimili formā muralium falcium. His cum funes, qui antennas ad mālos destinabant, comprehensi adductique erant, navigio remis incitato praerumpebantur. Quibus abscissis, antennae necessario concidebant, ut, cum omnis Gallicis navibus spes in velis armamentisque consisteret, his ereptis, omnis usus navium uno tempore eriperetur. Reliquum erat certamen positum in virtute, qua nostri milites facile superabant, atque eo magis, quod in conspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitus res gerebatur, ut nullum paulo fortius factum latere posset: omnes enim colles ac loca superiora, unde erat propinquus despectus in mare, ab exercitu tenebantur.

XV.—Deiectis, ut diximus, antennis, cum singulas binae ac ternae naves circumsteterant, milites summa vi transcendere in hostium naves contendebant. Quod postquam barbari fieri animadverterunt, expugnatis compluribus navibus, cum ei rei nullum reperiretur auxilium, fuga salutem petere contenderunt: ac, iam conversis in eam partem navibus, quo ventus ferebat, tanta subito malacia ac tranquillitas exstitit, ut se ex loco movere non possent. Quae quidem res ad negotium conficiendum maxime fuit opportuna: nam singulas nostri consectati expugnaverunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numero, noctis interventu, ad terram pervenerint, cum ab hora fere quarta usque ad solis occasum pugnaretur.

The destruction of the enemy's fleet.

XVI.—Quo proelio bellum Venetorum totiusque orae maritimae confectum est. Nam, cum omnis iuventus, omnes etiam gravioris aetatis, in quibus aliquid consilii aut dignitatis fuit, eo convenerant; tum, navium quod ubique fuerat, unum in locum coegerant: quibus amissis, reliqui, neque quo se reciperent, neque quemadmodum oppida defenderent, habebant. Itaque se suaque omnia Caesari dediderunt. In quos eo gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quo diligentius in reliquum tempus a barbaris

The punishment of the people on the seaboard.

ius legatorum conservaretur. Itaque, omni senatu necato, reliquos sub corona vendidit.

SABINUS CRUSHES THE UNELLI.

XVII.—Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Quintus Titurius Sabinus cum iis copiis, quas a Caesare acceperat, in fines Unellorum pervenit. His praeerat Viridovix, ac summam imperii tenebat earum omnium civitatum, quae defecerant, ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coegerat. Atque his paucis diebus Aulerci Eburovices, Lexoviique, senatu suo interfecto, quod auctores belli esse nolebant, portas clauserunt seque cum Viridovice coniunxerunt; magnaque praeterea multitudo undique ex Gallia perditorum hominum latronumque convenerant, quos spes praedandi, studiumque bellandi, ab agricultura et quotidiano labore revocabat. Sabinus idoneo omnibus rebus loco castris sese tenebat, cum Viridovix contra eum duum millium spatio consedisset, quotidieque productis copiis pugnandi potestatem faceret; ut iam non solum hostibus in contemptionem Sabinus veniret, sed etiam nostrorum militum vocibus nonnihil carperetur: tantamque opinionem timoris praebuit, ut iam ad vallum castrorum hostes accedere auderent. Id ea de causa faciebat, quod cum tanta multitudine hostium, praesertim eo absente, qui summam imperii teneret, nisi aequo loco, aut opportunitate aliqua data, legato dimicandum non existimabat.

Sabinus goes among the Unelli.

XVIII.—Hac confirmata opinione timoris, idoneum quendam hominem et callidum delegit, Gallum, ex his, quos auxilii causa secum habebat. Huic magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque persuadet, uti ad hostes transeat; et, quid fieri velit, edocet. Qui ubi pro perfuga ad eos venit, timorem Romanorum proponit; quibus angustiis ipse Caesar a Venetis prematur, docet: neque longius abesse, quin proxima nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum educat, et ad Caesarem auxilii ferendi causa proficiscatur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclamant omnes, occasionem negotii bene gerendi

He overreaches them by strategy.

amittendam non esse, ad castra iri oportere. Multae res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur: superiorum dierum Sabini cunctatio, perfugae confirmatio, inopia cibariorum, (cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat provisum), spes Venetici belli, et quod fere libenter homines id, quod volunt, credunt. His rebus adducti, non prius Viridovicem reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab his sit concessum, arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. Qua re concessa, laeti, ut explorata victoria, sarmentis virgultisque collectis, quibus fossas Romanorum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

XIX.—Locus erat castrorum editus, et paulatim ab imo acclivis circiter passus mille. Huc magno cursu contenderunt, ut quam minimum spatii ad se colligendos armandosque Romanis daretur, exanimatique pervenerunt. Sabinus, suos hortatus, cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea, quae ferebant, onera, subito duabus portis eruptionem fieri iubet. Factum est opportunitate loci, hostium inscientia ac defatigatione, virtute militum, superiorum pugnarum exercitatione, ut ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent, ac statim terga verterent. Quos impeditos integris viribus milites nostri consequuti magnum numerum eorum occiderunt: reliquos equites consectati paucos, qui ex fuga evaserant, reliquerunt. Sic, uno tempore, et de navali pugna Sabinus, et de Sabini victoria Caesar certior factus; civitatesque omnes se statim Titurio dediderunt. Nam, ut ad bella suscipienda Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac minime resistens ad calamitates perferendas mens eorum est.

and inflicts a crushing defeat.

CRASSUS SUBDUES AQUITANIA.

XX.—Eodem fere tempore, Publius Crassus, cum in Aquitaniam pervenisset—quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regionum latitudine, et multitudine hominum, ex tertia parte Galliae est aestimanda—cum intelligeret in his locis sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucis ante annis Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, legatus, exercitu pulso, interfectus

Crassus in Aquitania.

esset, atque unde Lucius Manilius, proconsul, impedimentis amissis profugisset, non mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intelligebat. Itaque re frumentaria provisa, auxiliis equitatuque comparato, multis praeterea viris fortibus Tolosa, Carcasone, et Narbone, quae sunt civitates Galliae Provinciae, finitimae his regionibus, nominatim evocatis, in Sotiatum fines exercitum introduxit. Cuius adventu cognito, Sotiates, magnis copiis coactis, equitatuque, quo plurimum valebant, in itinere agmen nostrum adorti, primum equestre proelium commiserunt: deinde, equitatu suo pulso, atque insequentibus nostris, subito pedestres copias, quas in convalle in insidiis collocaverant, ostenderunt. Hi, nostros disiectos adorti, proelium renovarunt.

XXI.—Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, cum Sotiates, superioribus victoriis freti, in sua virtute totius Aquitaniae salutem positam putarent; nostri autem, quid sine imperatore, et sine reliquis legionibus, adolescentulo duce, efficere possent, perspici cuperent. Tandem, confecti vulneribus, hostes terga vertere. Quorum magno numero interfecto, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiatum oppugnare coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus, vineas turresque egit. Illi, alias eruptione tentata, alias cuniculis ad aggerem vineasque actis—cuius rei sunt longe peritissimi Aquitani, propterea quod multis locis apud eos aerariae secturae sunt—ubi diligentia nostrorum nihil his rebus profici posse intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt, seque in deditionem ut recipiat petunt. Qua re impetrata, arma tradere iussi, faciunt.

Defeats the Sotiates and takes their chief town.

XXII.—Atque, in ea re omnium nostrorum intentis animis, alia ex parte oppidi Adcantuannus, qui summam imperii tenebat, cum sexcentis devotis, quos illi soldurios appellant—quorum haec est conditio, uti omnibus in vita commodis una cum his fruantur, quorum se amicitiae dediderint; si quid iis per vim accidat, aut eundem casum una ferant, aut sibi mortem consciscant: neque adhuc hominum memoria repertus est quisquam, qui, eo inter-

An attempt to retake the town is frustrated.

fecto, cuius se amicitiae devovissent, mortem recusaret—cum iis Adcantuannus eruptionem facere conatus, clamore ab ea parte munitionis sublato, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, uti eadem deditionis conditione uteretur, ab Crasso impetravit.

The remaining peoples make great efforts,

XXIII.—Armis obsidibusque acceptis, Crassus in fines Vocatium et Tarusatium profectus est. Tum vero barbari commoti, quod oppidum, et natura loci et manu munitum, paucis diebus, quibus eo ventum erat, expugnatum cognoverant, legatos quoquoversus dimittere, coniurare, obsides inter se dare, copias parare coeperunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitates legati, quae sunt citerioris Hispaniae, finitimae Aquitaniae: inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur. Quorum adventu magna cum auctoritate, et magna cum hominum multitudine, bellum gerere conantur. Duces vero ii deliguntur, qui una cum Quinto Sertorio omnes annos fuerant, summamque scientiam rei militaris habere existimabantur. Hi consuetudine Populi Romani loca capere, castra munire, commeatibus nostros intercludere instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suas copias propter exiguitatem non facile diduci, hostem et vagari et vias obsidere et castris satis praesidii relinquere; ob eam causam minus commode frumentum commeatumque sibi supportari; in dies hostium numerum augeri; non cunctandum existimavit, quin pugna decertaret. Hac re ad consilium delata, ubi omnes idem sentire intellexit, posterum diem pugnae constituit.

but seek to avoid a pitched battle.

XXIV.—Prima luce, productis omnibus copiis, duplici acie instituta, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostes consilii caperent exspectabat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinem, et veterem belli gloriam, paucitatemque nostrorum, se tuto dimicaturos existimabant, tamen tutius esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis, commeatu intercluso, sine ullo vulnere victoria potiri: et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariae Romani sese recipere coepissent, impeditos in agmine et sub sarcinis, inferiores animo, adoriri

cogitabant. Hoc consilio probato ab ducibus, productis Romanorum copiis, sese castris tenebant. Hac re perspecta, Crassus (cum sua cunctatione atque opinione timoris hostes nostros milites alacriores ad pugnandum effecissent ; atque omnium voces audirentur, exspectari diutius non oportere, quin ad castra iretur) cohortatus suos, omnibus cupientibus, ad hostium castra contendit.

XXV.—Ibi cum alii fossas complerent, alii, multis telis coniectis, defensores vallo munitionibusque depellerent auxiliaresque (quibus ad pugnam non multum Crassus confidebat) lapidibus telisque subministrandis, et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandis, speciem atque opinionem pugnantium praeberent ; cum item ab hostibus constanter ac non timide pugnaretur, telaque ex loco superiore missa non frustra acciderent ; equites, circuitis hostium castris, Crasso renuntiaverunt, non eadem esse diligentia ab decumana porta castra munita facilemque aditum habere.

The Romans attack their camp,

XXVI.—Crassus, equitum praefectos cohortatus, ut magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque suos excitarent, quid fieri velit, ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperatum, eductis quatuor cohortibus, quae, praesidio castris relictae, intritae ab labore erant, et longiore itinere circumductis, ne ex hostium castris conspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad eas, quas diximus, munitiones pervenerunt, atque, his prorutis, prius in hostium castris constiterunt, quam plane ab iis videri, aut, quid rei gereretur, cognosci posset. Tum vero, clamore ab ea parte audito, nostri redintegratis viribus, quod plerumque in spe victoriae accidere consuevit, acrius impugnare coeperunt. Hostes undique circumventi, desperatis omnibus rebus, se per munitiones deicere et fuga salutem petere intenderunt. Quos equitatus apertissimis campis consectatus, ex millium quinquaginta numero, quae ex Aquitania Cantabrisque convenisse constabat, vix quarta parte relicta, multa nocte se in castra recepit.

and take it; the crushing defeat of the enemy.

The great part of Aquitania submits to Crassus.

XXVII.—Hac audita pugna, magna pars Aquitaniae sese Crasso dedidit, obsidesque ultro misit: quo in numero fuerunt Tarbelli, Bigerriones, Preciani, Vocates, Tarusates, Elusates, Garites, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzates, Cocosates. Paucae ultimae nationes, anni tempore confisae, quod hiems suberat, hoc facere neglexerunt.

CAESAR AND THE MORINI.

Caesar marches against the Morini and Menapii,

XXVIII.—Eodem fere tempore Caesar, etsi prope exacta iam aestas erat, tamen, quod, omni Gallia pacata, Morini Menapiique supererant, qui in armis essent neque ad eum unquam legatos de pace misissent, arbitratus id bellum celeriter confici posse, eo exercitum adduxit: qui longe alia ratione, ac reliqui Galli, bellum agere instituerunt. Nam quod intelligebant maximas nationes, quae proelio contendissent, pulsas superatasque esse, continentesque silvas ac paludes habebant, eo se suaque omnia contulerunt. Ad quarum initium silvarum cum Caesar pervenisset, castraque munire instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subito ex omnibus partibus silvae evolaverunt et in nostros impetum fecerunt. Nostri celeriter arma ceperunt, eosque in silvas repulerunt, et, compluribus interfectis, longius impeditioribus locis sequuti paucos ex suis deperdiderunt.

but makes little headway. End of the campaign of 56 B.C.

XXIX.—Reliquis deinceps diebus Caesar silvas caedere instituit, et, ne quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocabat, et pro vallo ad utrumque latus exstruebat. Incredibili celeritate magno spatio paucis diebus confecto, cum iam pecus atque extrema impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ipsi densiores silvas peterent; eiusmodi sunt tempestates consequutae, uti opus necessario intermitteretur, et, continuatione imbrium, diutius sub pellibus milites contineri non possent. Itaque vastatis omnibus eorum agris, vicis aedificiisque incensis, Caesar exercitum reduxit, et in Aulercis, Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus, quae proxime bellum fecerant, in hibernis collocavit.

NOTES.

BOOK III.

NOTES.

BOOK III.

CHAPTER I.

The events of the first six chapters of Book III. belong to the autumn and early winter of 57 B.C.; the other chapters give a narrative of the events of 56 B.C.

cum—Caesar: "when Caesar was on his march to Italy."—*proficisceretur = in itinere esset*: for the force of the imperf. subj.: see F.L. 203, 3; P.L. III., 99 f. The plan of opening up the road through the Alps was formed after Caesar began the march. *in Italiam*: why is the preposition expressed? Translate: *he set out to Rome: he set out to Rome, a large city of Italy; he set out for home; he set out for the house of his father.* Italy Proper (*Italia propria*) extended north as far as the Rubicon on the east, and the Arnus on the west. Evidently Caesar includes Gallia Cisalpina under the title of *Italia.*

Servium Galbam: afterwards one of the assassins of Caesar (B.C. 44). He was the great-grandfather of the Emperor Galba.

cum legione duodecima: Caesar had at this time eight legions in Gaul, numbering from the VII. to XIV. inclusive. According to Strabo, Caesar had lost two legions under the command of Q. Pedius (II., 2), which had been enrolled for the Belgic campaign. These had been treacherously attacked by the Salassi in ascending the Val d'Aosta. The present expedition was to check the mountain tribes. The *Nantuates* were in the present French Savoy, between the *Veragri* and the *Allobroges*. The *Veragri*, whose chief town was *Octodurus* (Martigny), occupied the Lower Valois, and the *Seduni*, the Upper Valois. Their chief town was *Sedunum* (Sitten or Sion). [See Map, I.]

parte equitatus: consisting of auxiliaries.

finibus: distinguish in meaning *finis*, *fines*. What other words differ in meaning in the singular and plural? In Vergil *finis* is masc. or fem.: in

Lucretius, only once fem., but in phrases *hac, ea, qua, fine* or *fini* the fem. gen. is constant.

summas Alpes: "the highest part of the Alps." The word *Alpes* is from the Keltic *alp*, "high," or "white": cp. *Albania, Albyn, Albion, Alba, Albula, Albanus.*

mittendi, scil. *legionem* or *milites*: the object after *mittendi* is sometimes omitted: cp. Ter. Phor. I, I, 16, *puer causa erit mittendi.* Translate, "the cause thereof was," or "his reason was."

iter per Alpes: Pompey, twenty years before this, had connected Gaul and Italy by a road over Mount Genèvre in a westerly direction. Caesar wished to make now a northern route for general traffic over the Simplon and the Great St. Bernard leading from *Octodurus* (Martigny) to *Augusta Praetoria Salassorum* (Aosta) founded some thirty years after, 26 B.C., by the Val Entrement and the Val du Grand St. Bernard. By this route Napoleon crossed the Alps on his venturesome expedition in May, 1800.

quo—consuerant: "by which traders generally travelled, but only at great risk, and after payment of heavy dues."—*magno—magnis*: note the emphasis gained by placing the adjective before the preposition and also by repetition—*portoriis*: custom duties levied on imports and exports, levies on goods passing through the country on rivers and roads, bridge tolls and the like.—*periculo*: rather refers to the dangers from the lawless mountain tribes than to the perils of the route, though these must have been considerable in the days when no friendly hospice was there.—*mercatores*: often mentioned by Caesar, I., 39; II., 15; IV., 2, 3, 5, 20, 21; VI., 37. These were traders mainly from the Greek colony at *Massilia* (Marseilles), and were probably Greeks and Italians who followed the Roman camp.—*consuerant*: note that *consuevi*, like *odi, memini, coepi*, is a perfect form with a present meaning. Hence, *consuevi = soleo; consueveram = solitus sum.* The contracted forms of the verb are more common than the uncontracted ones. *patefieri*: compounds of *-facio* with prepositions generally form the passive in *-ficior*, but with verbal stems and adverbs in *-fio*; as *arefio, calefio, benefit, satisfit.*

huic = Servio Galbae.

hiemandi causa: note the position of *causā*, generally after the word or words it governs: cp. *gratiā.*

proeliis—facta: a series of ablative absolutes is occasionally employed to express circumstances which follow in succession; first come the battles,

then the capture of the strongholds, later the sending of envoys, then the giving of hostages, and finally the ratification of peace. The order of the ablative absolutes will depend on the regard the writer has to variety and precision of expression: Madvig, 430.—*castellis*: "fortified villages": often used of the hamlets of the Alpine tribes as in Livy, 21, 33.—Distinguish in meaning *expugno* and *oppugno*.

constituit—collocare: when does *constituo* take an infinitive, and when *ut* with the subjunctive? F. L. 181, note 2; P. L. II., 198 (g), N.B. Translate into Latin: *Caesar resolved to lead a legion to Rome: Caesar resolved that the lieutenant should lead a legion to Rome.*

cohortes duas: about 1,000 men. Trace the successive meanings of the word *cohors* and the connection with our word *court*.

vico: the *vicus* was a row or group of houses in the open country in opposition to *oppidum*, a walled town. With the root VIC are connected *Ϝοικος, vicus, vicinus*; English—*wick*, in Ips*wick*, Ha*wick*.

Octodurus: the modern Martigny or Martinach. The name *Octo-dur-us* contains the Keltic *dwr*, "a river."

qui—continetur: "this hamlet lies in a valley with a plain of no great extent adjoining, and is shut in on every side by very high mountains."—*vicus*: the repetition of the antecedent with the relative is frequent in Caesar when exactness of expression is required.

flumine: to-day called the Drance, which flows into the bend of the Rhine not far from *Octodurus* (Martigny).

alteram—relictam: "the other part left free from them." The preposition follows *vacuam*, not *relictam*: see Bell. Gall. II., 1, 2: *vacuum ab defensoribus*.

eum locum: the post occupied by the Romans.

CHAPTER II.

cum dies—iussisset: "when several days of life in winter quarters had passed and he had ordered corn to be brought thither."—*hibernorum*, scil. *castrorum*, said of time as *eo* is of place.—*eo = in eam partem vici, Octodurni* or *in eum locum*. When does *cum* take the subjunctive, and when the indicative?

exploratores: legionary soldiers sent out to pick up intelligence, if single,

are termed *speculatores* : if in parties, *exploratores*. Distinguish *per exploratores, ab exploratoribus* : F. L. 223 ; P. L. II., 128.

concesserat—impenderent : the indicative proves that the remark is Caesar's own, while the subjunctive shows that the statement is given on the authority of others : F. L. 207, note 2 ; P. L. II., 165 (a). —*montes*, evidently here low heights, for a javelin could be hurled from them.

noctu : an old ablative : cp. *diu, interdiu.*

id aliquot—caperent : *id* refers to what precedes, and *ut—caperent* is added to give more information : "that—their unexpected resolve to renew the war and crush the legion—had happened from several causes," or "several causes had contributed to this—their sudden resolve," &c.: cp. Caesar Bell. Gall. I., 4 : *damnatum—poenam sequi oportebat ut igni cremaretur* : the clause *ut igni cremaretur* defines *poenam* ; so often.—*accidere* is here as elsewhere of unforeseen or unfavourable events.

primum—despiciebant : "in the first place, because they held in contempt that legion on account of its small numbers, and that not fully complete, inasmuch, as two cohorts had been taken from it and several individuals were absent who had been detailed for the purpose of obtaining supplies." The twelfth legion had suffered severely in the fight with the Nervii (B. II., c. 23).—*commeatus* is genitive. The soldiers had gone to get supplies either from the merchants (*mercatores*), or the natives peacefully (B. II., c. 9) and not by foraging (*pabulatio* or *frumentatio*). The adverb *singillatim=singuli* : as *privatim=privati* : cp. Bell. Gall. I., 17 : *esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus.*

tum etiam : "secondly" : cp. *primum*, above.

iniquitatem loci : "the disadvantages of the position," of our men.

ipsi : the mountaineers. Explain fully the mood and tense of *decurrerent* and *conicerent.*

ne primum quidem impetum suum : "not even their first onset" : note the emphatic word is placed between *ne—quidem.*

accedebat—habebant : "to this was added their resentment at their children being torn away from them as hostages, and their conviction that the Romans not merely for the purpose of making roads, but for the purpose of permanent occupation were attempting to get possession of the heights of the Alps, and to unite these places to the neighbouring province." The phrase *accedebat quod* may be rendered : "and moreover" ; literally,

"there was added that": the *quod* clause is the subject of *accedebat*. Distinguish *accedit ut*, introducing a historical fact, and *accedit quod*, giving a reason. Caesar here, as often, frankly gives the true reason of the outbreak: cp. V., 54; VII., 77.—*obsidum nomine*, "as hostages": cp. B. VI., 19, *dotis nomine*; VII., 89, *praedae nomine*. -*persuasum habebant* like *cognitum habebant*: *persuasum* is neut. sing. acc. agreeing with the clause *Romanos —adiungere*: of course *sibi* depends on *persuasum*.

CHAPTER III.

his—acceptis: express this in other ways.

opus hibernorum, scil. *castrorum*: "the work on the winter quarters," may refer to the work on the winter quarters as a whole, while the *munitiones* are the several defences comprising these. Others take *opus hibernorum* to include the laying out of streets, the adapting of the buildings already standing for the use of the soldiers, the erection of huts, etc., while *munitiones* refers to the construction of the fortifications, the wall and the ramparts mentioned in Chap. I., *sub finem*. Note that *perfectae* agrees with the nearest nominative.

neque provisum: "nor had sufficient provision been made for corn and other supplies." What is the difference between *providere* with acc.; with dat. and with *de* and ablative? Often *frumentum* and *commeatus* without *reliquus* are used together since *commeatus* includes supplies other than corn (*frumentum*); B. I., 39, 48; III., 23. Sometimes *reliquus* is added as here.

consilio: a council of war probably composed of the *tribuni militum* and *centuriones primorum ordinum*, i.e., the eight centurions in command of the eight cohorts there encamped. Distinguish *consilium*, a select deliberate body, each member of which contributes something to the debate and hence often applied to a council of war; *concilium*, a large mass meeting assembled for some public purpose to accept or reject some proposal made.

tantum repentini periculi=*tantum et tam repentinum periculum*.

praeter opinionem: "contrary to expectation." See note on *acciderat* Chapter II. Distinguish between *nunc* "at the present moment," and *iam*, "already," implying an act going on for some time in the past.

completa—conspicerentur: "were seen filled." This participial construction is common in Greek and English, but not often found in Latin.

neque—possent: "and neither could relief come nor supplies be brought

up as the roads behind them were closed." After *veniri* supply *posset* from the *possent* which agrees with *commeatus* the nearest subject: literally, "could it be come up for (their) relief": the passive *veniri* is frequently used impersonally: cp. B. C. I., 67: *plerique censebant posse prius ad angustias veniri quam sentiretur.*—*subsidio* is a dative of purpose: F. L. 134, 1; P.L. III., 82 (c).—*itineribus*: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. III., 85 (o).

desperata salute: Cicero always says *desperare salutem*: Caesar always, *desperare de salute* except in chap. XII., infra; and B. VII., 50 when a dative is used but in the ablative absolute construction he uses *desperare salutem*: B. V., 37; B. VI., 5. So also *desperata fuga, victoria.*

impedimentis relictis eruptione facta: these two ablative absolutes are not connected by a conjunction because the one is really subordinate to the other: "upon leaving the baggage if a sally was made" = *si, impedimentis relictis, eruptio facta esset.*

ad salutem contenderent: the expression seems to stand midway between the literal meaning of *contendere*, in *contendere ad oppidum*, when a definite locality is reached and *contendere ad laudem, gloriam* in which *contendere* means "to strive to attain": cp. Cic. Phil. XIV., 32; *ad laudem gloriamque contendere.*—*salutem*, probably "a place of safety."

hoc reservato—defendere: "to reserve this plan to the last, and in the meantime to wait for results and defend the camp."—*placet*: *placet, non placet* are the technical words in the Roman senate: *placet*, "I vote yea": *non placet*, "I vote nay"; with *placet* scil. *mihi.*

CHAPTER IV.

brevi—daretur: "a short space having intervened, so short, that time was scarcely allowed for arranging and carrying out those details which they had determined (to arrange and carry out)."—*brevi* is put first for emphasis; here we have inversion in order in *vix ut* for *ut vix*: cp. Bell. Gall. I., 6; *vix qua singuli carri ducerentur*: here also *vix* is put first for emphasis. So also we have inversion with *vix* in Bell. Gall., B. II., 28, *vix ad quingentos.*—*constituissent*, scil. *collocare et administrare*: *constituissent* is in subjunctive by attraction.—*collocare* is here "to arrange"; literally, "to put in place": cp. Bell. Alex. 33: *sic rebus omnibus confertis et collocatis*: Cic. Epist. ad Brutum I., 15: *ad collocandum civitatis statum.*

decurrere—conicere—repugnare—mittere—occurrere—ferre: historical infinitives put for the indicative: F.L. 216, 3, note 2; P.L. III., 101 (d). A succession of these is often used in rapid and animated description.

gaesa : the *gaesum* was a Gallic spear and the word was probably Keltic. It seems to have been a common weapon among the Alpine tribes : cp. Verg. Æn. VIII., 661 : *Alpina coruscant Gaesa manu.* They are described as javelins with a thick shaft and barbed iron head of extraordinary length.

nostri—mittere : "at first our men, so long as their strength remained undiminished, boldly withstood them, and hurled no dart without effect, since the ground they occupied was higher (than that occupied by the enemy)." — *nostri*, scil. *milites*. — *integris viribus* : abl. absol. : F.L. 100, 5 : P.L. III., 85 (o).—*ex loco superiore* : the prepositional abl. absol. is often used when regularly we should have a present part. of *sum*, which does not exist : cp. Bell. Gall. I., 33 : *in tanto imperio* : *in tanta rerum iniquitate*. The Roman soldiers occupied the rampart (*vallum*).

ut—succedebant : "as each part of the camp stripped of defenders seemed to be hard pressed (by the enemy), to this part they rushed and brought aid, but they were put to a disadvantage by this, that the enemy, exhausted by the length of the battle, withdrew from the fight, (whilst) other enemies with unimpaired strength relieved them." — *defensoribus* : abl. separation : F.L. 158, 2 ; P.L. III., 85 (h).—*premi*, scil. *ab hostibus*.—*eo* = *in eam partem*. —*defesso* : a very strong word : *defatigatus* expresses lassitude merely, not exhaustion.—*proelio* : F.L. 158, 2 ; P.L. III., 85 (h).—*alii*, scil. *hostes*.—*integris viribus* : see above.

ac non modo—dabatur : "and not only to an exhausted man was the power of withdrawing from the fight not given, but not even to a wounded soldier was the opportunity afforded of leaving the spot where he had taken his stand, and of betaking himself to a place of safety." —*non modo* = *non modo non* : the second *non* may be omitted, as here, only when a negative (as *ne quidem* in this passage) follows, and then only when both clauses have a common predicate (as *dabatur*). It would be incorrect to omit the second *non* in such a sentence as *non modo non interfectus est, sed ne levissimum quidem vulnus accepit* : cp. the omission of the second οὐ in the phrase οὐ μόνον οὐ in Greek.—*defesso*, scil. *cuiquam*.—*sui recipiendi* : F.L. 170, 3 ; P.L. III., 104 (b).

CHAPTER V.

iam : "already."

amplius horis sex : the construction with the accusative is more common.

pugnaretur : continuous action.

nostris deficerent : *deficere* is also used with the accusative : Bell. Gall. V., 33 ; VII., 50.

languentibus nostris: "and while our troops were becoming more faint": F.L. 100, 5; P.L. III., 85 (o).

vallum scindere: "to tear down the palisades" (*valli*), and thus effect an entrance.

fossas: plural, though there was probably only one ditch around the camp.

resque—casum: "and when the battle was by this time brought to a final crisis." *Res* is a generic word and may have a wide application.

primi pili centurio: originally the first centurion of the *triarii*, afterwards the chief centurion of the legion.

Nervico proelio: "in the battle with the Nervii" mentioned B. II., 25. If *Nerviorum* had been used for *Nervico*, Caesar would have said *in proelio*.

C. Volusenus Quadrigatus: mentioned B. IV., 2; VI., 41; VIII., 23, 48: B.C. III., 60. Caesar elsewhere speaks of him with commendation and he is the only one of all the tribunes so mentioned.

et consilii et virtutis (*magnae*): "of great resource and bravery":—F.L. 130, 7, 8; P.L. III., 81 (e).

si—experirentur: "if they should try the only remedy left them by making a sortie."—*experirentur*: imperf. subj. because *docent* is a historical present: F.L. 216, 2 (a); P.L. III., 107 (a), iii.

certiores facit paulisper intermitterent: "he informs them (of his wish) that they should for a little cease fighting": cp. B.C. I., 64: *ut certior fieret ne labori suo parceret.* This construction of *certiorem facere* is only used when a command is implied.—*Parumper* is commonly used when future time is meant as here.—*tantummodo exciperent*: "should merely receive (on their shields) the darts hurled (at them)," *i.e.*, should act simply on the defensive and not hurl a weapon in return.

CHAPTER VI.

quod=id quod.—iussi sunt, scil. *facere.*

omnibus portis: ablative of place *from which*: F.L. 158, 2; P.L. III., 85 (h), i.—*fieret*: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. 99 (d).

sui colligendi: "of rallying themselves": *sui* is plural referring to *hostibus*: *colligendi* agrees with *sui* in form but not in number: cp. *sui recipiendi*: Chap. V., B. III.

eos—interficiunt: "they surround on all sides and slay those who had entertained the hope of taking the camp."—*potiundorum* old form for *potiendorum*. Verbs that do not govern an accusative have no gerundive, but *potior*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *utor*, *vescor*, governing the ablative, have the gerundive, because in old Latin they govern an accusative.

amplius, as *plus* below, is an adverb without any influence on the construction.

armisque exutis: "and being stripped of their arms": *armis* is the ablative of separation after *exutis*: F.L. 158, 2; P.L. III., 85 (b). The meaning, however, is that they threw away their arms, as Caesar did not take them from the men.

atque—viderat: "and remembered that he had come into winter quarters with one design, (but) saw that he had found the situation different (from what he had expected)." Note that *meminerat* is perf. in meaning, not pluperf. like *viderat*. —*alio—aliis*: note the absence of the conjunction (*asyndeton*). The idea is that he had to face a state of affairs quite incompatible with the purpose for which he came.

frumenti—commeatusque: see note Chap. III.

reverti: distinguish in meaning *revertor*, "to turn back" on a journey: *redeo*, "to go back" after a journey is completed. The tenses derived from the present of *revertor* are passive in form; those from the perfect are active.

Allobrogas: a nation lying along the line from Vienne to Geneva, between the Rhone and the Isère; (cp. B. G. I., 10, where they are mentioned as being in the Roman *provincia*). As soon as Galba had crossed the Tête Noire, he would have a comparatively level march by Chamounix to Sallenchus and so to Vienne.

demorante: *demoror* is elsewhere used by Caesar, but in Cicero only once.

CHAPTER VII.

quum—est: "though Caesar had every reason to think (literally, thought for all reasons) that Gaul was subdued, in consequence of the defeat of the Belgae, the expulsion of the Germans, the conquest of the Seduni (who dwell) among the Alps, and when, under these circumstances, at the beginning of winter he had set out for Illyricum, because he desired to visit those tribes also, and to become acquainted with that district, a war arose suddenly in Gaul." Notice that *quum* is both *causal* and *temporal*.—*pacatam*:

a euphemistic expression for *victam.*—*Belgis superatis* : see Book II., Chapters I.-XXXIII.—*expulsis Germanis* : referring to the war against Ariovistus, B. I., Chapter XXX.-LIV.—*Sedunis* : the Seduni are mentioned, as they were the most important of the Alpine tribes.—*inita* : equivalent to *prima.* —*Illyricum* = *ad Illyricum* ; F.L. 85, 1 ; P.L. III., 83 (g). The provinces of Illyricum and the two Gauls were assigned to Caesar for five years, B.C. 59. In April, 56 B.C., Caesar was at Luca, where he had an interview with Pompey and Crassus, the former of whom he had previously met at Ravenna. The result of this conference was that Pompey and Crassus were to be nominated consuls for the ensuing year, and that Caesar's command was to be extended for another five years.—*quod—volebat* : distinguish this in meaning from *quod—vellet* : F.L. 198, 2 ; P.L. II., 165 (a), (b). —*nationes* : F.L. 96, 2 ; P.L. II., 95. What prepositions added to intransitive verbs of motion render these verbs transitive?

haec : "as follows" : note that *hic* may refer to what follows (corresponding in this case to ὅδε, τοιόσδε in Greek) or to what precedes (corresponding to οὗτος, τοιοῦτος).

proximus mare : "very near the sea," not "next the sea," as the Andes were not contiguous to the ocean.—*proximus* is used with a dative or accusative. With *mare Oceanum* : cp. *flumen Rhenus ; terra Gallia.* The district of the Andes was in the modern *Anjou.*

praefectos tribunosque militum : the *praefecti* were officers of the allied troops (*socii*) ; the *tribuni militum* officers of the legion, six being attached to each legion, so that each tribune had charge of about 1,000 men and had 10 centurions under him.

quo in numero : the regular Latin expression for "in the number of whom."

Curiosolites lived around Dinan and St. Malo : the *Sesuvii*, in eastern Normandy, about Falaise, while the *Veneti* occupied Vannes, in Bretagne.

CHAPTER VIII.

huius—earum : taking *amplissima* as a superlative relative translate : "the influence of this state is by far the most extensive of the whole seaboard of that district" : or taking *amplissima* as a superlative absolute which we often find combined with *longe* in Caesar ; translate : "the influence of this state is very great indeed over the whole seaboard of that district."

quod—habent : distinguish this form *quod—habeant* : F. L. 198, 2 ; F. L. II., 165 (a), (b).

in Britanniam navigare : the Veneti probably got from Britain tin and other metals, skins and wool. We also learn from Caesar (Bell. Gall. VI., 13) that Gallic youths were sent to Britain to finish their education under the Druids and the seat of Gallic Druidism was in the district between the Seine and the Loire, near the country of the Veneti.

consuerunt : what verbs have a perfect form with a present meaning? See note on *consuerat*, Chap. I.

scientia atque—rerum : "in the knowledge and especially in the practice of seamanship" : F. L. 71, 3 : P. L. III., 85 (a). Distinguish in use :—*que*, *et*, *atque*.

in—aperto : "being on an open sea of great violence" : hypallage=*in magni impetus mari aperto* : literally, "in a great and exposed onset of the sea" : so we have *mitis sapientia Laeli* : "the mild and wise Laelius." Note the prepositional ablative absolute : see note Chap. IV., B. III.

paucis—interiectis : "with few ports at intervals" (on the coast) : F. L. 100, 5 ; P. L. III., 85 (o).

tenent ipsi : "they keep in their own hands" ; note the emphatic position of *ipsi*.

omnes fere : what is the usual position of *fere?* The reference is to the fact that from the fewness of the ports many would be compelled to take refuge in the harbours of the Veneti and thus forced to pay tribute. *Vectigales*, properly persons who paid *vectigal*, a general name for taxes levied on goods, lands, &c., and therefore variable with the assessment : *stipendium*, a fixed tax generally paid by conquered states for the maintenance of the Roman army.

ab his—retinendi : "these take the first step by detaining Silius and Velanius."

quod—existimabant : distinguish this form *quod—existimarent* : F. L. 198, 2 ; P. L. II., 165 (a), (b).

per eos : note that *per* often expresses inferior agency.

Gallorum—consilia : Caesar often refers to the fickle character of the Gauls : the same is true of their modern descendants.—*Subitus*, that which comes quick, whether expected or not : *repentinus*, that which comes unexpected.

coniurant: "they form a league."

quam—acceperant: a remark of Caesar's own and hence the indicative. Others read *acceperint*, using the words of the Veneti.

Romanorum servitutem: subjective genitive: "the slavery imposed by the Romans."

si—remittat: turn this into direct narrative.

CHAPTER IX.

quod—longius: as mentioned in a note on Chap. VII., Caesar was at Luca in Etruria in the spring of 56 B. C. Distinguish in meaning *quod aberat* and *quod abesset*: F. L. 198, 2; P. L. II., 165 (a), (b).

naves longas: ships may be conveniently divided into (*a*) *war ships*, called by the Romans *naves longae*, because they were long and narrow and; therefore, fitted for swift sailing: (cp. Gk. *νῆες μακραί*, *νῆες ταχεῖαι*) and (*b*) *ships of burden*, called by the Romans *naves onerariae*: (cp. Gk. *πλοῖα*, *φορτικά*, *ὁλκάδες*) made for carrying heavy loads, and, therefore, bulky and broad.

in Oceanum: Caesar ordered the ships to be built on the Loire, on the south side, opposite the spot where the Mayenne flows into it, below Angers. Note that *quod* agrees in gender with the generic word *flumen*, as *Liger* is masc.; so B. II., chap. V.: *flumen Axonam quod.*

institui: "to be procured."

cum primum—potuit: scil. *administrare* from *administratis*: "as soon as he could do so by the time of the year"; *i.e.*, as soon as the season permitted. Distinguish in meaning *cum primum—potuit* and *cum primum—posset* in B. III., chap. XI.—For the force of *per*, cp. B. II., chap. XVI.: *mulieres quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur.*

cognito Caesaris adventu: express this in other ways. Some have after *adventu*, *certiores facti* and understand *de magnitudine periculi*. In that case translate: "the Veneti and likewise the rest of the states upon hearing of Caesar's arrival being fully made aware of the extent of the danger": or "when Caesar's arrival was known, being informed (of the fact)."

simul quod—coniectis: "at the same time because they were aware how great a crime they had committed by detaining and casting into prison ambassadors—a title which had always been holy and inviolate among all nations." Distinguish in meaning *facinus*, (from *facio*), a bold, daring

crime, generally in a bad sense unless joined with a qualifying adjective: *scelus*, guilt or wickedness; *flagitium*, a disgraceful crime, as adultery.—*admisissent*: for the mood: F. L. 176, 2; P. L. III., 99 (d).—*facinus in me admitto*, literally, "I put a crime upon myself," *i.e.*, I commit a crime.—From *legatos* to *coniectos* is in apposition to *facinus*. Caesar calls the *praefecti* and *tribuni* in chapter VI., *legati* to suit his purpose. For the punishment meted out to those who violated the *ius legatorum*: cp. Cic. de Leg. Man.: chap. V.: *legati quod erant appellati superbius, Corinthum patres vestri, totius Graeciae lumen, exstinctam esse voluerunt.*—*ad omnes* = *apud omnes*: as in I., 31; IV., 16; V., 53; VII., 5.—*fuisset*: F.L. 198, 4; P. L. III., 99 (e).

ad usum navium = *ad navigationem*: "for sailing," or "for the requirement of ships."

instituunt=*incipiunt.*

hoc maiore spe: "their hopes being higher on this account."—*spe*: abl. absol.: *hoc*: abl. means.

quod—confidebant: the indicative expresses an *actual* fact. What would *confiderent* express? F.L. 198, 2; P.L. II., 165 (a), (b).

aestuariis: the whole coast from the mouth of the Loire to Brest in Finisterre is full of arms of the sea.

locorum: "of the coast."

ac iam ut—acciderent: "nay, allowing that everything was already happening contrary to their expectations." For force of *ut*: F.L. 196, 7; P.L. 99 (i), ii. *Iam ut* with subjunctive followed by *tamen* as here introduce a suppositional case, while *etsi* with the indicative, followed by *tamen* introduces an actual fact.

posse, scil. *sciebant.*

neque=*et non.*—*ubi*=*in quibus locis.*

longe aliam—atque: "very different from."

in concluso mari: like the Mediterranean.

ubi—constabat: scil., *inter se*: "when it was believed among them."

Lexovios: the name still survives in the modern *Lisieux*: *Diablintes*, in *Jablins*; *Nantuates*, in *Nantes*. The *Morini* were a sea-coast people (from the Keltic *mor*, a sea), whose territories extended from Boulogne northward as far as Dunkerque.

Britannia: this is incorrect. Caesar made the invasion of Britain under the pretext that the Gauls were aided by their countrymen in Britain in their wars against the Romans: B. IV., chap. XX.

CHAPTER X.

erant: note emphatic position: "there were really the following difficulties."

iniuriae — Romanorum: "the wrongs done by the detention of the Roman knights." The *legati* mentioned in the previous chapter were of equestrian rank. For the objective genitive: cp. Livy. IV., 32; *scelus legatorum contra ius gentium interfectorum.* The plural *iniuriae* shows that several suffered detention.

rebellio—deditionem: "the renewal of the war after submission." Note the meaning of *rebellio.*

in primis—arbitrarentur: scil., *timor*, after *in primis* in apposition to *multa*: "above all the apprehension, that, if he did not attend to this district, the rest of the tribes would think that they might do the same."—*hac parte neglecta=si haec pars neglecta esset.—idem*, subject of *licere*, which is impersonal.—It is generally supposed that the Veneti were afraid that Caesar was, at this time, contemplating an invasion of Britain, and that the conquest of the island would destroy their commerce.

novis rebus studere: (cp. Gk. νεωτερίζειν); "are fond of a change of government."

et—excitari: cp. B. II., chap. I.; *qui nobilitate et levitate animi novis rebus studebant.* Caesar often mentions fickleness as a characteristic of the Gauls; see note chap. VIII., B. III.

priusquam—conspirarent: the only case of *conspirare* in Caesar; elsewhere he uses *coniurare.* What two reasons for the subjunctive? F.L. 201, 5; 206, 4; P.L. III., 99 (f), iv.

partiendum sibi: for the case of *sibi*: F. L. 173, 4; P.L. 82 (d).

CHAPTER XI.

Treveros: the name still exists in the modern Trèves.

proximi flumini: what other constructions are used with *proximi?* See chap. VII.

huic mandat—adeat—contineat—prohibeat: note that *ut* is often omitted with *mandat*: F.L. 181, 3; P.L. III., 99 (a), 2.

in officio: "in allegiance."

auxilio: dative of purpose: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. III., 82 (c).—*arcessiti*. scil., *esse*.

conentur: for subjunctive: F.L. 206, 4; P.L. III., 99 (e).

cum duodecim: probably the cohorts were drawn from different legions.

Aquitaniam: the district from the Garonne to the Pyrenees, occupied by the Basques, a different race from the inhabitants of *Gallia* proper.

tantae nationes: the Galli and Aquitani.

qui eam—curet: "to see to the dispersion of this force." Explain the mood of *curet*.

Unelli or *Venelli* dwelt on the peninsula of Cotantin, and had a capital, *Crociatonum*, near Valoques, south of Cherbourg. The Curiosolites bordered on the Redones towards the east and the Veneti to the south. Their name is still preserved in *Corseult*, south of St. Malo. The Pictones or Pictoni were on the south side of the lower Loire. Their name still survives on the modern *Poitou*. Along with the Santones they occupied all the coast from the Loire to the Garonne.

quum primum possit: the subjunctive expresses that his setting out depended on the attendant circumstances: see note, Chap. IX., B. II.

CHAPTER XII.

fere: "as a rule": "as a general thing."

situs: note the plural: the English idiom requires the singular. Good examples of such positions would be Mont St. Michael in Normandy and St. Michael's Mount in Cornwall.

in—promontoriisque: "situated at the ends of tongues and headlands." The *lingulae* were low "tongues" of land running out into the sea, of which good examples are the Point de Croisic, on which the town of Croisic is situated and the tongue of Quiberon, both insulated at high water. The *promontoria* were high and rocky. It makes little difference whether we write *promontorium* or *promuntorium*: both are connected with the root MIN, "to jut": cp. *mons*, (originally *mins*), *minae*.

pedibus: "on the land side."

aditum haberent = *adire possent.* *Habeo* (as ἔχω in Greek) has often this meaning: cp. *illud affirmare pro certo habeo*: Livy 44, 22.

cum incitavisset: "as often as the tide had set in from the deep": for this force of *cum*: cp. B. III., 13: *cum ventus saevire coepisset.* What is the derivation of *aestus?*

spatio: for the case: F. L. 82, 2; P. L. III., 85 (b), iii.

navibus: construe *erant eiusmodi fere situs oppidorum ut posita in lingulis promontoriisque neque navibus aditum haberent.*

quod—afflictarentur: "because as the tide went down (*i.e.*, at ebb tide), ships would get dashed on the shallows."—*minuente aestu*: F.L. 100, 5; P. L. III., 85, (o).—*minuo* is here intransitive.

utraque re: "by both circumstances," *i. e.*, by the ebb and flow of the tide.

ac, si quando—recipiebant: translate the participles by finite verbs for an English version: "and, if ever it so happened, that they were baffled by the extent of our works and began to despair of their success, when the sea had been thrust back by a dyke and dams and these had attained the level of the walls of the town, then they would bring up a number of vessels, for doing which they had the best means, and thus they would remove all their effects, and withdraw to neighbouring towns."—*extruso—molibus*: at low tide Caesar built two dykes, parallel to each other, to keep out the tide at high water, and when the tide was out he built a cross wall at the end to keep out the sea. In this way they used each back of the wall as an *agger*. Others take *aggere et molibus* as a hendiadys: "by massive dykes."—*his—adaequatis*: it seems a matter of indifference whether we take *adaequare* intransitive, "to be equal to," and hence *his adaequatis* would be abl. abs. and *moenibus*, a dative, or *adaequare* may be taken transitively "to reach," and then *moenibus adaequatis* is abl. absol., and *his* is abl. of means.—*suis fortunis*; dative: as also in B. VII., 50; *sibi desperans.* Elsewhere Caesar uses *de aliqua re desperare.*—*cuius rei—habebant.* Others translate: "of which part of the service they had a large number."

iisdem—locis: "with the same advantage of position."

magnam partem: acc. of extent of time.

eo facilius: "all the more easily."

vasto—portibus: abl. absolutes: "when the sea was so boundless and open, the waves so great, the harbours so few and far between."

CHAPTER XIII.

Namque closely connects the preceding narrative with what follows: "(the Veneti have not the same difficulty in navigating these waters as we) for, etc."

hunc: "the following": the different particulars given afterwards.

armatae: "rigged out": cp. *νῆες ὁπλίζονται*: Od. 17, 228.

carinae—navium: scil. *fuerunt*: "their bottoms were considerably more flat than those of our ships."—*carina* originally meant the "shell of a nut": akin to the Greek *κάρυον*, "a nut": from root KAR, "hard": cp. *κέρας*, *cornu*: German *hart*: Eng. *hard*. Then it came to signify the hull, bottom, keel of a vessel. So also *φασηλος*, "a kidney bean," was used for a light boat.

quo—possent: "that they might be able the more easily to take the shallows and the ebb of the tide."—*quo*: when is *quo* used for *ut?* F. L. 183, 5; P. L. III., 99. 1. Tacitus (Ann. II., 6) when speaking of the ships used on the coast of the Netherlands says: *planae carinis, ut sine noxa siderent.*

prorae, scil. *erant navibus*: "the ship had prows."

ad quamvis—perferendam: "to withstand any violence and bad usage, however great."—*quamvis*: literally, "any you please," *i.e.*, no matter how great.—*contumeliam*: originally means "violence" or "blows." It is generally said of persons.

transtra—crassitudine: scil. *erant*: "the cross timbers consisted of beams a foot thcik, riveted with iron bolts of the thickness of a man's thumb." *transtra*: originally "row benches"; here said of cross timbers used to support the deck and to give solidity to the vessel.—*pedalibus trabibus*: abl. of description: F. L. 131, 9; P. L. III., 85 (c).—*altitudinem* here equivalent to *crassitudinem*.—*digiti pollicis* in apposition, as *flumen Rhenus* because *pollex* is used for both thumb and great toe; *digiti* is, therefore, added for the sake of clearness.

pro funibus: hemp ropes were liable to be chafed on rough ground and also to be damaged by the alternate wet and dry weather to which they were exposed.

pelles—confectae: scil., *erant Venetis*: "(the Veneti had) skins for sails, and hides thinly dressed." The sails of the Romans were made of flax and called *carbasa*: the Veneti used skins with the hair on (*pelles*) or hides dressed (*alutae*) with alum (*alumen*).

eius usus : literally, "the use of it."—*eius* is governed by *usus*, and refers to *lini*.—*quod—arbitrabantur* : "because they thought that so tempestuous an ocean and such violent winds could not be very well resisted and that such heavy vessels could not be very well managed by sails."—*tantas tempestates Oceani*=*tantarum tempestatum Oceanum*, by hypallage.—*tanta onera navium*=*tam graves naves* : "so cumbersome vessels," the abstract for the concrete.—*velis* refers to the canvas sails such as the Romans used.—*arbitrabantur* : why indicative? F. L. 198, 2 ; P. L. III., 213, 2.

cum—accommodatiora : "the encounter of our fleet with their vessels was of such a kind that ours had the advantage in speed alone, and in the working of the oars : everything else, considering the character of the coast and the violence of the storms was more suitable and adapted for them."—*illis*=*Venetis*.

his : what verbs govern the dative? F.L. 105, 9 ; P.L. III., 82 (e), I.—*rostro* : abl. of means. The *rostrum* : the beak or ram of an ancient Roman ship consisted of a strong beam projecting from the prow beneath the water and furnished with sharp points of metal.

neque—adiciebatur : "nor could a dart easily be thrown so far on account of their height."—*adiciebatur*=*adici poterat*.

et—continebantur : "and for the same reason they were less advantageously held by the grappling irons," of the Romans.—*copulis* : otherwise called *manibus ferreis*, *harpagonibus*, "grappling hooks" by which the Romans caught hold of the enemy's vessels and drew them alongside their own.

accedebat ut—extimescendus :—"there was added the fact that when the breeze began to blow hard and when they were running before the wind, they could both more easily withstand the storm and more safely ride amid the shallows, and when left by the tide, they feared not at all the rocks and reefs : the danger from all which things was greatly to be feared by our ships." Distinguish between *accedit ut* with the subjunctive introducing a historical fact, and *accedit quod* with the indicative introducing a clause giving a reason.—*se vento dare*, literally "to give oneself to the wind," *i.e.*, in nautical parlance, to run before the wind.—*facilius—tutius* : note the emphatic position of these adverbs.—*ab aestu* : *aestus* is here personified, hence *ab* : F.L. 71, 2 ; P.L. III., 82 (d), I.—*relictae* : the ebbing tide left the flat bottomed boats safely on the bottom.—*nihil* : (derived from, either, *ne*, old negative=*non*, and *hilum*, a mark, or *ne*, *filum*, a thread) is often used emphatically for *non* : cp. Cic. in Rull. II., 23 : *Pompeius beneficio isto legis nihil utitur* : LIVY IV., 33 : *ea species nihil terruit equos*. So

also the Greeks used *οὐδέν* for an emphatic *οὐ*.—*saxa—cautes* : generally *saxa* (Gk. *πέτραι*) are large masses of stone of whatever shape : *cautes* are rough, jagged peaks generally under water.—*navibus* : F.L. 173, 4 : P.L. III., 82 (d).

CHAPTER XIV.

expugnatis : distinguish in meaning *expugno* and *oppugno*.

ubi—sumi : "feeling that all this labour was being expended to no purpose."—*laborem sumere*, "to take pains."

frustra : distinguish *frustra*, in vain, disappointed expectations, so far as the *subject* is concerned : *nequidquam*, in vain, absence of success, so far as the *result* is concerned : *incassum*, in vain, involving a want of consideration.

captis oppidis : "by taking the towns." Notice that often a verbal noun in English is translated by the participle in Latin. Translate : *after the conquest of Gaul* : *from the foundation of Rome.*

his noceri posse : F.L. 164, 1 : P.L. III., 96, ii.

statuit exspectandam classem : "he made up his mind to await the arrival of the fleet." Caesar means all the fleet.

quae—visa est : the Veneti seem to have sailed forth from the river Aurray when the approach of the Romans from the Loire was signalled by them. The battle between the fleets probably took place in the Bay of Quiberon and was viewed by Caesar's army from the neighbouring heights of St. Gildas. As the Veneti far surpassed the Romans in number and equipment of vessels, the victory of the Romans was all the more signal. —*primum*, scil. *ubi*.

armorum ; "equipment." The word includes not merely arms but also the ship's tackling : so it means the complete equipment of a vessel : cp. Gk. *ὅπλα*.

neque—vel : it is very unusual to have *neque* or *nec* used once without another *neque* or *nec* following. In place of *vel* we might have *aut* or *ve*, which latter is probably the correct reading.

quibus—attributae : "who had taken charge of several ships."

quid agerent—insisterent : "what they were to do or what plan of fighting they were to adopt." For the mood in *agerent—insisterent* : F.L. 176, 2 ; P.L. III., 99 (a).—*insistere* : properly, "to set oneself to."

rostro: what two cases may this be?

turribus —excitatis: "even though towers were erected," on the Roman ships: the abl. abs. is here equivalent to a concessive clause. Ships so furnished with towers were called *naves turritae*. Note that the regular construction would require *has* to be omitted and *turribus excitatis* changed to *turres excitatas*, as the object of *superabat*. The text, though ungrammatical, is far more forcible than the regular form. We find a parallel to this construction in B. V., 4: *principibus convocatis hos conciliavit*.

ex—navibus: "on the side of the barbarian vessels."

ut—acciderent: "so that missiles could not very well be thrown into them from a lower standing place, and those discharged by the Gauls descended with greater force." No doubt the weight of the Roman *telum* prevented its being thrown to any great height and the Gauls would, therefore, have a double advantage from the height of the bulwarks of their vessels.

una res: no doubt the victors would have lost the victory without this weapon. Caesar purposely avoids mentioning the possibility of a defeat. —*usui*: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. 82 (e).

falces praeacutae: in apposition to *res*. The sharp edged hooks of the Romans fastened to long poles (B. IV., 17), like the *falces murales* employed in pulling down the turf walls of the enemy.

non—falcium: understand *formae* after *absimili*: "of a shape not different from the shapes of hooks used in sieges." For case of *forma*: F.L. 131, 9; P.L. III., 85 (c).—*formae*: F.L. 6, 3; P.L. III., 82 (e), v. These long hooks reached and cut the enemy's rigging and thus the ships of the enemy, propelled by sails only, would be left unmanageable.

funes—destinabant: "the ropes which made the sail yards fast to the mast." —*antennas*: "the sail yards," called by the Greeks κέρατα. The Romans had no technical word for these ropes. They afterwards adopted the Greek word *ceruchi* (κηροῦχοι).

navigio—praerumpebantur: "they were broken off by getting the ship under way."—*navigio incitato*: abl. abs. Explain fully the tenses in *comprehensi erant* and *praerumpebantur*.

quibus—abscissis: so far as meaning is concerned it matters little whether *abscissis* (from *abscindo*) or *abscisis* (from *abscido*) is the correct reading.

concidebant: "fell all in a heap."

Gallicis navibus: "on the part of the Gallic ships": F.L. 134, 2; P.L. III., 82 (f), i.—*armamentis*: same as *arma*, above.

usus navium: "control of the vessels."—*uno*=*eodem*.

reliquum: note the emphatic position: F.L. 231, 7; P.L. III., 110 (b).

ut—posset: "so that no act a little braver than usual was able to escape notice": with *fortius*, scil. *solito*, i.e., no act at all distinguished.

CHAPTER XV.

cum—circumsteterant: "when two or three ships had surrounded one." It is not to be supposed that the Romans outnumbered the ships of the Veneti. The Romans concentrated their forces on one vessel at a time instead of fighting the enemy in a general engagement. Explain the force of the distributive: F.L. 79, 8; P.L. 261 (c). The indicative with *cum* shows that the time in two clauses is coincident or nearly so.

transcendere—naves: "tried to board the ships of the enemy."

contendebant: the imperfect here is used of a repeated act: F.L. 216, 3; P.L. III., 97 (b).

quod=*et hoc*, i.e., "such tactics," "such a stratagem."

cum—auxilium: "when no remedy was discovered against this movement": literally, "a remedy for this thing."—*ei rei*=*navium expugnationi*.

ac iam—possent: "and all along the vessels being turned in that direction in which the wind drove them, suddenly so great a stillness and calm ensued that they could not move from their position." Distinguished *iam*, time to the present and including it; *nunc*, the present moment.—*quo*=*in quam partem*.—*subito*: note emphatic position. What would be the usual position?—*malacia*, a pure Greek word *μαλακία*. It is quite possible that Caesar added *tranquillitas* to express the force of the Greek word. The Gallic ships had no oars.

quidem adds emphasis to the relative: "this circumstance indeed."

negotium: here "engagement." Derive *negotium*.

perpaucae: notice that Caesar prefers *perpauci* to *paucissimi*.

pervenerint: others read *pervenirent*. The perfect lays stress on the fact occurring at a given period of time, here expressed by *noctis interventu*, and means that very few ships reached land then or after. The imperfect would express the fact as a consequence of a preceding preposition.

ab hora—quarta: The Roman day began at six a.m., and lasted to six p.m.; divided into twelve equal parts. The night was generally divided into four watches (*quatuor vigiliae*) extending from 6 p.m. to 6 a.m. It is probable that the battle here mentioned was fought about the time of the autumnal equinox; so that *quarta hora* would be about 10 o'clock in the morning.

CHAPTER XVI.

bellum Venetorum: "the war against the Veneti": note the objective genitive.

cum—tum: "not only—but also."

gravioris aetatis: "of more advanced age": gen. of description.

navium quod ubique fuerat: "all their ships": literally, "whatever of ships had been (to them) every where."—*navium* partitive genitive: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. III., 81 (b).

reliqui—habebant: "the rest had nowhere to betake themselves, nor any means of defending their towns."—*quo reciperent=ut eo reciperent*: Others take *habebant=sciebant*: see note Chap. XII, B. III.

in quos—statuit: "on these Caesar thought that he ought to inflict punishment the more severely on this account, in order that the right of ambassadors might be observed more scrupulously in future by the barbarians."—*vindicare in aliquem* is properly "to claim a right against a person," hence "to punish a person." For the reference to *ius legatorum*: see B. III., c. IX.

necato: Caesar's rigour against his enemies is well known.

sub corona: referring to the old custom of selling the captives in war with a *corona* or chaplet on their head.

CHAPTER XVII.

dum—geruntur; F.L. 201, 3; P.L. III., 99 (f), iii.—*cum iis copiis*: "with these legions": see Chap. XI.

pervenit: either present or perfect; cp. Caes. I., 46, *dum haec geruntur. . . nuntiatum est*; V., 22, *dum—geruntur . . . Cassivelaunus . . . mittit.*

his: for dative; F.L. 120, 2; P.L. III., 82 (e), ii.

summam imperii: "the supreme command": cp. B. I., 41, II., 4, *belli summa*; VI., II, *summa omnium rerum*.

ex quibus—coegerat: "from among whom he had assembled an army and great forces." Schneider says that *copias* means "men" and not "things" and that the phrase *copias cogi* or *coacta* always refers to "men." Besides Caesar in the next chapter says that no attention was paid to collecting supplies.

his paucis diebus: "within the past few days." Note the use of *his* referring to a time near the present, *i.e.*, after the arrival of Sabinus. For the case: F.L. 82, 2; P.L. III., 85 (b).

Aulerci Eburovices: the *Aulerci* formed four cantons in Gaul. [See proper names.] The *Aulerci Eburovices* were often called *Eburones*, N. W. of the Carnutes, along the west bank of the *Sequana* (Seine), above *Lutetia* (Paris). Their chief town was Mediolanum, afterwards *Eburovices* (now Evreux).

auctores belli: "the originators of the war."

nolebant: supply *senatores* from *senatu*.

perditorum—latronum: men were *perditi* who were without means, ruined financially. So Caesar speaks of the followers of Catiline, *cives perditi*. Translate "of men of broken fortunes and marauders": probably a class of men who lived a wild, marauding life.

quos—revocabat: "whom the hope of booty and the love of fighting were alluring away from the tillage of the soil and from regular work." The war against the Gauls was now in its third year, so that the primitive life of the people was now being demoralized.

loco: ablative absolute: "his position being in all respects convenient." —*castris* with *tenebat*: F.L. 85, 3; P.L. II., 125 (a).

duum—spatio: "at a distance of two miles."—*duum millium* scil. *passuum*.—*duum* is an archaic form for *duorum*: so also the archaic genitive *drachmum*, *nummum*, *talentum* following numerals.—*spatio*: why ablative? F.L. 58, 6; P.L. 160 (d).

hostibus=hostium: "in the eyes of the enemy": F.L. 134, 2; P.L. III., 82 (f).

nostrorum—carperetur: "in our soldier's talk was to a certain extent criticized."

vocibus: in the plural *voces* has the meaning often of "abuse," "cla-

mour"; see B. I., 39; III., 24; VI., 36. —*nonnihil*. Distinguish in meaning *nonnihil*, *nihil non*; *nonnulli*, *nulli non*; *non nemo*; *nemo non*; *nonnunquam*, *nunquam non*; *nonnusquam*, *nusquam non*.

tantumque—praebuit: "and he conveyed so great an impression of cowardice."

id refers back to *castris se tenebat*.

praesertim—existimabat: "he (Sabinus) thought that he, as a lieutenant-general, ought not to fight especially in the absence of his commander-in-chief."—*teneret*: F.L. 198, 4; P.L. III., 85 (a), ii, foot note 2.

CHAPTER XVIII.

idoneum—delegit: "he picked a man suited to his purpose and adroit." Distinguish in meaning *diligo* and *deligo*.

ex his=*unum ex his*.

quin—edocet: a good example of Caesar's sententious style. He says that he only gave orders without telling us what the orders were. We learn, however, from the sequel the orders given.

qui: F.L. 232, note; P.L. II., 239.—*pro perfuga*: "as a deserter." Generally *perfuga* is a deserter, who betrays his party: *transfuga* a waverer, who changes or forsakes his party.

proponit: "pictures," or "represents."

neque—educat: literally, "and that it was not later than the next night that Sabinus would lead his troops secretly out of camp": *quin*=*qui non*, i.e., *ut non*. Translate: "that Sabinus would not delay longer than the next night in secretly withdrawing his troops out of camp."—*clam*: for *calam*: rt. KAL, "to conceal": cp. *celo*, καλύπτω.

occasionem—esse: "the chance of fighting a successful battle should not be lost." Distinguish in meaning *amitto*, "to lose" through negligence: *perdo*, "to lose," wilfully.

iri oportere: generally impersonal verbs are joined with the inf. pass., not act. —*oportet* is said to be connected with *pars*, *partio*, etc., and originally meant, "it falls to my share": F.L. 162, 4; P.L. III., 72 (i).

superiorum dierum Sabini: *dierum* is gen. of description and *Sabini* is subjective genitive: for a combination of the two genitives: cp. B. II., 17; *eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri perspecta*.

spes Venetici belli : "the hopes which they entertained regarding the war with the Veneti" : subjective genitive.

quod—credunt : a causal clause in apposition to *res*. Caesar thinks that in most men "the wish is father to the thought."

prius—quam sit concessum : F.L. 201, 5 ; P.L. III., 99 (f), iv.

laeti : "with joy."

ut—victoria : "(as they would have done) if victory had been assured." With *ut* scil. *pergerent*. -*explorata victoria* : abl. abs.—*ut* = *utpote*, *sicuti*, *tanquam* : F.L. 195, 3.—*sarmentis* = *sarpmentis* : from *sarpo*, "I prune" : properly "prunings."—*virgulta* : properly "green twigs" ; cp. *vireo*, *viridis*.—*quibus* = *ut eis* : F.L. 181, 1 ; P.L. III., 99 (a), 1.

CHAPTER XIX.

imo : "from the foot" of the slope.—*imum* : adjectives are used as nouns : so *in angusto* B. II., 25 ; *minimum* in the next sentence.

passus : F.L. 69, 9 ; P.L. III., 149, 92. The Roman *passus* was a double step = 5 Roman *pedes* = 4 ft. 10¼ in. in English measurement ; so that a Roman mile (*mille passus*) was 4854 ft. = 1618 yds., or 142 yds. less than the English mile.—*circiter* is an adverb and *mille passus* goes with *acclivis*, as accusative of extent of space.

magno cursu : "at a full run."

quam minimum spatii : "as little time as possible."—*spatii* = *temporis* : partitive genitive : F.L. 69, 10 ; P.L. III., 81 (b).

exanimatique pervenerunt : "and they were out of breath when they arrived." Note the difference of idiom.

Sabinus—dat : Sabinus cheered on his men and finding them anxious for battle gave the signal at once."—*cupientibus*, scil. *eis*.—*dat* : historical present : F.L. 216, 2 (a) ; P.L. III., 97 (a).

impeditis—onera : "while the enemy were encumbered on account of the loads which they carried."—*hostibus* : abl. absolute : F.L. 100, 5 ; P.L. III., 85 (o).—*ea* : the *sarmenta* and *virgulta*.

duabus portis, scil. *castrorum* : what were the names of the gates of a Roman camp ?

factum est : "the result was."

opportunitate: abl. of cause: so also *inscientia*, *defatigatione*, *virtute*, *exercitatione*.—*ferrent*, scil. *hostes*.

ac: "but," literally "and further": cp. use of *et*: Cic. Rosc. Amer. 10: *animo non deficiam, et id quod suscepi perferam*: "I will not fail, but I will perform what I have undertaken."

occiderunt: distinguish in meaning *occīderunt*, *occĭderunt*.

paucos: "only a few."

ut est: "as on the one hand the spirit of the Gauls is quick and ready to undertake wars, so on the other their resolution is too slack and nerveless to bear up against calamity." Caesar often mentions the fickle and irresolute character of the Gauls.

CHAPTER XX.

fere: note the usual position of *fere*.

in Aquitaniam: why is the preposition necessary?

quae pars—aestimanda: "which division, as has been said before, by reason both of its extent and population, is to be considered a third par, of Gaul." Caesar does not mean that Aquitania formed a third of Gault but that its extent and population would warrant us in regarding it on an equality with the other two divisions.—*ut—est*: see B. I., chap. I. —*ex—parte*: *ex* has here the same meaning as in *haeres ex asse*, "a sole heir": and in adverbial phrases as *ex aequo*, "in the way of what is just."

paucis ante annis: express this in other ways. Twenty-two years before this, in the war with Sertorius (78-72 B.C.), Hirtuleius, the lieutenant of Sertorius, defeated both Praeconinus and Mallius. Note *ubi=in quibus*: so *unde=e quibus*.

viris fortibus Tolosa: "brave men of Tolosa": so Bell. Civil. I., 24. *Cn. Magius Cremona*; III., 71: *notos equites Romanos, C. Fleginatem Placentia, A. Granium Puteolis, M. Sacrativinam Capua*. The ablative may be due to an *ab* omitted.

finitimae his regionibus: what adjectives govern the dative? F.L. 60, 2; P.L. III., 82 (e), v.

evocatis: soldiers who had been discharged after serving their time might be again called to service by a special summons of their commander-in-chief. They were then called *evocati*, and were generally exempt from menial duties, or serving as pioneers or sentinels, and they were allowed to use horses on the march.

Sotiates : the name is Keltic, meaning "heroes." It is still retained in the town *Sos*.

subito—ostenderunt : "suddenly they unmasked their infantry which they had posted in ambush in a valley closed on all sides."—*convallis* : "a valley" shut in on all sides by heights.

CHAPTER XXI.

superioribus victoriis : the defeat of Praeconinus and Mallius : for case F. L. 64, 4 ; P.L. III., 161, 126.—*freti* : derived from root seen in *firmus*, *for-tis*, *fre-num*. What adjectives govern the ablative?

positam : "depended."—*putarent* : for mood : F.L. 198, 3 ; P.L. III., 177, 167. See also *cuperent*.

reliquis legionibus : the legions from which the twelve cohorts which formed the force of Crassus were composed.

adolescentulo duce : "when they had *only* a stripling for a leader" : abl. absol. : F.L. 100, 5 ; P.L. 85 (o).—*possent* : dependent question ; F.L. 176, 2 ; P.L. III., 99 (d).

vertere : Caesar rarely uses this form of the 3rd pl. perf. act. In Sallust, Livy and Tacitus it often occurs.

ex itinere : literally : "leaving his line of march," "off his line of march," "by single escalade."

cuniculis—actis : "sometimes they ran mines and mantlets against the mounds." The word *cuniculus* means properly a rabbit and like some other military terms in use amongst the Romans is derived from the animal kingdom : cp. *scorpio*, *onagri*.

cuius rei—Aquitani : "a device in which the Aquitani are very skilful indeed." Note the superlative absolute. What adjectives govern the genitive?

aerariae secturae : "copper mines" : properly "copper excavations."

diligentia : "owing to the watchfulness" : ablative of cause

faciunt : scil. *id quod imperatum erat*.

CHAPTER XXII.

in ea re—intentis : "the attention of all our men being occupied in these arrangements." With *intentus* the more usual construction is *in eam rem*.

Adcantuannus: others read *Adiatunnus*, meaning the "one desired," from *adiant*, "desire."

summam imperii: see note, Chap. XVII., B. III.

cum sexcentis—dediderint: "along with six hundred faithful followers whom they call *soldurii*: and this is their compact, that in life they enjoy all privileges in common with those to whose friendship they have devoted themselves."—*soldurios*: some say the word is derived from the Basque, or Iberian *saldi*, "a horse," or *salduni*, "a cavalier." Others say that the word is derived from the same root as the German *sollen*, and means *devinctus*, *obligatus*. According to Athenaeus they died with the king even if he died a natural death. Valerius Maximus mentions this custom: B. II., 6, 11: *Celtiberi nefas esse ducebant proelio superesse, cum is occidisset pro cuius salute spiritum devovissent.* Tacitus mentions a similar custom among the Germans (Germ. 14: cp. VII., 40): *clientes, quibus more Gallorum nefas est etiam in extrema fortuna deserere patronos.*

si quid his accidat: a euphemism for *moriantur*: cp. εἴ τι πάθοι = εἰ θάνοι.

sibi mortem consciscant: literally: "adjudge death to themselves," "commit suicide."

quisquam: note that *quisquam* and *ullus* are used in negative: *quivis* and *quilibet* in affirmative clauses.

cum his: resuming the sentence interrupted by the parenthesis explaining the meaning of *soldurii*, "with these I say."

eadem—conditione: "on the same terms": what verbs govern the ablative?

CHAPTER XXIII.

armis—acceptis: express this in various ways.

et natura—munitum: "fortified by both its natural position and art."

paucis—erat: "within a few days after his arrival there."—*paucis diebus*: the ablative marks an interval between two events.—*quibus* is here equivalent to *postquam* and also marks the time within which the event happened; cp. B. IV., 18, *diebus decem quibus materia coepta est comportari*, which is equivalent to *die decimo postquam*, *etc.*

quoquoversum: "in all directions."

ad—Aquitaniae: "to those states of Hither Spain which adjoin Aqui-

tania": observe the Latin idiom. Hither Spain (*Hispania Citerior*, subsequently *Taraconensis*) included the district between the Iberus (*Ebro*) and the Pyrenees.

adventu: ablative of time or reason.

omnes annos: during the whole period of the war with Sertorius, 82, B.C.—72, B.C.

hi—instituunt: "these men, in the same way as the Roman people, set about selecting positions, fortifying a camp, cutting our men off from supplies. —*consuetudine*: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. III., 85 (e).—*commeatibus*: F.L. 185, 2 (1); P.L. III., 85 (a).

quod: refers to the preceding sentence and the clause *suas copias.—relinquere* is an equivalent to it.

diduci: "spread out" so as to command the different avenues and prevent them being surrounded by the enemy.

et—relinquere: "and that they still left behind a sufficient number to guard the camp."—*praesidii*: part. gen.; F.L. 69, 10; P.L. III., 81 (b).

minus commode: a mild way (*litotes*) of saying, "with great difficulty."

in dies: daily, used with words expressing increase or diminution: *quotidie*, daily, expressing anything daily repeated. Translate: *he goes to school daily*: *he grows stronger daily*.

decertaret: "to fight a decisive battle." Note the force of *de* in *decertare*, *depugnare*.

consilium: a council of war.

CHAPTER XXIV.

productis, *instituta*, *coniectis*: the ablative absolutes are not quite co-ordinate in time. The time in the first would be over before the time in the other two participles.—*duplici acie*: the forces of Crassus were small, and instead of drawing up his soldiers in the usual form (*acies triplex*) he places them in two lines, on the right and on the left, with the auxiliaries thrown into the centre.

quid—caperent: for the partitive genitive: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. III., 81 (b). For the subjunctive: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. III., 99 (a).

obsessis—potiri: "to blockade the roads, cut off our supplies, and thus win a bloodless victory." The first ablative absolute explains how that happens which is expressed by the other two.

impeditos—cogitabant: "they decided to attack them encumbered on the march, and with their packs to carry, when self-confidence was impaired." Distinguish *sarcina*, baggage of the individual soldiers: *impedimenta*, the baggage of the whole army.

castris: often *in* is omitted in such cases: cp. B. III., 17: *Sabinus castris sese tenebat.*

Cum—effecissent: "since by their hesitation and by the impression of cowardice which they gave, the enemy had made our soldiers all the more eager for fighting." Another reading is *timidiores*: the translation then is: "being more timid than their reputation."

exspectari—oportere: impersonal verbs are generally joined with the infinitive *passive*, not *active.*

omnibus cupientibus: "and finding them all eager": abl. absolute.

CHAPTER XXV.

Cum complerent: F.L. 198, 3; P.L. III., 177, 167.

multis telis coniectis: "by a shower of darts."—*vallo*: F.L. 158, 2 (1); P.L. III., 85 (h).

quibus—confidebat: "in whom Crassus had little confidence so far as fighting was concerned."—*quibus*: F.L. 105, 9; P.L. III., 82 (e), 1.

ad aggerem: scil. *faciendum*: "to form a rampart": the Romans in consequence of the height of the enemy's camp had to make a sloping mound up to it, like the *agger* made in sieges.

speciem—pugnantium: "the appearance and impression of combatants."

cespitibus: "turfs," "sods."

constanter ac non timide: "with steadiness and even intrepidity."

non eadem diligentia munita: "that the camp had not been formed with the same care on the side of the decuman gate." As the Romans invariably protected the camp with a rampart and ditch: *munire castra* often means "to form a camp." Where was the *porta decumana?*

CHAPTER XXVI.

praemiis pollicitationibusque: it is more than likely that no rewards would be given in the heat of battle: so we may take the expression to mean: "by the promise of reward."

vellet: dependent question: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. III., 99, (d).

praesidio castris: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. III., 82, (c).

intritae: "not worn out": a participle negatived: cp. *indefessus*, *illaesus*, *invocatus*.

omnium, scil. *hostium*.

videri: scil. *possent* from the *posset* following. Note that *priusquam videri posset* means "before they could see," without implying that they ever saw: while *priusquam videri potuit*, means "before they could see," implying they saw: F.L. 201, 5; P.L. III., 99, (f), IV.

quid rei gereretur: "what was going on": F.L. 176, 2; P.L. III., 99, (d).

quod: refers to the thought in *redintegratis viribus*, *i.e.*, the renewal of strength.

consuevit: generally happens": see note B. III., chapter I.

desperatis—rebus: see note on B. III., chapter III.

per munitiones: "all along the entrenchments": cp. IV., 33, *per temonem percurrere*.

apertissimis campis: Crassus was probably in the low lying lands south of the Garonne, within the Department of Gironde.

multa nocte: "far on in the night": cp. B. I., 22: *multo die*.

CHAPTER XXVII.

hac audita pugna: express this in different ways.

ultro: literally, *to* a point beyond: *ultra*: *at* a point beyond. The word may be translated by "further."

Tarbelli—Cocosates: for the position of their tribes see the map. Many of these names still survive in their modern names: Tarbelli in *Tarbes*, the Bigerriones in *Bigorre*, the Elusates, in *Eauze*, the Ausci in *Auch*, the Garumni in *Garonne*, the Sibuzates in *Saubusse*.

paucae ultimae nationes: "a few tribes, the remotest."

tempore: F.L. 105, 9. Note; P.L. III., 85, (k), iii.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

iam: "by this time."

omni Gallia pacata: "amid the general reduction of Gaul": F.L. 100, 5; P.L. III., 85, (o).

Morini—essent : "the only people under arms were the Morini and Menapii" : F.L. 188, 5, (a) ; P.L. III., 99, (c).

neque=et non.

longe—ac : "in a way far different from."

eo=in eas silvas et paludes.

initium : "entrance."

repulerunt : the forms *reppuli*, *religio*, *repperit* may be accounted from the fact that *red* may be the prefix and the principle of assimilation was observed.

deperdo : note that *perdo* and its compound denote wilful negligence in losing : *amitto* implies to lose from indifference.

deinceps : a word compounded of *dein* (*de-in-de*) and the suffix *-ceps*. It signifies an uninterrupted series. The meaning then is, "during all the days that Caesar spent in the country."

imprudentibus : "off their guard," because engaged in cutting timber, etc. It would be more common to find *in milites.—militibus* : abl. abs.

omnem—collocabat : "he collected together all that timber, which was cut down, directly facing the enemy, and he piled it as a rampart on each flank." Notice the force of the imperfect.

magno spatio—confecto : "a large space having been cleared."—*paucis diebus* : abl. within a point of time."

extrema impedimenta—nostros : "the rear of the baggage train was coming within reach of our men." Distinguish *pecus, pecŏris* : "a collection of cattle," and *pecus, pecŭdis*, "a single head" of cattle. Explain the subjunctives *tenerentur—peterent.—densiores silvas=densiores partes silvae*

eiusmodi tempestates : literally, "storms of such kind," *i e.*, "such storms," or "such tempestuous weather."—*consecutae* scil. *sunt.—sub pellibus* : literally, "under skins," *i.e.*, as we say, "under cover." The tents under which the Roman soldiers slept in summer were covered with skins. In winter, generally, Caesar went into *hiberna* either in the towns of Gallia or under huts built for the winter.

Aulercis : the Aulerci Eburovices are meant [see Proper Names].

in hibernis collocavit : this includes the forces under Sabinus and Crassus.

SHORT EXERCISES

BASED ON CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, B. III.

For oral translation into Latin.

NOTE.—The student is supposed to read carefully the chapter on which each of the following exercises is based and to note carefully every construction before attempting to translate the sentences into Latin.

I.

1. Servius Galba was sent by Caesar against the Veragri. 2. He set out with one legion against the Allobroges whose territories extend from the lake of Geneva to the top of the Alps. 3. Caesar wished to open a road over the Alps. 4. He knew that merchants often at great risk were wont to go to those places. 5. Ambassadors were sent from all sides to Galba and peace was made. 6. What was the name of the village in which Galba passed the winter? 7. This village was hemmed in by very high mountains. 8. A river divided the town into two parts; one of which was assigned to the Roman legion. 9. This place was fortified by Galba, the lieutenant. 10. He took several forts by storm and stationed there a garrison.

II.

1. Caesar ordered the soldiers to collect corn to that place. 2. He was informed that the Gauls had seized the mountains. 3. The mountains which overhung are held by the Seduni and Veragri. 4. The Gauls, to whom he had assigned one part of the village had left during the night. 5. It happened that they suddenly renewed the war and tried to crush the Roman legion. 6. The legion was not complete because two cohorts had been withdrawn (from it). 7. These cohorts had been sent for the purpose of obtaining supplies. 8. The soldiers of these two cohorts, on account of the unevenness of the ground, did not think that they were able to withstand the attack of the Veragri. 9. When we made an onset against them, they were unable to withstand our troops. 10. The Veragri were persuaded that the Romans were attempting to seize the places for the purpose of holding them.

III.

1. The work on the winter quarters had not been fully finished by Galba. 2. Sufficient provision for supplies had not been made by our men. 3. The enemy made a surrender and gave us hostages. 4. It is impossible that aid should come to us in this war. 5. This war happened contrary to his expectation. 6. The heights were manned by the forces of the enemy. 7. Supplies cannot be brought up because the roads are blocked up. 8. Let us make a sortie and hasten to a place of safety by the same roads by which we came. 9. A majority determined to abandon the baggage and hasten to a place of safety. 10. After making a sortie, we defended our camp.

IV.

1. There was hardly time for giving a signal. 2. From every side the enemy hurled darts against our men. 3. Our men at first from their higher position hurled no weapon without effect. 4. When the enemy were wearied with long fighting, they withdrew and fresh men took their places. 5. Our men were so few that they could not withdraw from the fight, even when they were tired. 6. When one part of the camp was hard pressed by our men, to that quarter the enemy sent aid. 7. No chance is given to them of doing any of these things. 8. They cannot leave the place where they stand even when wounded.

V.

1. The enemy fought for more than six hours. 2. Not only did the enemy press them more vigorously, but they began to fill up the trenches. 3. In the battle with the Nervii, Servius was exhausted with many wounds. 4. We said that Caesar was a man of great valour. 5. The only hope of safety lies in making a sortie. 6. Call together the officers and order them to stop the fight. 7. We picked up the spent weapons. 8. Refresh yourselves for your toil and then make a sortie from the camp. 9. All your hope of safety rests in your own valour.

VI.

1. The enemy suddenly made a sortie from every quarter against our men. 2. You leave us no opportunity either of finding out what is doing or of collecting our wits. 3. Do you entertain the hope of slaying your enemies? 4. Out of more that one thousand men nearly one hundred were slain. 5. It was well known that more than a third of the enemy were slain in this battle. 6. Galba had come with one purpose but saw

that he had met with a different state of things. 7. After this battle was fought, there was a great lack of arms and supplies among the enemy. 8. After setting fire to all the dwellings of the enemy, Galba led his army into winter quarters.

VII.

1. When Caesar had conquered the Belgae, he set out for Italy. 2. At the beginning of winter, a war suddenly broke out amongst the Gauls. 3. He desired to go to all these places and to ascertain what the cause of the war was. 4. Crassus with one legion was in a district very close to the ocean. 5. There was a great scarcity of corn in that district. 6. Caesar sent to the different states lieutenants for the purpose of obtaining corn. 7. After he had sent tribunes of the soldiers, he went into winter quarters. 8. He despatched one legion into the country of the Veneti.

VIII.

1. The influence of the Veneti is very great because they hold all the sea coast. 2. The Veneti often cross into Britain in ships. 3. They surpassed all the other tribes of Gaul in their knowledge of naval affairs. 4. Caesar says that almost all who were accustomed to use ships were subject to the Veneti. 5. By returning two Romans, the enemy thought that the hostages which had been given to Crassus would be received. 6. We had rather receive our hostages than remain in slavery to the Romans. 7. They agreed amongst themselves to urge the states of Gaul to act in a body. 8. We would enjoy the liberty which our forefathers have given to us rather than endure the slavery imposed by the Romans. 9. If you wish to receive your ambassadors, send back our hostages to us.

IX.

1. Meanwhile ships were constructed, rowers organized and sailors collected in Gaul. 2. Crassus informed Caesar of all these matters. 3. As soon as he could, he set out into the country of the Veneti and began to collect rowers for that war. 4. We knew how great a crime we have been guilty of. 5. They apprehended and threw into chains ambassadors, men who are always looked upon as sacred. 6. Considering the magnitude of the danger let us build as many ships as possible and let us provide all that is necessary for the war. 7. They had great confidence in their ships because they were aware that our soldiers had no knowledge of the locality where they would carry on the war. 8. They were particularly strong in ships, still everything turned out contrary to expectation. 9. Navigation is

a very different thing in the river Loire from what it is on the broad ocean. 10. They formed their plans when it was generally known where Caesar would carry on the war.

X.

1. The difficulty of carrying on the war was very great, nevertheless Caesar was led to undertake it from the league of so many states. 2. The wrong done to the Romans aroused the soldiers to renew the war. 3. If we overlook this revolt, the Morini may do the same thing. 4. They renewed the war against the Romans after the hostages had been given. 5. Since all the Gauls are quickly excited to war, the army must be distributed among several communities. 7. Caesar thought that the Gauls should be aroused to war and that his army ought to be distributed among the states of Gaul. 8. Almost all the Gauls are fond of a change in government and are easily excited to war. 9. Before the states formed a league, the army must be sent among them.

XI.

1. The lieutenant was sent into the country of the Treveri with six legions. 2. He charged the lieutenant to keep the Belgae in allegiance. 3. The Germans had been summoned to the aid of the Belgae. 4. They attempted to cross the river by means of boats. 5. Crassus with many auxiliary troops set out for that region. 6. Sabinus took care that such powerful nations should be kept apart. 7. The Romans appoint Decimus Brutus commander over all their vessels. 8. The general himself, as soon as he was able, set out against the enemy. 9. Caesar himself hastened to the sea coast with all the infantry. 10. Auxiliary troops assembled from all the neighbouring districts.

XII.

1. The towns were situated on high promontories or on tongues of land. 2. There is no access to the towns either on foot or by ships. 3. The tide in that place comes up every twelve hours. 4. At ebb-tide he saw that the ships were wrecked on the shoals. 5. Caesar shut out the sea by means of dykes and dams, which he made level with the walls of the town. 6. The enemy moved their goods the more easily, because they had an abundance of ships. 7. During the greater part of the summer Caesar was detained by storms. 8. The ports were few, so that there was a great difficulty in bringing their vessels to land. 9. The places situated on the sea were protected by the advantages of their position.

XIII.

1. The ships are made flat bottomed, that they may the more easily encounter the shoals. 2. The prows of all the ships were made perpendicular, to withstand the violence of the waves. 3. The ships, which were made wholly of oak, could withstand any violence, however great. 4. The Veneti used timbers a foot thick, spikes of iron of the thickness of one's thumb, iron cables instead of ropes, and hides for sails. 5. The enemy did not use canvas on account of its scarcity, and because they were not able to steer their ships with sails of such a kind. 6. Our ships could neither bear a storm easily nor stay in shallow water with safety. 7. The ships of the enemy were better suited to withstand the force of the storms. 8. No dart thrown by our men could easily reach the ships of the enemy, on account of their height. 9. When they ran before the wind, the enemy had no fear of the rocks. 10. When the ships of our men were left by the tide, they greatly dreaded all kinds of mishaps.

XIV.

1. So much labour was spent in vain that we could not check the enemy's flight, nor injure them. 2. When Caesar learned that several towns were taken, he awaited the arrival of the fleet. 3. As soon as the Roman fleet was seen by the enemy, they set out from their port with all their ships completely equipped. 4. Brutus said that he did not know what the enemy would do in the battle. 5. "What mode of battle," said he, "will they adopt in such an emergency?" 6. Their ships cannot be injured by the beaks of our ships, because they are made of oak. 7. When the sails and rigging were torn away, their ships were of no use to them. 8. Our men were greatly superior to the enemy, because the battle was fought in sight of the Roman commander. 9. Our troops occupied all the hills, from which the battle could be seen.

XV.

1. Three or four ships at a time surrounded each of the enemy's vessels. 2. Our men at this time strove to board the ships of the enemy. 3. After the barbarians observed our men boarding the ships of the enemy, the latter sought safety by flight. 4. Since they found no relief for this, they turned their ships about. 5. They were not able to stir, on account of the calm. 6. The sudden calm was extremely opportune for pursuing them singly. 7. Very few of the ships of the enemy reached the land in safety. 8. The battle against the Veneti lasted from about 10 a. m. to sunset. 9. On that day the Roman soldiers fought bravely, for Caesar was witnessing the battle on the neighbouring heights.

XVI.

1. The Romans brought the war to a close by this battle. 2. Whatever ships we have any where, have been collected in this place. 3. We have no place to retreat to, nor can we defend our towns. 4. The enemy surrendered their towns on that day to our commander. 5. They must be punished, that they may in future regard the rights of ambassadors. 6. When the enemy were conquered, Caesar put all the senators to death. 7. The inhabitants of that state he sold as slaves. 8. In this battle the Veneti lost very many ships. 9. The barbarians carefully observed for the future the rights of ambassadors.

XVII.

1. While the lieutenant was receiving large forces from Caesar, Viridovix was collecting his troops. 2. Viridovix collected large forces from the states which had revolted. 3. Within a few days past, the enemy's gates had been closed to the Romans. 4. Hope of plunder had called out a large number of robbers from all parts of Gaul. 5. They had been allured from agricultural pursuits and their ordinary business by their desire for plunder. 6. Every day Viridovix offered Sabinus a chance to fight. 7. In consequence of the absence of Caesar, Sabinus was unwilling to fight except on even terms. 8. A lieutenant ought not to fight unless some favourable chance is offered. 9. The enemy dared to go even to the rampart of the camp. 10. At the distance of ten miles the enemy took up their position on a hill.

XVIII.

1. Sabinus persuaded a certain man who was very shrewd to go over to the enemy as a deserter. 2. Caesar instructed this man what he wished to be done. 3. This man, a Gaul, told them that Sabinus on the next night would lead his army out of camp. 4. This man told the enemy in what straits the Romans were. 5. The opportunity of leading the army out of camp ought not to be thrown away. 6. Men generally are glad to believe what they wish. 7. They did not go to the camp till they had collected faggots to fill up the trench. 8. All shouted out : "We must not lose the chance of conquering the enemy." 9. With joy they set out to the camp after collecting twigs with which they intended to fill up the trench. 10. On that day, he set out for the purpose of bringing aid to Caesar.

XIX.

1. They hastened with great speed, in order that the Romans might not rally and arm themselves. 2. The spot where the camp was situated,

gradually sloped to the plain. 3. With such speed they hastened that they arrived at that place breathless. 4. Very little time was given our men for arming themselves. 5. When they got to the camp all out of breath, Sabinus gave his men the signal which they desired. 6. It happened that our men made a sortie from two gates. 7. On account of the valour of the soldiers, not even one of the enemy escaped. 8. As the Gauls undertake war with eagerness, so they are by no means resolute in bearing defeat.

XX.

1. Almost at the same time P. Crassus was waging war in these places where the army of Valerius had been defeated a few years before. 2. Caesar said that Aquitania forms the third part of Gaul. 3. Mallius fled from the same place after losing his baggage train. 4. No moderate activity must be employed. 5. When he had arrived there and learned that it was the place where Valerius had been killed a few years before he used no ordinary diligence. 6. On his arrival, the Sotiates collected all the forces they could and attacked our army on the march. 7. When the cavalry of the enemy were repulsed, the commander led the infantry against the enemy. 8. The enemy renewed the battle when they saw that our forces were scattered. 9. He collected all the force and engaged in battle on that day with the enemy.

XXI.

1. Since the safety of all Aquitania depends on our valour, let us not turn our backs. 2. What can they do with a mere boy for a leader. 3. They wish to show what they can do without their general. 4. Sometimes they made sorties, and sometimes they worked mines up to the walls. 5. A large number of the enemy spent with wounds began to retreat to their town. 6. The people of Aquitania are very well skilled in working mines. 7. Owing to the watchfulness of our men they could accomplish nothing with mines. 8. They asked Caesar to receive them and their citizens in surrender. 9. When this request was granted, all were ordered to hand over their arms to our officers.

XXII.

1. The king from one part of the town attempted to make a sally. 2. He set out with six hundred devoted followers, called soldurii. 3. They enjoy all the blessings of life in common with those to whose friendship they have devoted themselves. 4 If anything should happen to him to whose friendship a soldurius has devoted himself, he would not refuse to die. 5. Nor has any one been found so far who has refused to commit

suicide. 6. They raised a shout and boldly rushed to arms. 7. Though they were driven back into the town, nevertheless, they enjoyed the same basis of surrender. 8. After a fierce battle, the king and his devoted followers were driven back into town. 9. The Romans drove the king into the town, where he surrendered all his possessions to Crassus.

XXIII.

1. The lieutenant received in surrender the hostages whom the enemy gave. 2. The town was taken a few days after they arrived there. 3. Ambassadors were summoned from these states which belonged to Hither Spain. 4. On the arrival of the auxiliaries they carried on the war more eagerly. 5. Crassus could not easily separate his forces, whereas the enemy could roam about and leave a sufficient garrison for the camp. 6. Since the number of the enemy was increasing day by day, he thought that he must not hesitate to engage in battle. 7. Learning that the whole council had the same feeling, he set the next day for the battle. 8. The leaders picked for that war had served for many years under Sertorius. 9. The enemy determined to keep our men from the provisions which were in these places.

XXIV.

1. At daybreak, Caesar drew up all his army in a double line. 2. All the auxiliaries of the enemy were placed in the middle of the line. 3. Let us wait to see what plans the enemy are forming. 4. On account of our reputation in war we shall easily obtain a victory. 5. The enemy attacked our men encumbered with baggage while on the march. 6. The enemy thought that if the roads could be blocked up, and thus our army prevented from obtaining supplies, they could easily gain a victory without any loss. 7. On account of the hesitation of the enemy, our men were more eager for the battle. 8. We must no longer delay going into the enemy's camp. 9. The more timid the enemy were the more eager did our soldiers become. 10. When Caesar had addressed his soldiers, he led all his forces against the camp of the enemy.

XXV.

1. Some of the Romans filled the ditch; others drove the enemy from the rampart. 2. While some were supplying stones and weapons for the fighters, others were bringing sods for the mound. 3. The enemy fought steadily and hurled weapons with good effect from the rampart. 4. Crassus, the lieutenant of Caesar, had not much confidence in the auxiliary

troops who were stationed in the centre. 5. None of the darts which were thrown by our men from the heights, fell without effect. 6. The enemy fought for many hours steadily against our troops. 7. The Romans arrived at the decuman gate and demolished the walls before the enemy could find out what was going on. 8. Word was brought back to Crassus that the cavalry of the Romans had ridden round the camp of the enemy. 9. The camp of the Romans was fortified with the greatest care by Caesar. 10. We had an easy access to the camp of the enemy.

XXVI.

1. Caesar, addressing his troops, told them what he wished them to do in this battle. 2. Three cohorts which had been left to guard the camp were led out. 3. They led the horsemen around by a longer route that they might not be seen by the enemy. 4. The eyes of all the soldiers in the army were fixed on the battle. 5. The Romans burst through the defences of the camp before it was clear what was being done. 6. No one could easily perceive what the enemy were doing. 7. It often happens that the hope of victory brings strength to the soldiers. 8. The enemy, when surrounded on all sides, strive to rush through the fortifications. 9. Caesar with all his cavalry pursued the enemy through an unobstructed district. 10. It is clear that out of fifty thousand men hardly a fourth part was left.

XXVII.—XXVIII.

1. Very many Aquitanians gave themselves up to Caesar, but some of the remotest tribes omitted to send hostages to him. 2. Summer had now almost gone, and winter was near at hand. 3. The only nations among the Gauls which had not been subdued were the Morini and Menapii. 4. Both these nations carried on war in a different manner from Caesar. 5. When these nations had been conquered in battle they collected all their effects in the extensive forests of their country. 6. When Caesar arrived at the forest to which they had betaken themselves, he began to fortify a camp. 7. Having made an attack against our men they were driven back again into the woods. 8. They followed the Romans too far and lost a great many of their men.

XXIX.

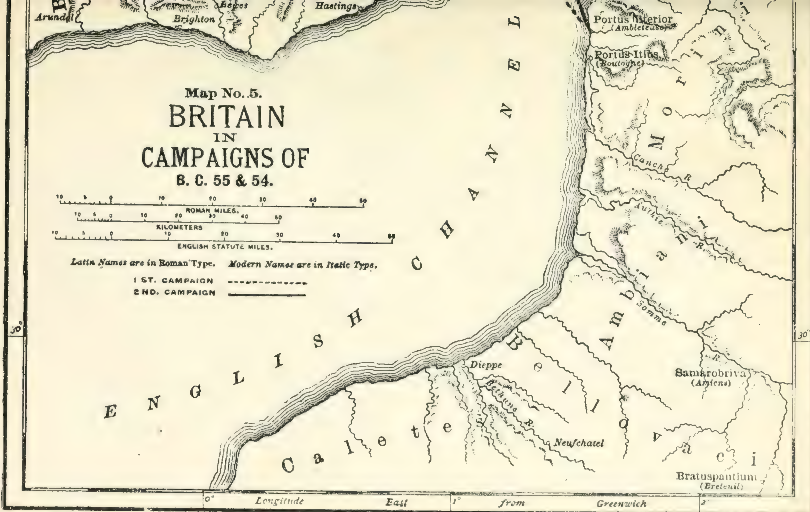
1. After felling the trees, Caesar piled up the timber for a rampart. 2. To prevent an attack being made against our men, Caesar piled up all the

timber he had cut. 3. Within a few days he covered a long distance with incredible speed. 4. Storms so severe followed that Caesar had of necessity to give up the work. 5. The soldiers could not be kept under cover from the continued rains. 6. He devastated all the lands of the enemy. 7. When he had burned all their buildings, he led home his army. 8. He stationed his soldiers in winter quarters among the states which lately had revolted.

BOOK IV.



0° Longitude East 1° from Greenwich 2°
32°
31°
NORTH SEA
BRITANNIA
Cenimagni
Trinobantes
Cassi
Ancalites
Bury-St.Edmunds
Cambridge
Bedford
Sudbury
Ipswich
Orford
Aldburgh
Harwich
Colchester
St.Albans
Hertford
Chelmsford
Maldon
Crouch R.
Roding
Lea R.
London
Thames R.
Thames
Windsor
Sunbury
R. Colne
Wey R.
Kingston
Bromley
Croydon
Keston
Darent R.
Rochester
Maidstone
Canterbury
Littlebourn
Sandwich
Goodwin Sands
Deal
Walmer Castle
Dover
South Foreland
Dorking
Mole R.
Guildford
Westerham
Medway R.
Wye
Ashford
Folkstone
Hythe
Rother R.
Romney
Dunkirk


Map No. 5.
BRITAIN
IN
CAMPAIGNS OF
B. C. 55 & 54.
ROMAN MILES.
KILOMETERS
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
Latin Names are in Roman Type. Modern Names are in Italic Type.
1 ST. CAMPAIGN
2 ND. CAMPAIGN
ENGLISH CHANNEL
Arundel
Brighton
Lewes
Hastings
Portus Ulterior
(Ambleteuse)
Portus Itius
(Boulogne)
Morini
Canche R.
Authie R.
Ambiani
Somme
Samarobriva
(Amiens)
Dieppe
Bethune R.
Neufchatel
Bellovaci
Caletes
Bratuspantium
(Breteuil)
30'
0° Longitude East 1° from Greenwich 2°

C. IULI CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER QUARTUS.

Contents of Book IV.—55 B.C.—Gaul has been brought under a Roman protectorate ; the attempts of the Belgae, the Veneti and others to throw off the yoke have been crushed. Caesar now has two tasks before him : to check certain German tribes who are encroaching on Gaul (Chs. I.-XIX.), and to overawe the Britons, who have been aiding their Gallic kinsmen (Chs. XX.-XXVIII).

GERMAN TRIBES CHECKED.

I.—EA, quae sequuta est, hieme, qui fuit annus Cneio Pompeio, Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Germani, et item Tenchtheri, magna cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari, quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quod, ab Suevis complures annos exagitati, bello premebantur et agricultura prohibebantur. Suevorum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. Hi centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula millia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserint, se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus invicem anno post in armis sunt ; illi domi remanent. Sic neque agricultura, nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est ; neque longius anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causa licet. Neque multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in venationibus ; quae res et cibi genere, et quotidiana exercitatione, et libertate vitae (quod, a pueris nullo officio aut disciplina assuefacti, nihil omnino contra voluntatem faciant), et vires alit, et immani corp-

Usipetes and Tenchtheri migrate to Gaul, pressed by the Suevi.

Customs of the Suevi.

orum magnitudine homines efficit. Atque in eam se consuetudinem adduxerunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitus, praeter pelles, habeant quicquam (quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta), et laventur in fluminibus.

II.—Mercatoribus est ad eos aditus magis eo, ut, quae bello ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo ullam rem ad se importari desiderent. Quin etiam iumentis, quibus maxime Gallia delectatur, quaeque impenso parant pretio, Germani importatis non utuntur: sed quae sunt apud eos nata, parva atque deformia, haec quotidiana exercitatione, summi ut sint laboris, efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio assuefaciunt; ad quos se celeriter, cum usus est, recipiunt: neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habetur, quam ephippiis uti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum, quamvis pauci, adire audent. Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt, quod ea re ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines atque effeminari arbitrantur.

III.—Publice maximam putant esse laudem, quam latissime a suis finibus vacare agros: hac re significari, magnum numerum civitatum suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque una ex parte a Suevis circiter millia passuum sexcenta agri vacare dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succedunt Ubii (quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, ut est captus Germanorum), et paulo quam sunt eiusdem generis ceteri humaniores; propterea quod Rhenum attingunt, multumque ad eos mercatores ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti. Hos cum Suevi multis saepe bellis experti propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt, ac multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.

The Suevi reduce the Ubii to a tributary state.

IV.—In eadem causa fuerunt Usipetes et Tenchtheri,

quos supra diximus, qui complures annos Suevorum vim sustinuerunt ; ad extremum tamen, agris expulsi et multis Germaniae locis triennium vagati, ad Rhenum pervenerunt. Quas regiones Menapii incolebant, et ad utramque ripam fluminis agros, aedificia vicosque habebant ; sed tantae multitudinis aditu perterriti, ex his aedificiis, quae trans flumen habuerant, demigraverant, et, cis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis, Germanos transire prohibebant. Illi, omnia experti, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam navium, neque clam transire propter custodias Menapiorum possent, reverti se in suas sedes regionesque simulaverunt ; et, tridui viam progressi, rursus reverterunt ; atque, omni hoc itinere una nocte equitatu confecto, inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppresserunt, qui, de Germanorum discessu per exploratores certiores facti, sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. His interfectis navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum, quae citra Rhenum quieta in suis sedibus erat, certior fieret, flumen transierunt, atque, omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis, reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt.

The Menapii are surprised by the sudden attack of the Germans.

V.—His de rebus Caesar certior factus, et infirmitatem Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles, et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum existimavit. Est autem hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti et viatores, etiam invitos, consistere cogant, et, quod quisque eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit, quaerant ; et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regionibus veniant, quasque ibi res cognoverint, pronuntiare cogant. His rumoribus atque auditionibus permoti de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos e vestigio poenitere necesse est, cum incertis rumoribus serviant, et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondeant.

The fickle character of the Gauls.

VI.—Qua consuetudine cognita, Caesar, ne graviori bello occurreret, maturius quam consuerat ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, ea, quae fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovit ; missas legationes a nonnullis civita-

Caesar discovers intrigues between the Gauls and Germans; calls a meeting of the Gallic chiefs and gets their aid against the Germans.

tibus ad Germanos invitatosque eos, uti ab Rheno discederent ; omniaque quae postulassent, ab se fore parata. Qua spe adducti Germani latius iam vagabantur, et in fines Eburonum et Condrusorum, qui sunt Treverorum clientes, pervenerant. Principibus Galliae evocatis, Caesar ea quae cognoverat dissimulanda sibi existimavit, eorumque animis permulsis et confirmatis, equitatuque imperato, bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit.

VII.—Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque delectis, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat. A quibus cum paucorum dierum iter abesset, legati ab his venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio : Germanos neque priores Populo Romano bellum inferre, neque tamen recusare, si lacessantur, quin armis contendant, quod Germanorum consuetudo haec sit a maioribus tradita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque deprecari : haec tamen dicere, venisse invitos, eiectos domo. Si suam gratiam Romani velint, posse eis utiles esse amicos : vel sibi agros attribuant, vel patiantur eos tenere, quos armis possederint. Sese unis Suevis concedere, quibus ne dii quidem immortales pares esse possint : reliquum quidem in terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint.

The German deputies negotiate with Caesar,

VIII.—Ad haec Caesar, quae visum est, respondit ; sed exitus fuit orationis : Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent : neque verum esse, qui suos fines tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare : neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros qui dari tantae praesertim multitudini sine iniuria possint. Sed licere, si velint, in Ubiorum finibus considere, quorum sint legati apud se, et de Suevorum iniuriis querantur, et a se auxilium petant : hoc se ab iis impetraturum.

who refuses to allow them to remain in Gaul.

IX.—Legati haec se ad suos relaturos dixerunt, et, re deliberata, post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros : interea ne propius se castra moveret, petierunt. Ne id quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit : cognoverat

They agree to give him an answer in three days; and ask him not to advance, but he refuses.

enim magnam partem equitatus ab iis aliquot diebus ante praedandi frumentandique causa ad Ambivaritos trans Mosam missam. Hos exspectari equites, atque eius rei causa moram interponi arbitrabatur.

X.—Mosa profluit ex monte Vosego, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et, parte quadam ex Rheno recepta, quae appellatur Vahalis, insulam efficit Batavorum, neque longius ab eo millibus passuum octoginta in Oceanum influit. Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, Mediomatricorum, Tribocorum, Treverorum citatus fertur; et, ubi Oceano appropinquat, in plures diffluit partes, multis ingentibusque insulis effectis—quarum pars magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt qui piscibus atque ovis avium vivere existimantur—multisque capitibus in Oceanum influit.

Geography of the Meuse and the Rhine.

XI.—Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passuum duodecim millibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur: qui, in itinere congressi, magnopere, ne longius progrederetur, orabant. Cum id non impetrassent, petebant, uti ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent, praemitteret, eosque pugna prohiberet; sibique uti potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi: quorum si principes ac senatus sibi iureiurando fidem fecissent, ea conditione, quae a Caesare ferretur, se usuros ostendebant: ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitrabatur, ut, tridui mora interposita, equites eorum, qui abessent, reverterentur: tamen sese non longius millibus passuum quatuor aquationis causa processurum eo die dixit: huc postero die quam frequentissimi convenirent, ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret. Interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant, mittit, qui nuntiarent, ne hostes proelio lacesserent, et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinerent, quoad ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset.

Caesar prepares for a battle against the Germans.

XII.—At hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspex-

erunt—quorum erat quinque millium numerus, cum ipsi non amplius octingentos equites haberent, quod ii, qui frumentandi causa ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod legati eorum paulo ante a Caesare discesserant, atque is dies induciis erat ab eis petitus—impetu facto, celeriter nostros peturbaverunt. Rursus resistentibus nostris, consuetudine sua ad pedes desiluerunt, suffossisque equis, compluribusque nostris deiectis, reliquos in fugam coniecerunt, atque ita perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fuga desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quatuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus, Piso Aquitanus, amplissimo genere natus, cuius avus in civitate sua regnum obtinuerat, amicus ab Senatu nostro appellatus. Hic cum fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit ; ipse, equo vulnerato deiectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit. Cum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frater, qui iam proelio excesserat, procul animum advertisset, incitato equo se hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Treacherous attack of the Germans; death of Piso and his brother.

XIII.—Hoc facto proelio, Caesar neque iam sibi legatos audiendos neque conditiones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab his, qui per dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultro bellum intulissent : exspectare vero, dum hostium copiae augerentur, equitatusque reverteretur, summae dementiae esse iudicabat ; et, cognita Gallorum infirmitate, quantum iam apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent consequuti, sentiebat : quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum existimabat. His constitutis rebus, et consilio cum legatis et quaestore communicato, ne quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportunissima res accidit, quod postridie eius diei mane, eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani, frequentes, omnibus principibus maioribusque natu adhibitis, ad eum in castra venerunt ; simul, ut dicebatur, sui purgandi causa, quod, contra atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent, proelium pridie com-

The deputies of the enemy apologize for the attack ; they are detained. Caesar orders a general advance,

misissent; simul ut, si quid possent, de induciis fallendo impetrarent. Quos sibi Caesar oblatos gavisus, illico retineri iussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi iussit.

XIV.—Acie triplici instituta, et celeriter octo millium itinere confecto, prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam quid ageretur Germani sentire possent. Qui, omnibus rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri, et discessu suorum, neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato, perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem educere, an castra defendere an fuga salutem petere praestaret. Quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri, pristini diei perfidia incitati, in castra irruperunt. Quorum qui celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restiterunt, atque inter carros impedimentaque proelium commiserunt: at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque — nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transierant — passim fugere coepit; ad quos consectandos Caesar equitatum misit.

and surprises the Germans, who after a brief resistance,

XV.—Germani, post tergum clamore audito, cum suos interfici viderent, armis abiectis signisque militaribus relictis, se ex castris eiecerunt: et cum ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenissent, reliqua fuga desperata, magno numero interfecto, reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt, atque ibi timore, lassitudine, vi fluminis oppressi perierunt. Nostri ad unum omnes incolumes, perpaucis vulneratis, ex tanti belli timore, cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentorum et triginta millium fuisset, se in castra receperunt. Caesar his, quos in castris retinuerat, discedendi potestatem fecit; illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertatem concessit.

are utterly routed by the Romans.

CAESAR CROSSES THE RHINE.

XVI.—Germanico bello confecto, multis de causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum: quarum

illa fuit iustissima, quod, cum videret Germanos tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit, cum intelligerent, et posse et audere Populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire. Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tenchtherorum, quam supra commemoravi praedandi frumentandique causa Mosam transisse neque proelio interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sigambrorum receperat seque cum iis coniunxerat. Ad quos cum Caesar nuntios misisset, qui postularent, eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dederent, responderunt: Populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire: si, se invito Germanos in Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur sui quicquam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet? Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Caesarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere orabant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suevis premerentur; vel, si id facere occupationibus reipublicae prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum: tantum esse nomen atque opinionem eius exercitus, Ariovisto pulso et hoc novissimo proelio facto, etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione et amicitia Populi Romani tuti esse possint. Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

Caesar determines to cross the Rhine, and gives his reasons for so doing.

XVII.—Caesar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat; sed navibus transire, neque satis tutum esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque Populi Romani dignitatis esse statuebat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis proponebatur, propter latitudinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id sibi contendendum, aut aliter non transducendum exercitum, existimabat. Rationem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sesquipedalia, paulum ab imo praeacuta, dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis, intervallo pedum duorum inter se iungebat. Haec cum machinationibus immissa in flumen

He constructs a bridge; description of it.

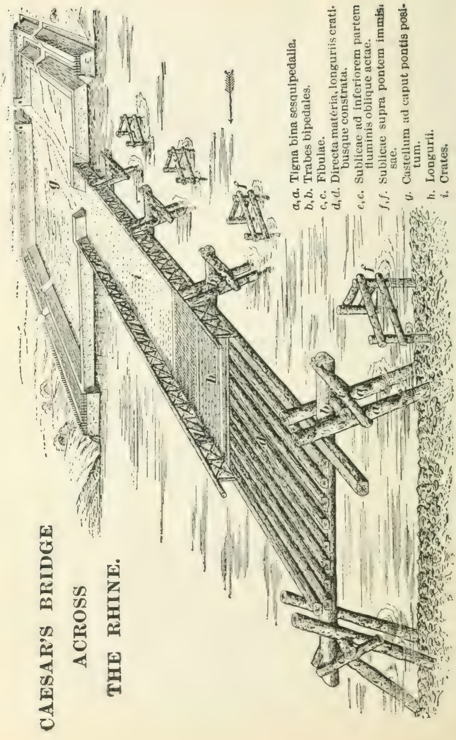
defixerat fistucisque adegerat, non sublicae modo directa ad perpendiculum, sed prona ac fastigata, ut secundum naturam fluminis procumberent; iis item contraria bina, ad eundem modum iuncta, intervallo pedum quadragenum, ab inferiore parte, contra vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuebat. Haec utraque insuper bipedalibus trabibus immissis, quantum eorum tignorum iunctura distabat, binis utrimque fibulis ab extrema parte distinebantur; quibus disclusis atque in contrariam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmitudo, atque ea rerum natura, ut, quo maior vis aquae se incitavisset, hoc artius illigata tenerentur. Haec directa materie iniecta contexebantur, et longuriis cratibusque consternebantur: ac nihilo secius sublicae et ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique agebantur, quae, pro pariete subiectae et cum omni opere coniunctae, vim fluminis exciperent: et aliae item supra pontem mediocri spatio, ut, si arborum trunci sive naves deiiciendi operis essent a barbaris missae, his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur, neu ponti nocerent.

XVIII.—Diebus decem, quibus materia coepta erat comportari, omni opere effecto, exercitus transducitur. Caesar, ad utramque partem pontis firmo praesidio relicto, in fines Sigambrorum contendit. Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, quibus pacem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter respondit, obsidesque ad se adduci iubet. At Sigambri, ex eo tempore, quo pons institui coeptus est, fuga comparata, hortantibus iis quos ex Tenchtheris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus suis excesserant, suaque omnia exportaverant, seque in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

In ten days the bridge is finished and Caesar crosses;

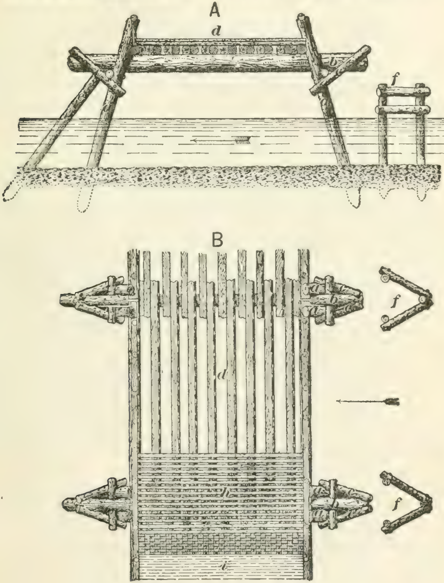
XIX.—Caesar, paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus, omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisis, se in fines Ubiorum recepit; atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suevis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: Suevos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comperissent, more suo concilio habito, nuntios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos,

after laying waste the lands of the Germans, he returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge.



CAESAR'S BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE.

CAESAR'S BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE.



A. Cross-section.
B. The Bridge seen from above.

uxores, suaque omnia in silvas deponerent, atque omnes qui arma ferre possent unum in locum convenirent: hunc esse delectum medium fere regionum earum quas Suevi obtinerent: hic Romanorum adventum exspectare atque ibi decertare constituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus his rebus confectis, quarum rerum causa transducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germanis metum iniceret, ut Sigambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus, se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.

FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN.

Caesar determines to invade Britain; his reasons for crossing.

XX.—Exigua parte aestatis reliqua, Caesar, etsi in his locis—quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit—maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod, omnibus fere Gallicis bellis, hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intelligebat: et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset: quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque, evocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent, aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad maiorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterat.

Sends Volusenus who returns and reports to him.

XXI.—Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus Caium Volusenum, cum navi longa praemittit. Huic mandat, uti, exploratis omnibus rebus, ad se quam primum revertatur: ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam transiectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et, quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum

bellum fecerat, classem iubet convenire. Interim, consilio eius cognito et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus eius insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare atque imperio Populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus, hortatusque ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit, et cum his una Commium (quem ipse, Atrebatibus superatis, regem ibi constituerat, cuius et virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem sibi fidelem arbitrabatur, cuiusque auctoritas in iis regionibus magni habebatur— mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit adeat civitates, horteturque ut Populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusenus, perspectis regionibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur; quaeque ibi perspexisset renuntiat.

XXII.—Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari, et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti, bellum Populo Romano fecissent, seque ea quae imperasset facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi satis opportune Caesar accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat, neque belli gerendi, propter anni tempus, facultatem habebat, neque has tantularum rerum occupationes sibi Britanniae anteponendas iudicabat, magnum his obsidum numerum imperat. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recepit. Navibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quicquid praeterea navium longarum habebat, quaestori, legatis, praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant octodecim onerariae naves quae ex eo loco ab millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur quominus in eundem portum pervenire possent. Has equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabino et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottae, legatis, in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati

Caesar levies hostages from the Morini.

non venerant, deducendum dedit. Publium Sulpitium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere iussit.

XXIII.—His constitutis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem, tertia fere vigilia solvit, equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi, et naves conscendere, et se sequi iussit : a quibus cum id paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cuius loci haec erat natura : adeo montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adiici posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum arbitratus locum, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris exspectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quae ex Voluseno cognosset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit, monuitque—ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent—ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublatis ancoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

and reaches Britain.

XXIV.—At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, praemisso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsequuti, nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves, propter magnitudinem, nisi in alto, constitui non poterant ; militibus autem, ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum, et in fluctibus consistendum, et cum hostibus erat pugnandum ; cum illi aut ex arido, aut paululum in aquam progressi, omnibus membris expediti, notissimis locis, audacter tela conicerent, et equos insuefactos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque huius omnino generis

The natives attack the Romans.

pugnae imperiti, non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consueverant, utebantur.

XXV.—Quod ubi Caesar animum advertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitatior, et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus, et remis incitari, et ad latus apertum hostium constitui, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis, hostes propelli ac summoveri iussit: quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam, et navium figura, et remorum motu, et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti, barbari constiterunt, ac paulum modo pedem retulerunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret! "Desilite," inquit, "commilitones, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero." Hoc cum magna voce dixisset, ex navi se proiecit, atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri, cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt: hos item ex proximis navibus cum conspexissent, subsequuti hostibus appropinquarunt.

Caesar's device; bravery of the standard bearer of the 10th legion; Roman advance.

XXVI.—Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter; nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare, neque firmiter insistere, neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magno opere perturbabantur. Hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur: plures paucos circumsistebant: alii ab latere aperto in universos tela coniciebant. Quod cum animum advertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri iussit, et, quos laborantes conspexerat, iis subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consequutis, in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque eos in fugam dederunt, neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

Rout of the enemy.

Several states submit to Caesar.

XXVII.—Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt: obsides daturos, quaeque imperasset sese facturos, polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos oratoris modo imperatoris mandata perferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniecerant: tum, proelio facto, remiserunt et in petenda pace eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur, petiverunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit, obsidesque imperavit: quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem, ex longinquioribus locis arcessitam, paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros iusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.

Fate of the eighteen cavalry troop ships.

XXVIII.—His rebus pace confirmata, post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves octodecim, de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum appropinquarent Britanniae, et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant perfectae, referrentur; aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum periculo deicerentur: quae tamen, ancoris iactis, cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum provectae, continentem petierunt.

A storm and high tides wreck Caesar's transports.

XXIX.—Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit: nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat, quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus complebat; et onerarias quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas afflictabat; neque ulla nostris facultas aut

administrandi, aut auxiliandi, dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis, reliquae cum essent—funibus, ancoris, reliquisque armamentis amissis—ad navigandum inutiles, magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) totius exercitus perturbatio facta est: neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent; et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas eas usui sunt, et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

XXX.—Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium factum ad ea, quae iusserat Caesar, facienda convenerant, inter se colloquuti, cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intelligerent, et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellione facta, frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere, et rem in hiemem producere, quod, iis superatis aut reditu interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque, rursus coniuratione facta, paulatim ex castris discedere, ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

Conspiracy of British chiefs.

XXXI.—At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum, et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat: nam et frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferebat, et, quae gravissime afflictae erant naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur, et, quae ad eas res erant usui, ex continenti comportari iubebat. Itaque, cum id summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

Caesar suspects their intentions; forms plans accordingly.

XXXII.—Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in

Sudden attack of the British.

castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari renuntiarunt, pulverem maiorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, duas ex reliquis in stationem succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi iussit. Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi, atque aegre sustinere, et, conferta legione, ex omnibus partibus tela conici, animum advertit. Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos, noctu in silvis delituerant : tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo occupatos, subito adorti, paucis interfectis, reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant : simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

The British mode of fighting.

XXXIII.—Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae ; primo per omnes partes perequitant, et tela coniciunt, atque ipso terrore equorum, et strepitu rotarum, ordines plerumque perturbant ; et, cum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverint, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt, atque ita curru se collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum, in proeliis praestant ; ac tantum usu quotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, uti, in declivi ac praecipiti loco, incitatos equos sustinere, et brevi moderari ac flectere, et per temonem percurrere, et in iugo insistere, et inde se in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

Caesar acts on the defensive ; severe storms keep the Romans within their camp.

XXXIV.—Quibus rebus, perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae, tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit : namque eius adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto, ad lacessendum et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus, suo se loco continuit, et, brevi tempore intermisso, in castra

legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis, qui erant in agris, reliqui discesserunt. Sequutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent, et hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes demiserunt, paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt, et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitudine peditatus equitatusque coacta, ad castra venerunt.

XXXV.—Caesar, etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent; tamen nactus equites circiter triginta, quos Commius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso proelio, diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt, ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio sequuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt; deinde, omnibus longe lateque afflictis incensisque, se in castra receperunt.

Defeat and pursuit of the enemy.

XXXVI.—Eodem die legati, ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace, venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem antea imperaverat, duplicavit, eosque in continentem adduci iussit, quod, propinqua die aequinoctii, infirmis navibus, hiemi navigationem subiciendam non existimabat. Ipse, idoneam tempestatem nactus, paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit, quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex his onerariae duae eosdem, quos reliquae, portus capere non potuerunt, et paulo infra delatae sunt.

Caesar makes peace; sets sail for Gaul.

XXXVII.—Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter, trecenti, atque in castra contenderent Morini, quos Caesar, in Britanniam proficiscens, pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti, primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt, ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere iusserunt. Cum illi, orbe facto, sese defen-

Sudden attack of the Morini.

derent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter millia sex convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata, Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt, atque amplius horis quatuor fortissime pugnaverunt, et, paucis vulneribus acceptis, complures ex iis occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abiectis armis terga verterunt, magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

XXXVIII.—Caesar postero die Titum Labienum legatum, cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitates paludum, quo se reciperent, non haberent—quo perfugio superiore anno fuerant usi—omnes in potestatem Labieni venerunt. At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt ; reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis, ex literis Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a Senatu decreta est.

Conquest of the Morini and Menapii.

NOTES.

BOOK IV.

NOTES.

BOOK IV.

NOTE. – F.L. = First Latin Book; P.L. = Primary Latin Book. In the case of the former the numbers refer to the *pages* and *sections*; of the latter, the Roman numerals refer to the *part* of the book, and the Arabic to the *sub-section.*

CHAPTER I.

ea—consulibus: "in the following winter belonging to the year in which Cneius Pompey and Marcus Crassus were consuls." The Latin is loosely expressed. We should expect *hieme eius anni qui fuit annus.* The Romans marked their years by the names of the *consuls* as the Athenians did by the name of the *chief archon.* Each book of Caesar is supposed to record the events of one year: B. I., the events of the Helvetian war of 58 B.C.; B. II., of the Belgic war of 57 B.C.; B. III., of the Venetic of 56 B.C.; B. IV., of the war against the Germans and of the first expedition to Britain, 55 B.C.—*Cn. Pompeio M. Crasso consulibus*: abl. absol.—Note the absence of the connective.

Usipetes Germani et Tencteri: we often find the generic with the specific name: cp. *Aedui Ambarri*: B. I., c. XI. According to Tacitus there were three great divisions of the Germans: the *Ingaevones*, on the coast of the German ocean: the *Hermiones*, in the central and eastern parts of Germany: the *Istaevones*, on the southern parts of the Rhine. The two tribes mentioned here occupied the north bank of the *Lippe*, about fifty miles below Cologne.

a mari: "from (that part of) the ocean."—*quo = in quod.*

quod: "the fact that," explains *causa*: in this sense *quod* takes the indicative.

Suevis: others have *Suebis*, a name still preserved in "Suabians." In its narrowest sense the word denotes the *Semnones* who dwelt between the Elbe and the Oder: but in its widest sense it was equivalent to *Hermiones*, and included all the tribes in eastern and central Germany, from the upper Rhine to the Vistula and Baltic.

premebantur: "had been hard pressed": note the force of the imperfect.

Suevorum gens: according to Mommsen, the correct orthography is *Suebi*, and the word is etymologically connected with *sweifen*, "the rangers," or "nomads": a likely derivation considering the description given here and also in Tacitus (Germ. 38).

pagos: properly country districts of enclosed or cultivated land round a fortified place. Such is the meaning of *pagus* applied to Italy. Outside of Italy the word had a wider meaning. With the root PAG: cp. *πήγνυμι* "to fix," cp. *pango*: so, *δῆμος*, "a township" (from *δέω*, "to bind"): English *town*: A.S. *tun* from *tynan*, "to enclose." The word still exists in the French *pays*: cp. *Pays de Vaud.*

ex quibus—educunt: "from *each* of which yearly they lead out from their territories a thousand armed men." Note the force of the distributive: F.L. 69, 8, (a); P.L. III., 216, c. This would make the force of the Suevi 100,000 men.—*quotannis*; written thus or *quot annis*: abl. of point of time. In full it would be *tot annis quot sunt*: cp. *quot mensibus*, "monthly."

qui domi manserunt: "who (each year) have remained at home": explain the case of *domi*: F.L. 86, (first line); P.L. III., 161, (1). Others read *manserint*: in that case *qui=quippe qui*, giving a reason and hence the subjunctive: "inasmuch as they have remained at home": F.L. 198, 4; P.L. III., 99, (g), iii.

rursus: often used to express contrast or correspondence between two classes (*re, versus*) as in V. 44; VII. 47; 51.

in vicem: "in turn": literally, "for a turn": *in* often signifies distribution: cp. *in capita*, "a head"; *in modium*, "a peck."

anno post: abl. of measure, "by a year later"= *anno postero.*

ratio atque usus: literally, "the system and further the practice" or "systematic practice": *ratio*: "the principle," "the science" of a thing: *usus*, "the practice": these words are often combined.

privati ac separati: the *ager privatus* is "land belonging to the individual" opposed to the *ager publicus* or "land belonging to the state" as a whole: *ager separatus* is "land marked out by boundaries."

longius anno: probably (1) to prevent the ground getting exhausted by a longer occupation and (2) to prevent the people becoming too much attached to the soil.

frumento—vivunt: *vivo*, like *vescor*, takes the ablative.—*maximam*

partem: "mainly": acc. closer definition or specification: F.L. 98, 3; P.L. III., 83, (e).

multumque—venationibus: "and they are greatly addicted to hunting expeditions"; *multum* is an adverb: cp. B. VI., 21.

quae res: "and this fact."

genere—exercitatione—libertate: causal ablatives.

a pueris: "from boyhood": cp. Gk. ἐκ παίδων.

nullo—adsuefacti: "as they are trained by no service or schooling": abl. of instrument: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. III., 159, 124.

quod—faciant: "because, as they say, they do": what would *faciunt* mean? F.L. 198, 2; P.L. 177.

immani—magnitudine: abl. of description: F.L. 131, 9; P.L. III., 85, (c). *eam*=*talem*.

locis frigidissimis: *in* is omitted, "in the coldest climate": cp. *loca temperatiora*; B. V., 12. Caesar was thinking of the mild winters in Italy.

vestitus: partitive genitive after *quidquam*.

laventur=*se lavent*: reflexive use of the passive voice.

CHAPTER II.

mercatoribus—habeant: the construction is: *mercatoribus est aditus ad eos* (i.e., *Germanos*) *magis eo* (*consilio*) *ut habeant* (*eos*) *quibus vendant* (*ea*) *quae bella ceperint*: "merchants are allowed to go into their country more with the design that they (the Germans) may have persons to whom they may sell the booty which they take in war."—*eo*: abl. of instrument explained by the clause *ut—habeant*. *ceperint*: subjunctive because *quae* denotes an indefinite class=*talia ut*, "such things as," and expresses a consequence. Note the perfect tense as the action expressed in *ceperint* must precede that expressed in *vendant*; a purpose is expressed and hence the subjunctive.

desiderent: "require": F.L. 183, 5; P.L. III., 99, (a) 1.

quin etiam: "nay even": "moreover." Probably *quin*=*qui ne?* "how not?" introducing something startling.

iumentis: perhaps only horses are meant, though the word may be applied to any animal "yoked": for *iugmentum*, from *iugum*, "a yoke."

impenso pretio: "at an extravagant price": ablative of value: F.L. 150, 1; P.L. III., 160, (c).

prava atque deformia: "ill-shaped and unsightly."

summi—laboris: "that they are capable of enduring the greatest fatigue": F.L. 124, 1; P.L. III., 156, 118.

eodem vestigio: "in the same spot": the abl. with *in* omitted as in *equestribus proeliis*.

cum usus est: "when it is necessary." The indicative with *cum* is used when the contemporaneous time is expressed in principal and subordinate clauses.

eorum moribus: "according to their customs": causal ablative: F.L. 71, 3; P.L. III., 159, 124.

inertius: "more indolent": or "more unskilful" (*in*, *ars*).

ephippiis: cp. ἐφίππια: "trappings of a horse."

quamvis pauci (*sint*): "however few they may be": distinguish in use *quamvis* and *quamquam*.

omnino: "at all": cp. II., 15, where a similar remark is made of the Nervii.

CHAPTER III.

publice—agros: "they consider it their special glory as a nation that the lands on their borders should lie unoccupied to the widest extent." —*publice*, "as a nation" opposed to *privatim*, "as an individual."—*quam*: note the emphasis that *quam* gives to superlatives.—*a suis finibus*: "starting from the territories," *i.e.*, "on the side of their territories."

hac—posse: "by this (they suppose) is shown the fact that a great number of states cannot withstand their power": the subject of *significari* is the clause *magnum—posse*.

una ex parte a Suevis: literally, "on one side in the direction of the Suevi," *i.e.*, "on one side of the Suevian land."—*agri*: partitive genitive: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. III., 155, 113.

succedunt: "come close up."

Ubii: in Caesar's time the Ubii were east of the Rhine. In the reign of Augustus the Ubii removed to the west of the Rhine, and had as their chief town *Colonia Agrippinensis* (now Cologne).

ut—Germanorum: "according to German ideas": literally, "as is the comprehension of the Germans." *Captus* means "capacity," "nature," and the passage here means "a state wealthy and flourishing, for a German state."

humaniores: "more civilized": so speaking of the inhabitants of Kent, Caesar says, (v., 14) *longe sunt humanissimi.*

ventitant: how are frequentative verbs formed?

moribus: instrumental abl.: see note Chapter I. Caesar, B. VI., cc. 11-24, compares the customs of the Gauls and the Germans.

experti: concessive: "though they had tried often by frequent wars."

gravitatem: "importance."

multo: abl. of measure, used adverbially. The difference between *multum* and *multo* as adverbs is this, that the former is used with verbs and the latter with comparative adjs. and adverbs. Translate: "reduced them to a state of far less importance and strength."

CHAPTER IV.

in eadem causa: "in the same condition."

supra: in Chapter I., B. IV.

complures annos: acc. of continuance of time: F.L. 69, 9; P.L. III., 149, 92.

ad extremum: "at last," "finally."

quas regiones: referring to the general idea contained in *ad Rhenum.* The country where they had settled was that opposite to Cleves and Nymegen.

dispositis praesidiis: "garrisons having been placed at different parts." Note the force of *dis-* in *aispositis.*

transire prohibebant: Caesar uses with *prohibeo*: (1) an infinitive as here, and not *ne, quin, quominus* with subjunctive: (2) sometimes an ablative alone, (3) or an ablative with *a* or *ab.*

omni experti: "after trying every expedient."

custodias: "sentries."

reverti se: note that the forms of *revertor* from the present are passive

in form and from the perf., are active. The position of *se* after *reverti* instead of before it connects it closely with *in suas*. Distinguish in meaning *redeo* and *revertor*.—*tridui viam progressi*: "advancing a three days' march."—*tridui*=*trium dierum*: F.L. 130, 7, 8; P.L. III., 8, (e): *viam* F.L. 95, 1; P.L. III., 83, (d).

omni—confecto: "all the distance being covered in one night by the cavalry."—*equitatu*: either the abl. of instrument or abl. of accompaniment with *cum* omitted.

priusquam—certior fieret: note that *priusquam* and *antequam* take the subjunctive when the idea of purpose is involved as here: F.L. 201, 5; P.L. III., 99, (f), IV.

eorum: *i.e.*, of the Menapii on the west side of the Rhine.—*partem*: acc. of time.

eorum copiis: "with their resources": ablative of instrument or means by which they live.

CHAPTER V.

infirmitatem "the unstable character:" see notes on Chapters VIII. and X., B. III.

nihil his committendum: scil. *esse*: "that no confidence ought to be placed in them."—*nihil* = emphatic *non*: see note B. III., Chapter XIII.

est—consuetudinis: "now this is a characteristic of the custom of the Gauls": F.L. 124, 1; P.L. III., 81, (a), I.

invitos: "against their will."

cogant—quaerant—circumstat—cogant: explanatory of *hoc*: F.L. 187, 1; P.L. III., 99, (b).

audierit—cognoverit: subjunctive of dependent question: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. 99, (d).

mercatores: explain this accusative: F.L. 96, 2; P.L. II., 95. Decline *vulgus*. What nouns of the second declension are irregular in gender?

rebus: "facts" opposed to *auditionibus*: "hearsays."

de summis rebus: "on most important matters."

quorum—est: "of which they are often of necessity compelled to repent immediately after":—*quorum*: F.L. 165, 1; P.L. III., II., 68. Literally:

"of which it is necessary that they repent," or "they must needs repent". — *in vestigio*: see note Chapter II., B. III.

et—respondeant: "and in most cases the answers are invented to suit their wish."—*plerique*, scil. *viatores*: "most of the travellers." Distinguish in meaning between *plerique*: "most," the "majority," and *plurimi*, "very many" but not necessarily the majority.

CHAPTER VI.

qua—cognita: note the introduction of the chapter by a relative showing a connection with the preceding narrative: "now as he knew this custom."

ne—occurreret: "to avoid engaging in too serious a war." Caesar was afraid that he might have to fight the Galli and Germani together. The tense in *occurreret* shows that *proficiscitur* is a historical present: F.L. 216, 2, (a); P.L. III., 107, iii.

ad exercitum: Caesar probably joined his army in Normandy, near Lisieux: B. III., Chapter XXIX.

consuerat: see note on Chapter I., B. III.

facta: scil. *esse*, so below with *missas*, *invitatos*, *dissimulanda*.

uti—discederent: adverbial clause: F.L. 183, 3; P. L. III., 99 (a), 2. —*uti*=*ut*. That is, to go from the Rhine into the interior of Gaul to help the inhabitants to throw off the yoke of the Romans.

postulassent=*postulavissent*: dependent clause in *oblique* narrative and hence the subjunctive: F.L. 206, 4; P.L. III., 99, (e).

fore parata: the past part. pass. and *fore* has the force of a future perfect: "will have been got ready."

qua spe adducti: "and so led on by their hopes."—*qua* = *itaque ea*. Note that *spes* is always singular in Caesar.

Eburonum—Condrusorum: the Germans had crossed the Lower Rhine and were now in the valley of the Meuse by way of Maestricht. [See Map.]

clientes: "dependents": from root CLU, "to hear," hence "to obey."

quae cognoverat: the subjunctive might have been used if *quae* were an interrogative. It is, however, a relative and the expression is only adjec-

tival to *ea*, and so without any influence on the construction. The meeting of the chieftains probably took place at Amiens.

imperato : "levied."

CHAPTER VII.

comparata : "having been procured": so also *parata* in the same sense.

quibus in locis : Caesar often repeats the antecedent noun in the relative clause: cp. B. I., c. VI.; *erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent.*

paucorum dierum iter : for *dierum* : F.L. 130, 7, 8; P.L. III., 81, (e). —*iter* : F.L. 69, 9; P.L. 149, 92.

haec : "as follows"; referring to what comes after: see note B. III., Chapter VII.

neque priores inferre : "were neither the first to make war on." Note the difference between *priores* and *primos*, the first implying two people, the latter more than two.

inferre, *recusare*, *lacessantur* : note the present tense for the sake of vividness in *oratio obliqua.*

quin—contendant : explain fully the use of *quin* : F.L. 185, 2, note; P.L. II., 154.

quicumque : the antecedent is *eis*, understood after *resistere.*

deprecari : properly "to beg off" war.

haec tamen dicere, scil. *legati confirmaverunt Germanos*, "the ambassadors declared the Germans said these things."

domo : explain fully this case: F.L. 85, 2; P.L. III., 99, (h), i.—Decline *domus.*

attribuant—partiantur : what mood would this be in direct narration? F.L. 209, (5); P.L. III., 214, (a), I.

non : the position shows it limits *superare* : "whom they fail to conquer."

CHAPTER VIII.

ad : "in reply to."—*visum est* impersonally: scil. *respondere* : "it seems good to reply." Note that *videtur* and *videbatur* are never so used by Caesar.

sibi — posse: "it was not possible for any friendship to exist between him and them."—*sibi*: F.L. 120, 3; P.L. III., 82, (g).

verum: "a fair thing": here = *par*: cp. Hor. Epist. I, 7, 98: *metiri se quemque suo modulo ac pede verum est.*

qui—potuerint: why subjunctive? F.L. 198, 4; P.L. III., 99, (g) iii.—*alienos occupare* is the subject of *esse* and *non verum* the predicate. The order in Latin and in English is often inverted. Distinguish in meaning: *alius, alter, alienus.*

praesertim: often introduces a fresh reason: cp. καὶ ταῦτα in Greek. Translate "which can be given rightly and that too, to so large a horde."

licere: scil. *eis*.

in Ubiorum finibus: on the Rhine opposite to Cologne.

apud se: distinguish the meaning of this from that of *secum*.

hoc—imperaturum: scil. *dixit*: "he said that he would command the Ubii to do this." Caesar could do so as he had held in his power hostages of the Ubii. Note that *impero* takes a dat. of the person in the sense of "command," but a dat. of person and acc. of thing in the sense of "demand" or "levy."

CHAPTER IX.

re deliberata = *cum res deliberata esset*: "after the matter had been duly considered." What is the derivation of *delibero*?

post diem tertium: the next day but one, as the Romans in cases such as this reckoned in the day with which a given period began as well as the one with which it ended instead of taking the first only as we do.

propius se: "nearer them." What constructions may *proprius* have?

ne—quidem: here "not either," *i.e.*: no more than their demands mentioned in Chapter VII.: cp. οὐδέ.

aliquot diebus ante: the ablative is regarded as the ablative of difference with *ante* and *post.*

Ambivaritos: these were Belgians on the west of the Meuse, and since the defeat of the Belgae, under the Roman sway.

interponi: "was introduced": *interponere* often means to throw an obstacle in the way: cp. *hoc decreto interposito*: "this decree having put

an end to the discussion": B. VII., 33. With *fidem* it is twice used "to pledge one's word": B. V., Chapters VI., XXXVI.

CHAPTER X.

Vosego: the modern Vosges near the northeast frontier of France. The Meuse really rises in the plateau of Langres, the cradle of the French rivers. Vosegus is the Latinized form of the Gallic word *fasach*, "a mountain waste," like the German *Wald*.

parte: "tributary." Caesar means here that the *Meuse* (Mosa) after receiving the *Waal* (Vahalis) flows into the Rhine below, eighty miles from the ocean, and forms the island of the Batavians. This implies that the Meuse does not directly flow into the German Ocean. At present, however, it does. If Caesar's account be correct the plain inference is that the geography of the country must have changed. We know that Caesar, however, was often mistaken on points of geography because these were often received on second hand and untrustworthy information.

Batavorum: the word *Batavi* still exists in the form *Betuwe*, a name applied to one of the islands in the Rhine, and meaning "good meadow." Their capital was *Lugdunum* (now Leyden), and not to be confounded with *Lugdunum* in Gaul (now Lyons).

Rhenus: this word is derived from root SRU: "to rush" or "flow": so *Rhodanus*: *Roma* (=*srouma*, "the stream town,"): *ῥέω*, *ῥεῦμα*.—*ex Leopontiis*: "from out of the country of the Leopontii," *i.e.*, "in the country of the Leopontii." This name is still preserved in the modern Val Leventina on the upper course of the *Ticino* (Ticinus).

longo spatio: "after a long distance": abl. abs.

citatus fertur: "flows swiftly."

sunt qui: literally, "there are those who": "some." Here=*aliqui*.

piscibus—ovis—vivere: see note Chapter I., B. IV.

capitibus: here *caput* means the "mouth" of a river. Other writers use it in the sense of the "source": cp. Hor. Od. B. I., i. 23: *ad aquae lene caput sacrae*.

CHAPTER XI.

passuum duodecim millibus: abl. after the comparative with *quam* omitted. The ablative is not, however, governed by the comparative,

but is the ablative of extent or difference since *amplius* has no influence on the construction : cp. *amplius octingentos* next chapter ; so we find it with the nom. B. VII., Chap. XV. : *amplius viginti urbes incenduntur* : or with genitive, B. I., Chap. XXXVIII. : *quod est non amplius pedum sexcentorum.*

ut erat constitutum : "that the envoys should return the next day but one.

congressi, scil. *cum eo* : "meeting with him."

antecessissent : "to head the line of march" : F.L. 188, 5 (a) ; P.L. III., 99, (c). Explain fully the order of the line of march of a Roman army.

praemitteret, scil. *quosdam* : the object is omitted as in English.

sibique – mittendi : "and that he would give them an opportunity of sending ambassadors among the Ubii" : observe the construction of *potestatem facere* with dat. of person and gen. of *gerund.—sibi*, i.e. *Germanis*, not simply *legatis.*

senatus : "council." Caesar here speaks of the deliberative assembly of his enemies as if they were Romans.

sibique—fecisset : "pledged their word of honour to them on oath." Note the pluperfect tense as representing the prior of two actions.—*iureiurando* : literally, "with," or "by an oath."

ea conditione—se usuros, scil. *esse* : "that they would accept the terms of agreement." What verbs govern the ablative? F.L. 116 ; P.L. III., II., 65.

daret : subjunctive of oblique command : *da*, in direct narrative.

eodem illo pertinere : "tended to that same end," "pointed in the same direction."

ut—reverterentur : explains *eodem illo.*

abessent : subjunctive by attraction to the mood of *reverterentur.*

convenirent : subjunctive of command in *oratio obliqua* : *convenite*, of *oratio recta.*

qui nuntiarent – (*eos*) *ut ei* : "men to bear the order" : F.L. 188, 5, (a) ; P.L. III., 99, (c). Here *nuntiarent* = *mandatum perferrent*. Note that *mittit* is a historic present as shown by the tense in *nuntiarent*.

sustinerent : "hold their ground" : not often is *sustinere* used without an object.

quoad—accessisset: the mood is doubly necessary: (1) from the clause being a dependent one in *oratio obliqua*; (2) because the final notion of expectation is involved: F.L. 206, 4; P.L. III., 99, (a).

CHAPTER XII.

at: often introduces a change of subject.

ubi—conspexerunt: "as soon as they caught sight of our cavalry": with *ubi primum*: cp. *cum primum.*—*ubi* meaning "when" takes the perfect indicative except in B. II., c. 9, *ubi faciunt*; B. IV., 26, *ubi conspexerant.*

cum—haberent: "though they themselves had not more than eight hundred": for subjunctive: F.L. 198, 4; P.L. III, 99, (b), v.—*octingentos*; see note on *passuum duodecim milibus*: B. IV., Chapter XI.

nihil—nostris: "while our men had no apprehension."—*nihil* may be taken as the object of *timentibus* or as an emphatic *non*: as in B. III., 13.

induciis: dative of purpose: F.L. 134, 1; P.L. II., 101.

rursus resistentibus: scil. *nostris.*

consuetudine sua: "according to their custom": abl. of manner, often *ex* is expressed: B. IV., Chapter XXXII.

subfossis—deiectis: these ablative absolutes are not co-ordinate in time: "the horses being stabbed from beneath and, in consequence, many of our men being thrown from their horses":—*deiectis*, scil. *de equis.*

ut non—venissent: "that they did not cease from flight until they came into sight of our army."—*fuga*: F.L. 158, 2; P.L. III., 85, (h).—*venissent*: for the subjunctive: F.L. 201, 5; P.L. III., 106.

interficiuntur: historical present F.L. 216, 2 (a); cp. B. V. Chapter XV.

Piso Aquitanus: the Aquitanian obtained probably his Roman name when the rights of a Roman citizen were conferred upon him: cp. B. I., 47.

genere: abl. of origin: F.L. 156, 4; P.L. III., 85, (1): so also after *editus*, *genitus*, *ortus*, *oriundus*, *satus.*

amicus: a distinction given for extraordinary services as in the case of Sequanian Catamantaloedes (B. I., 3); of Ariovistus (B. I., 35).

equo vulnerato: abl. absolute expressing both time and cause.

cecĭdisset: distinguish this in meaning from *cecīdisset.*

id: "this mishap."

CHAPTER XIII.

hoc—proelio: express this in other ways.

iam: joined to a negative as here: "no longer."—*sibi*: F.L. 173, 4; P.L. III. 82, (d).

ab iis qui: "from such men as": hence the subjunctive of result in *intulissent*: F.L. 188, 5, (a); P.L. III., 99, (b). For what other reason may this be subjunctive? F.L. 206, 4; P.L. III., 106.

per dolum atque insidias: "by the employment of craft and treachery": join these words with *intulissent*. These expressions are nearly equivalent to adverbs: cp. *per summum dedecus*: "most disgracefully": *de improviso*, "suddenly": *de integro*, "afresh."

petita pace: see note on *equo vulnerato*: B. IV., chap. XII.

exspectare: object of *iudicabat* and the subject of *esse*.

dum—reverteretur: "until the forces of the enemy should be increased and their cavalry return": for the subjunctive: F.L. 201, 4; P.L. 69, (f), iii. Distinguish in meaning *redeo* and *revertor*; *cresco* and *augeo*.

summae dementiae esse: "was the height of madness": F.L. 124; P.L. III., 81, e, ii; predicate genitive after *esse*.

cognita infirmitate: ablative absolute expressing a cause; "owing to," or "from his knowledge of the fickleness."

quantum—auctoritatis: "what prestige": for partitive genitive: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. III., 81, (b).

nihil spatii=nihil temporis: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. III., 81, (b).

ne—praetermitteret: explanatory of *consilio*: "not to let pass any battle day," *i.e.*, a favourable chance for bringing on a battle—*pugnae* may be either (1) a genitive, like *tempus committendi proelii*, or (2) a dative of purpose.

postridie eius diei: literally, "on the morrow of that day."

perfidia: what is the force of *per* in *perfidus, periuro?* It was likely that Caesar charges the Germans with a breach of faith to justify his own indefensible conduct.

maioribus natu: give the positive and superlative of this expression.

simul—simul=et—et: "both . . . and."

sui: F.L. 171, 6; P.L. II., 134.

contra—dictum: "contrary to what had been arranged." The subjunctive is owing to the virtual *oratio obliqua*. We might have expected *contra id quod esset dictum*. It is rare that *contra* is used with *atque* though we often find *aliter ac*: B. II., c. XIX.

si quid possent: "whatever they could": F.L. 95, 1; P.L. III., 83, (d), i.

ut—impetrarent: "that they might gain their object as to the truce by playing false." What words are used only in the plural?

quos: F.L. 232, note; P.L. III., 239.—*oblatos*, scil. *esse*.—*gavisus*: what verbs are semi-deponent?—*illos*: pleonastic as expressed in *quos*.

CHAPTER XIV.

acie—instituta: express in other ways.

millium, scil. *passuum*, an omission probably for the sake of euphony, and only in case of gen. pl.: B. I., 41; II., 17; V., 13.

prius—quam—possent: F.L. 201, 5; P.L. III., 99, (f), IV.

quid—ageretur: dependent question: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. III., 99, (d).

omnibus—rebus: "by the whole state of affairs."

discessu suorum, scil. *principum*: "by the withdrawal of their chiefs."

perturbantur = dubitant, or in *perturbantur* we have a pregnant construction for *perturbantur dubitatione*, "are distracted with doubt." Note the historical present as shown by *praestaret*.

—ne—an—an: in triple disjunctive questions Caesar also uses *utrum*,—*ne*, *an*: *utrum*, *an*, *an*: and—*ne*, *an*, with the first conjunctive omitted.

pristini diei: a descriptive genitive: P.L. 130, 7, 8; P.L. III., 81, (e).

quo loco—quo in loco, i.e., *in castris*: the preposition *in* is often omitted with *locus*: cp. *alieno loco* (B. I., c. 15), *iniquo loco* (B. II., 33), *idoneo loco* (B. III., 17).

puerorum mulierumque: "consisting of children and women." Caesar's action in thus cancelling the truce and butchering defenceless women and children was so severely censured at Rome that Cato declared that Caesar ought to be delivered up to the Tenctheri: (Plut. Caesar 22).

CHAPTER XV.

post tergum: "behind them": cp. *a tergo*: "from behind," "in the rear."

Mosae et Rheni: Schneider supposes the place here to be below the *Batavorum insula*, and eighty miles from the sea (Chapter X.). Kraner says that the spot was at the junction of the Maas and Waal: Herzog, Thiel, where the Waal turns to the Maas. Another reading for *Mosae* is *Mosulae*. At the confluence of the Rhine and Mosel was the Roman colony of *Confluentes* (now Coblenz).

reliqua fuga desperata: "despairing of further flight": for construction of *despero*; see note on *desperata salute*: B. III., Chapter III.

ad unum: "to a man."

ex tanti belli timore: "after the dread of so great a war": or "freed from the dread of so great a war": join these words closely to *se receperunt*. Others take the preposition *ex* as here a substitute for the concessive abl. absolute: (see note on *ex loco superiore*, B. III., Chapter IV.), and translate: "great though the apprehension of so important a war had been."

millium: genitive of description: F.L. 130, 7, 8; P.L. III., 81, (e).

iis—fecit: it is a very strong proof that Caesar did not believe the senate guilty of the charges against them when he spared them. He put to death the senators of the Veneti (B. III., Chapter XVI.), whom he did think guilty, though he admitted that they acted on compulsion.

apud eum: "in his camp": literally "near him."

libertatem, scil. *remanendi apud eum*: "leave to remain in his camp."

CHAPTER XVI.

Germanico: adj. equivalent to an objective genitive: "against the Germans."

iustissima: "the best grounded."—*quod*: explains *illa*: "namely that."

suis—voluit: "he wished that they should have fears for the safety of their own possessions as well": for the dative *rebus*: F.L. 5, 4; P.L. III., 82.

accessit—quod: "there was also the fact that": see note on Chapter II., B. III.

supra: see B. IV., Chapter IX.

qui—postularent=ut ei postularent: F.L. 184, 1; P.L. III., 99, (a), I.

intulissent: subjunctive after the virtual *oblique narrative* implied in *postularent*.

dederent: *ut* is sometimes omitted after verbs of demand or command: F.L. 181, 3; P.L. II., 27.

non aequum iniquum: "an unfair thing": *aequum* agrees with the clause *Germanos transire*.

sui imperii—potestatis: F.L. 69, 10; P.L. III., 81, (e), ii.

postularet: what would this be in direct discourse? F.L. 209, (5); P.L. III., 106, (a).

quod—premerentur: the subjunctive of *oblique* narrative introduced by *orabant*.

si—prohiberetur: "if he were hindered from doing this by being engrossed by state business."

occupatio: does not mean business itself, as in English "occupation," but "the engrossing power of business."—*transportaret*: see note *dederent* above.

id—futurum: "this would be sufficient for (present) aid and a ground of hope for the future."—*ad*: 'as regards,' 'for.'—*reliqui temporis*: descriptive genitive.

pulso—facto: "by the defeat of Ariovistus, and the occurrence of that very recent battle." Note the Latin idiom. The English noun is contained in the Latin participle. For the connection between Ariovistus and the Suevi, see B. I., 58: V., 29, 55; VI., 12.

opinione—tuti: "rendered safe by this prestige and friendship": abl. of instrument.

CHAPTER XVII.

navibus: instrumental ablative.

satis tutum: when in an enemy's country Caesar was always very careful to keep the district behind him well secured.

suae dignitatis esse: "to be conformable to his own dignity": F.L. 124; P.L. III., 81, e, ii.

etsi—proponebatur: "though the very great difficulty of making a bridge was presented to him," *i.e.*, was evident. For this force of *proponere*, see B. I., Chap. 17, 20: III., 18.

id sibi contemnendum, scil. *esse*: "that he ought to strive to effect it."—*sibi*: F.L. 173, 4; P.L. 104 (a), i.

rationem—instituit: "the plan of the bridge he adopted was as follows." It is generally supposed that Caesar crossed the Rhine near Bonn, where the river is from 14 to 16 feet in depth and 1500 to 1600 feet wide.

tigna—iungebat: "he joined together in pairs piles, at a distance of two feet from one another, each a foot and a half in thickness, sharpened a little at the bottom and proportioned in their length to the depth of the river."—*bina*: what are the uses of distributives?—*sesquipedalia*: give the derivation of this word.—*ab imo praeacuta*: literally, "sharpened from the lower end."—*iungebat*: "he joined in successive pairs": hence the imperfect.

haec—statuebat: "when he had sunk these in the river, and had fastened them by means of rafts, and had driven them home by rammers, not like a pile perfectly upright, but leaning forward and slanting, so that they should incline according to the direction of the current; in like manner opposite to these, at the distance of forty feet, at a point lower down, he placed other pairs, joined in the same manner and slanted against the force and current of the river."—*defixerat*: the pluperfect denotes repeated action—*sublicae modo*: because a pile is perpendicular, but these beams slanted a little.—*fastigate*: sloping like the gable ends (*fastigium*) of a house.—*quadragenum* = *quadragenorum*. Note the force of the distributive, forty feet in each case, with each pair of beams (*tigna*): F.L. 69, 8; P.L. III., 58, (c).

haec—distinebantur; "each pair of these piles besides was kept asunder, after beams had been let in between them two feet thick—the distance between the posts (of each pair of piles)—by two braces, one on each side at their extremity."—The *trabes* passed between the *tigna* and had one *fibula* above and one below. The *fibulae* kept firmly the *trabes* in their places; see plan.

quibus—tenerentur: "now that these (piles) were kept apart and had been braced in opposite directions, such was the solidity of the structure and such the nature of the materials that the greater the force of the current that drove against it, so much the more firmly were the piles kept bound together."—*quibus disclusis*: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. III., 85, (b).—*quo maior*

—*hoc arctius*: F.L. 128, 4; P.L. III., 85, (a), 63.—*incitavisset*; F.L. 187, 1; P.L. III., 99, (b).

haec—consternebantur: "these (cross-beams) were connected together by laying timber on straight, and were overlaid with poles and hurdles." —*haec*, i.e., the *trabes bipedales*. The timber (*materia*) or girders were laid at right angles to the current in the direction of the bridge.—*longuriis*: joists, laid on the girders (*materia*) in the direction of the current.—*cratibus*: section of wicker work, probably branches of trees, laid over the joists to take the place of planks: see plan.

ac—exciperent: "and no less carefully piles were also driven in obliquely at the lower point of the stream, so that they being placed by way of a buttress and joined with every part of the structure might stem the force of the river."—*nihil secius*: literally "different by nothing." These posts driven so as to slant up the stream braced the piers by breaking the force of the torrent.—*exciperent*: F.L. 187, 1; P.L. III., 99, (b).

spatio: abl. of degree of difference, as *supra pontem* has the force of a comparative.

deiciendi operis causa: "for the purpose of destroying the work": F.L. 171, 6; P.L. III., 104.

his defensoribus=*his defendentibus*: abl. abs. expressing cause: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. III., 85, (o).

rerum, i.e., *trunci*, *naves*.—*neu*=*neve*: "and not."

CHAPTER XVIII.

decem diebus: abl. of time *within* which the action occurs.

quibus: "from the time that," "after": see note on *quibus*, Chapter XXIII., B. III.

coepta erat comportari: note that the pass. form of *coepi* is used when a passive infinitive is added; the active form when an active infinitive follows: *he began to besiege the city*: *the city began* (in Latin *was begun*) *to be besieged.*

praesidio relicto: F.L. 100, 5; P.L. III., 85, (o).

quibus . . . petentibus: "to whose request for peace and friendship"= *qui cum peterent.*

fuga—iis: these abl. absolutes are not co-ordinate, the latter depending on the former: "had made preparations for flight owing to the strong

advice of these": as if he had said *fugam comparaverant cum ii hortarentur.* —*finibus excesserant*: *excedere* may take abl. alone or abl. with *ex* or the accusative.

CHAPTER XIX.

paucos dies: accusative of duration of time.

vicis; cp. ϝοικος: Eng. -wick, as in Ber-*wick*.

premerentur: subjunctive of virtual oblique narrative: F.L. 206, 4; P.L. III., 106, (a).

posteaquam--comperissent: subjunctive of oblique narrative: F.L. 206, 4; P.L. III., 106, (a).

nuntios demigrarent; scil. *hortantes*: "had sent messengers in all directions urging them to leave their towns": F.L. 181, 3; P.L. III., 99, (2). It is not likely that the Suevi had walled towns: cp. B. VI., Chap. 22.

hunc—obtinerent: "this was a chosen spot almost in the centre of these districts which the Suevi occupied." — *medium*: predicate agreeing with *locum* understood = *in medio.*

decertare: "to fight a pitched battle": cp. *depugnare*; καταπολεμόω.

quod: "and this fact."

rebus: explained by the appositional clauses introduced by *ut*: F.L. 181, 1; P.L. III., 124, 27. The objects here mentioned were not accomplished, and altogether the results of this expedition were fruitless.

obsidione: the fact is that the Suevi had reduced the Ubii to the position of slaves. He probably means by the word that they were hemmed in on all sides: cp. B. VII., 32.

profectum, scil. *esse*: "that enough had been gained."

CHAPTER XX.

exigua—reliqua: "though but a small part of the summer remained": F.L. 100, 5; P.L. III., 85, (0).

etsi—hiemes: "though in this district the winters set in early, because all Gaul slopes to the north." Note that *etsi* in Caesar occurs with the present, imperfect or pluperfect indicative in Caesar, but never with the subjunctive. The word *Britannia* is derived from the Keltic *brit* or *brith*, "painted,"

from the custom of the inhabitants staining their bodies: B. V., 14. In the old Welsh poems the island is called *Prydom* and the people *Brython*. The name *Albion* was also given to it; (cp. Aristotle de Mundo 3), which may be derived from *alp*, "white" or "high."

septentriones: the seven stars in the constellation of the Great Bear. The word is from *septem*, "seven,"—*trio*=*strio*, "a star": cp. Sanscrit *târâ*=*staras*, "stars," literally, "strewers of light": cp. English *star*; German *stern*.

quod—intelligebat: cp. B. III., Chapter IX., where he mentions the fact that the *Nannetes* and *Veneti* sent to Britain for aid in carrying on their wars against the Romans. Dion Cassius says that Caesar's motive was simply to be the first Roman who invaded the island. Suetonius attributes the expedition to avarice, mentioning the pearl fisheries as the inducement.

bellis Gallicis: "in the wars against the Gauls": probably an ablative of time or the ablative within a point of time, or *in* may be omitted.

inde=*ex Britannia*.

si—deficeret: "even though the time of the year would prevent him from carrying on a regular campaign": for the subjunctive of *oblique narrative* see F.L. 206, 4; P.L. III., 106.

magno usui: "of great advantage": F.L. 134, 1; P.L. III., 82, (c). The frequent allusion to the conquest of Britain in the subsequent literature of Rome shows how popular such an expedition was.

si—cognovisset: the clauses introduced by *si* are really the subject of *fore*. Note the *asyndeton* in *loca*, *portus*, *aditus*.

Gallis: there can be no doubt that Caesar is wrong here; cp. his statements in B. III., Chapter VIII.: *naves habent Veneti plurimas quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt*.

neque—quisquam: "for not a single person goes there without a purpose." Note the emphatic position of *quisquam*. Zumpt says, p. 280: "*temere* means, properly, *at random*, opposed to *consulto*, deliberately. Joined with *non*, *temere* acquires (but not in Cicero) a peculiar significance =*non facile*." This has the backing of the Greek paraphrast who translates this οὐ ῥᾳδίως. If this is so, translate, "for it is no easy matter for any one to go there."

Gallias: the divisions of Gaul are meant. In Caesar's time these were *Gallia Cisalpina* and *Gallia Transalpina*. Augustus (B.C. 27) divided Gaul into *Narbonensis*, *Aquitania Lugdunensis*, *Belgica*.

esset: dependent question: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. III., 99 (d).

incolerent: scil. *eam.*

nationes: gens (Greek φῦλον) was a nation sprung from a common origin: *natio* (Greek ἔθνος) was a subdivision of the *gens.*

maiorum navium: he refers to the transports (*naves onerariae*).

CHAPTER XXI.

priusquam—faceret: "before he made the attempt": when does *priusquam* take the indicative and when the subjunctive? F.L. 201, 5; P.L. III., 99, (f), IV. Note the original meaning of *periculum*: cp. Greek πεῖρα, πειράομαι.

Caius Volusenus: see note B. III., Chapter V.

navi longa: see note B. III., Chapter IX.

mandat: distinguish in meaning, *mandare*, "to charge," in consequence of a thorough confidence of the person entrusted with a commission (cp. Greek ἐφίεσθαι): *iubere*, "to bid," merely in consequence of one's own wish or will, in opposition to *vetare* (cp. Greek κελεύειν): *imperare*, "to command," by virtue of military supreme authority (cp. Greek ἄρχειν).

Morinos: "into the country of the Morini." The *Morini* were "the dwellers on the sea": see note B. III., Chapter IX. They occupied the district from the *Scaldis* (now Scheldt) on the east to the *Samara* (now Somme) on the west. Their chief town was *Gesoriacum*, afterwards *Bonnonia* (now Boulogne). The *brevissimus traiectus* is, of course, the Straits of Dover which is 21 miles in width between Dover and Calais.

Veneticum bellum: see B. III. This war was carried on B.C. 56.

eius = Caesaris.—perlato: "having been reported."

qui polliceantur=ut ei polliceantur: F.L. 184, 1; P.L. III., 99, (a), 1.

dare: rarely do we find a present infinitive and an omission of pronouns with verbs of *promising*: F.L. 110, 1; P.L. III., 101, ii.

liberaliter pollicetur: "making kind promises to them."—*domum*: F.L. 85, 1; P.L. III., 88, (g).

Atrebatibus superatis: the *Atrebates* a people of *Gallia Belgica* occupied what was once called *Artois* (probably a corruption of the name), but now named *Pas-de-Calais.* Others say that Arras (Flemish Atrecht) is a

corrupt form of the name. They were defeated by Caesar at the river *Sabis* (now Sambre). A portion of them, after their defeat, crossed over to Britain and settled in Berkshire on the Thames. It is quite probable that Caesar may have been influenced in sending Commius to Britain by the fact, that he being king of the Atrebates on the continent would also exercise an influence over his countrymen in Britain.

magni—habebatur: "was highly esteemed": *magni* is the genitive of value: F.L. 150, 2; P.L. III., 81, (g).

huic=Commio.

possit, scil. *adire.—adeat*: F.L. 96, 2; P.L. II., 95. Often *ut* is omitted after *mando*: cp. B. III., Chapter III.: *huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat.*

eo=in Britanniam.

ut—fidem sequantur: "to join the side of": literally, "seek the protection of."

seque: construe *imperatque huic ut nunciet se (Caesarem) celeriter venturum esse eo.*

perspectis regionibus: "after ascertaining the nature of the country": B. III., Chapter VII.: *cognoscere regiones.*

quantum—potuit: "as far as his means allowed him."—*facultatis*: partitive genitive: literally, "as much of opportunity as."

qui=quippe qui: "inasmuch as he": F.L. 198, 4; P.L. III., 99, (g).

navi egredi: "to disembark": cp. ἐκ νηός ἐκβαίνειν. Caesar uses both *navi egredi* or *ex navi egredi.*

perspexisset: dependent question: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. III., 99, (d).

CHAPTER XXII.

dum—moratur: note that *dum*, expressing time merely, meaning "while" always takes the *present* indicative except in B. VII., 82, even when the principal verb is evidently *past.*

qui excusarent: "to offer the following excuse for their past conduct": F.L. 184, 1; P.L. III., 99, (a), 1. This refers to the events narrated in the previous book; Chap. XXVIII.

nostrae consuetudinis: he refers to the mercy shown by the Romans to those who yielded to their power.

Populo Romano: dative of the object, "against the Roman people." There is implied a hostile relation in *bellum facere*: cp. *μάχεσθαί τινι*.

seque: construe *legatique venerunt, qui pollicerentur se facturos ea quae imperasset.*

hoc—accidisse: "this was a tolerably good streak of fortune." For another meaning of *accidit* see note B. III., Chapter II.

quod—volebat: the indicative as giving Caesar's own reasons.—*post tergum* "behind him."

has—anteponendas: "this business consisting of such trifles": for descriptive genitive: F.L. 130, 7, 8; P.L. III., 81 (e).

Britanniae=traiectui in Britanniam: "to his expedition to Britain." This condensed mode of expression (*brachylogy*) is common in Greek and Latin poetry: *κόμαι χαρίτεσσιν ὁμοῖαι*: "hair like (the hair of) the graces." So Shakespeare Coriolanus, Act II.: sc. 2, 21: *his ascent is not so easy as those who*, etc.

quibus adductis eos: *quibus* referring to the hostages: *eos*, to the Morini. —*in fidem*: "as a pledge" that the Morini would carry out their agreement.

coactis—contractisque: "having been collected and mustered."—*coactis* has the idea of collection under compulsion: *contractis* implies only their assembling.

quicquid—habebat: "all the ships of war he had besides." Note the use of *quicquid navium=omnes naves*: cp. Hor. Epist. 5, 1: *at Odeorum quicquid in coelo regit*: Livy, 3, 9: *per quicquid deorum est.*

huc—accedebant: "here were to have joined them." The imperfect expresses sometimes an *unfulfilled* intention: F.L. 216, 3, note 1; P.L. III., 191 (b).

ab—octo: "at the distance of eight miles." We sometimes find *ab* with the ablative of distance, and generally it is so used when the place is not mentioned, but understood from what precedes. Zumpt (§ 396) inclines to the idea that in the mind of the speaker the place is mentally governed by the preposition. We also find the same idiom in Greek: *ἀπὸ σταδίων εἰκόσιν τῆς πόλεως.*

quo minus—ut eo minus: goes with *tenebantur*, a verb of hindrance: F.L. 185, 2; P.L. III., 99, I., I.

Q. Titurio Sabino. Sabinus and Cotta were *legati* of Caesar, and seem to have been highly esteemed by their commander. They perished in an ambuscade planned by Ambiorix, king of the Eburones: B. V., 37. When these two are mentioned, the name of Sabinus comes first: B. IV., c. 38; B. V., c. 24; B. V., c. 52: B. VI., c. 32; but in B. VI., c. 37, the name of Cotta occurs first. Sabinus was probably the senior officer and higher in command, though both are styled *legati.*

Menapios: a people of *Gallia Belgica* who inhabited both sides of the Rhine. Their chief town was *Castellum Menapiorum* (now Kessel).

CHAPTER XXIII.

his constitutis rebus: express this in other ways.

tempestatem: "weather": a general term either good or bad according to the context.

tertia vigilia: the night was divided by the Romans into *four* watches, each of which would average three hours. Caesar would set out about midnight. It was generally held that the date was the 26th August. As to the port from which Caesar sailed many conflicting opinions are held. Mr. Airy, the Astronomer Royal, contends that Caesar started from the *estuary of the Somme*, and landed at the beach of *Pevensey*, on the coast of Sussex, near the spot where William the Conqueror disembarked eleven centuries afterwards. Mommsen favours the idea that the infantry embarked at *Ambleteuse* (which he identifies with *portus Itius*), and the cavalry at *Wissant*, east of Cape *Gris-Nez*; (Hist. of Rome, IV., 7). Strabo also gives *portus Itius* for the first expedition. Others say that the infantry started from Gesoriacum (*Boulogne*) and the cavalry at *Ambleteuse.*

solvit, scil. *naves*: "he set sail": for the omission of *naves*: cp. Cic. de Off. III., 12, 50: de Murena, 25; cp. the Greek expression *αἱρειν ναῦσι*, or *ναῦς*.

equites—progredi: so that they might embark in the eighteen ships that were windbound.

naves—conscendere: "to embark": cp. *ἐπιβαίνειν ναῦσι*, or *εἰσβαίνειν εἰς νῆας*. With *conscendere* we have either *navem* or *in navem*. In the same way Tacitus uses *ascendere*: *Ann* II., 75.

cum—administratum esset: the subjunctive after *cum* gives a reason for his starting with the cavalry.—*id*: refers to the embarkation of the cavalry. They were detained by stress of weather since they did not start till the 30th of August.—*tardius*: "too slowly": F.L. 56, 55.

hora—quarta: as sunrise would be shortly after 5 a.m., he would reach Britain about 9 a.m. Dr. Halley thinks that Caesar landed at *Deal*; D'Anville says at *portus Lemanis* (now *Lymne*), a short distance below Dover, while Mr. Airy gives *Pevensey* on the Sussex coast.

mis: "the vanguard."

expositas: here in the sense of *collocatas* or *instructas*. Elsewhere in Caesar *exponere* means (1) to disembark or (2) to point out, explain.

adeo—angustis: "so close to it."

in litus: "to the water's edge": cp. Celsus (Dig. 50, 16, 96): *litus est quosque maximus fluctus a mari pervenit.* -*litus* = Greek ῥηγμίν: *ripa* = Greek ὄχθη, the bank of a river: *ora* – Greek ἀκτή, the bank of land on the water.

ad—egrediendum, scil. *ex navibus*: see note B. IV., Chapter XXI.

nequiquam idoneum: "altogether unsuited": litotes.

dum—convenirent: F.L. 201, 4; P.L. III., 99, (f), iii.

in ancoris exspectavit: a pregnant construction for *naves ad ancoras deligavit et exspectavit*: "he cast anchor and waited."

legatis—convocatis: as the *imperator*, *legati*, *tribuni*, *militum* and *primipilus* formed the council of war, Caesar may here refer to its being called.

cognosset—vellet: dependent question: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. III., 99, (d).

monuitque: followed by the clause *ut postularent* which is also followed by the clause (*ut*) *administrarentur*. The construction is loose and very doubtful Latin. With the reading the full construction is: *monuitque* (*ut*) *omnes res administrarentur ab iis ad nutum et ad tempus ut rei militaris ratio*, etc.: "he warned them that everything must be done with strict regard to the signal and the time, since military practice and especially maritime affairs required this, inasmuch as these latter had a rapid and ever-changing movement": for the omission of *ut*: F.L. 181, 3; P.L. III., 124, 27, f., R.—*ut quae*: F.L. 196, 4; P.L. III., 99, (g), iii.

sublatis—ancoris: "having weighed their anchors": cp. αἱρεσθαι τὰς ἀγκύρας.

constituit: "he moored": cp. ἐπ' ἀγκύρας ὁρμεῖν.

ab eo loco: from Dover, probably towards the northeast.

aperto ac plano litore: between Walmer Castle and Deal.

CHAPTER XXIV.

at: generally denotes a change in the narrative.

essedariis: the word *essedum* or *esseda* is from the Keltic *ess*, "a chariot." It seems to have been used by the Gauls and the Germans, as well as by the Britons, cp. Verg. Georg. III., 204; Cic. ad Fam., 7, 6; Phil., 2, 58. It appears to have resembled the δίφρος of Homer, but to have been heavier, and open in front as well as behind. The *aurigae* mentioned in Chapter XXXIII. seem to have been the masters, while the fighting was done by the *clientes* or retainers. The word *essedarii* includes both *aurigae* and *clientes*: cp. Tac. ag. 12: *auriga honestior*: *clientes propugnant*. This was the reverse of the Homeric method, where the driver (ἡνίοχος) was regarded as a mere attendant (θεράπων), while the warrior (ἥρως) was the chief man.

quo—genere: this statement does not harmonize with that of Tacitus (Ag. 12): *in pedite robur*: *quaedam nationes et curru proeliantur*.—*consuerunt* = *consueverunt*: see note B. III., Chapter I.

reliquis—subsequuti: "following close with the rest of the forces": cp. II., 19; II., 11, where *cum* is used. "It must be observed, as an exception, that the ancient writers, especially Caesar and Livy, in speaking of military movements, frequently omit the preposition *cum*, and use the ablative alone." Zumpt, 437.

ob has causas: "for the following reasons." Note that *hic* refers to *what follows* as well as to *what precedes*. With the former it is equivalent to the Greek τοιόσδε, ὅδε, and the latter to οὗτος, τοιοῦτος.

quod—poterant: giving Caesar's own reason. What would *possent* mean?

militibus autem—cum illi: the order of the clauses is inverted. The second should come first, since *autem* = δέ, and *cum* = μέν. For the case of *militibus*: F.L. 173, 4; P.L. III., 152, 105; of *locis*: F.L. 85, 3; P.L. III., 161, 125, (a).—*oppressis* of course agrees with *militibus*, "weighed down." Translate: "the soldiers, moreover, weighed down with a great and heavy burden of armour, were compelled at one and the same time to leap down from the ships." The arms of an ordinary soldier (*miles legionarius*) were (a) *defensive*, consisting of a shield (*scutum* or *clipeus*); a helmet

(*galea*): a coat of mail (*lorica*); greaves (*ocrea*): and (b) *offensive*, a sword (*gladius*); two javelins (*pila*).

omnibus—expediti: "having none of their limbs burdened with armour."

pedestribus proeliis: "in battles by land": cp. *pedestres navalesque pugnae*: Cic. de Senec, 5: *pedestria itinera*: Caesar, B. III., 9.

CHAPTER XXV.

Quod—advertit: the usual construction with *animum advertere* in the classical period is, *animum advertere ad aliquam rem* or *alicui rei*. The construction with two accusatives, one being a pronoun, *id*, *hoc*, *illud*, etc., is ante-classical, and though it occurs in Caesar and Sallust is really *archaic*. Cicero uses the form of *animadvertere* which Caesar also uses.—*quod* may be taken as (1) the accusative of specification or (2) as governed by the preposition in composition.

naves longas: see note Chapter IX., B. III.

species: (cp. εἶδος) "appearance," embracing size, colour, shape, etc.: *figura* signifies "outline." The Britons like the Veneti (B. III., Chap. XIV.) were unaccustomed to see large vessels propelled by oars.

motus expeditior: "the speed of which rendered them more suitable for service."—*ad usum*=*ad navigandum*.

ad latus apertum: "on their unprotected flanks." This expression means here "the right": so in B. II., Chap. XXIII.; B. VII., Chap. LXXXII. The *clipeus* or *scutum* protected the left.

fundis—tormentis: the slingers (*funditores*) and the archers (*sagittarii*) belonged to the class of the *velites*, or light armed infantry. The inhabitants of the Balearic islands supplied the former while the Cretans supplied the archers. By *tormenta* Caesar refers to the *catapulta*, *balista*, and *scorpiones* formed on the principle of the cross bow for hurling darts and stones against the enemy.

propelli ac submoveri: "to be driven off and dislodged": an example of *hysteron proteron*.

magno usui: note B. IV., Chap. XX.

paulum modo: "just a little," "only a short distance."

atque: at the beginning of a new sentence *atque* is rare and marks a strong contrast between what follows and what preceeds: "and then."

cunctantibus: abl. absolute. Curtius distinguishes the roots in *cunctor*, "to hesitate": (connected with ὀκνεῖν); *cunctus* (= *covinctus* or *coiunctus*), "whole," "all"; and *percontor*, "to enquire" (connected with *contus*, κόντος) "a punt pole."

qui aquilam ferebat = aquilifer: "the eagle bearer." A bronze or silver eagle (*aquila*) was adopted by Marius in his second consulship (104 B.C.) as the standard of the legion. The standards of the *cohortes* were called *signa*, and seem to have been different for the different cohorts of the same legion. A figure of victory, a round ball, a hand and other emblems were used. The standard of the cavalry was a kind of banner called *vexillum*. The honour of carrying the eagle belonged to the first centurion of the first maniple of the *triarii*. He was called *primi pili centurio* or *principilus*, and he had an oversight over the other centurions. Along with the *tribuni militum*, *praefecti*, *legati* and *imperator* he formed the council of war. He held the rank of an *eques*.—*decimae legionis*: the tenth was evidently Caesar's favourite legion: cp. B. I., Chap. XL.: *huic legioni Caesar et propter virtutem confidebat maxime*. The legions were numbered *prima*, *tertia*, etc., according to the order of enlistment.

contestatus deos: the Romans entered upon every important undertaking with an appropriate *formula* of prayer to the deity or deities likely to aid them.

ea res: "his undertaking."—*commilitones*: "comrades."

nisi vultis: F.L. 210, 1; P.L. III., 99, (h). To lose the standard was always looked upon as most disgraceful, especially to the standard-bearer, since it was a violation of the military oath (*sacramentum*), which bound the soldier "not to desert their standard through a desire to escape or through fear, nor leave their ranks": Livy, 22, 38. To animate the soldiers the standard was sometimes thrown among the enemy: Livy, III., 70; II., 59, VI., 8.

officium praestitero: "shall perform my duty." The future perfect has here the force of a quickly completed future action.

magna: "loud." —*inter se*: "each other."

aquilam ferre: "to advance." Explain the phrases *signa inferre*: *signa referre*: *signa convertere*: *signa castris efferre*: *ad signa convenire*.

dedecus: "disgrace," *i.e.*, the loss of the eagle.

universi: "in a body," "to a man."

ex navibus: the ships nearest the enemy, composing the first line.

CHAPTER XXVI.

pugnatum est: F.L. 164, 2, note 2; P.L. III., 72, (h). Note and account for the position of *acriter*.

nostri tamen answered by *hostes vero*. We should have expected *hostes vero* first followed by *nostri tamen*, but the order is often inverted as in Chapter XXIV.

quod—poterant: as giving Caesar's own reason. What would *possent* mean?

alius—aggregabat: literally, "one from one ship, another from another, collected around whatever standard he chanced to meet." For the construction of *signis*: F.L. 120, 2.

singulares: "one by one": rarely used in the plural.

plures paucos: note the vividness of the asyndeton: construe *plures hostes circumsistebant paucos Romanos*.

alii: we should have expected *alii* before *conspexerant* to balance *alii* here.

adoriebantur—circumsistebant—coniciebant: note the force of the imperfects: F.L. 216, 3, note; P.L. III., 291, (b).

ab latere aperto: see note B. IV., Chapter XXV. For the use of *ab*: cp. *ab hostibus*, "on the side of the enemy": *a fronte*; *ab oriente*; *a nobis stare*.

quod—animadvertisset: see note B. IV., Chapter XXV.

scaphas—navium: "the cutters belonging to the men-of-war."—*scapha*: cp. Greek σκάφη, σκάφος from σκάπτω, "to hollow out."

speculatoria navigia: "the spy-boats," built specially for quick sailing.

laborantes: "in distress."

simul—constiterunt: "as soon as they set foot on dry land."—*simul* = *simul ac*, or *simul atque*.

suis: "their comrades."—*longius*: "to any great distance": see note B. IV., Chapter XXIII.

capere: "to reach." They were at *Wissant* or, some say, at *Ambleteuse*, unable to sail on account of a storm: cp. Chap. XXVIII.

ad pristinam: i.e., in this respect alone his success was incomplete.

CHAPTER XXVII.

de pace: "to treat for peace."

obsides daturos, scil. *se esse*: B. IV., Chapter XXI.

imperasset = imperavisset: subjunctive of *oratio obliqua*: F.L. 306, 4; P.L. III., 106.

quem—praemissum: the plupf. affects *praemissum*: "who, as I previously mentioned, had been sent forward."

cum—perferret: F.L. 198, 4; P.L. III., 99, g, ii.—*oratoris modo*: "as an ambassador": cp. *ritu*, *more*, *ratione*.

imprudentiam: "rashness," "thoughtlessness."—*ignosceretur*: F.L. 164, 1; P.L. III., 96, b, ii.

quod intulissent: Caesar assumes here an air of injured innocence.

dum ultro petissent: "since they had presumed to ask."—*continentem*, scil. *terram*: cp. ἤπειρος, scil. γῆ.

partem—partem: "some—others."

paucis diebus: "within a few days": F.L. 82, 2; P.L. III., 85, (b), iii.

principes: subject of *coeperunt*.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

his rebus: "by these measures": instrumental ablative.

post—ventum = quarto die postquam in Britanniam venerunt: note the double construction: *diem quartum* is governed by *post* as if *post* were a preposition, though it is really a part of the conjunction *postquam*: cp. *ante diem quartum Kalendas Januarias*. Since the Romans reckoned both days in an expression of time, this expression would be equivalent to our "three days after." Caesar set sail at midnight on the 26th of August, and landed on the coast of Kent about 10 a.m. August 27th, and the cavalry started on the 30th of the month. Dr. Halley calculates that the moon mentioned in the beginning of the next chapter was full on the night of the 30th. Note the varieties of expression for *post diem quartum quam*: *post quatuor dies quam*: *quatuor diebus postquam*: *quarto die postquam*: *quarto die quam* with *post* omitted.—*est ventum*: F.L. 164, 2; P.L. III., 96 (b).

supra: Chapter XXV.

sustulerant : "had taken on board."

leni vento : "with a light breeze" : properly an ablative absolute : "the wind being mild." The *portus superior* where the cavalry had been weatherbound was Ambleteuse.

solverunt : "set sail" : here said of the ships themselves, although the word is generally used with reference to the crew.

ex castris viderentur : "and were visible from the camp." It is probable that Caesar's camp was pitched on an elevated spot, not far from the shore.

sed : construe *sed* (*tanta tempestas subito coorta est ut*) *aliae referrentur eodem.*—*eodem* : "to the same spot."

aliae—deicerentur : "(while) others were driven down."—*propius* : construed here with the accusative, as is usual in Caesar : B. IV., 9 : V., 36. It may also be construed with a dative or an acc. with *ad*.

magno—periculo : "with great peril to themselves" ; *sui* is an objective genitive after *periculo*.

quae—petierunt : "while they, in spite of the fact that their anchors had been dropped, were nevertheless (*tamen*) filling with waves, putting out of necessity into the high seas in the teeth of night they made for the continent."—*quae* : join this with *cum.*—*tamen* opposed to *ancoris iactis.* —*adversa nocte* : abl. abs.: F.L. 100, 5 ; P.L. III., 130, 48.

CHAPTER XXIX.

eadem nocte : the night of August 30th.

qui dies—consuevit : we might expect *quo die luna consuevit.* The construction is loose, and the sentence should be divided into two for an English translation. "It unfortunately happened on the same night that the moon was full. On the day when this happens the moon is wont to cause very high tides on the ocean." Another reading for *qui dies* is *quae nostrisque* : scil. *militibus.* The influence of the moon on the tides seems to have been known to Cicero : cp. *de Divin.* 2, 14 : *quid de fretis aut de marinis aestibus dicam ? cum accessus et recessus* (*flow* and *ebb*) *lunae motu gubernantur.* This work of Cicero did not appear, however, till 44 B.C., eleven years after the invasion of Britain. The rise and fall of the tide in the Mediterranean is hardly perceptible : hence the ignorance of the Romans respecting it. At Dover it rises to the height of 19 ft., at Boulogne to 25 ft.

uno tempore : "at one and the same time."

exercitum—curaverat: "had had the army brought across." The meaning of the gerundive with *curo* is peculiar. It does not mean *necessity*, but supplies the place of the present participle passive; that is, it has the meaning of a continued passive state: cp. B. I., 12: *pontem faciendum curat*: B. V., i.: *naves aedificandas curarent.* With the infinitive *curo* is generally limited to negatives.

quasque—complebat=et eas naves quas in aridum subduxerat aestus complebat. Note that *subducere naves* is "to haul up" on shore, opposed to *deducere naves* "to launch."

onerarias—afflictabat: "and the storm kept dashing together the ships of burden which were riding at anchor." With *onerarias*, scil. *naves.* Note the force of the imperfect *afflictabat* as well as of the *frequentative*: F.L. 216, 2; P.L. III., 191, 199.

neque—dabatur: "nor was an opportunity afforded our men of managing (the vessels) or of lending aid."

compluribus—fractis: "after the wreck of several vessels." Express this in other ways.

cum—inutiles: "since the others were unseaworthy owing to the loss of their ropes, anchors and other tackling."—*funibus—amissis*: causal abl. abs. The *funes* (Gk. σχοινία) were strong ropes by which the anchors were held or the cables by which the ships were fastened to the shore. The ropes of the rigging were called *rudentes* (Gk. τονεῖα).—*armamentis*: see note B. III., Chapter XIV.

magna: note the emphasis given to this word by its separation from the noun.

id quod—accidere: "as was unavoidable": literally, a thing which could not *but* happen."—*quod accidere*: the acc. with the inf. is the subject of *necesse erat.*

quibus reportari possent=ut eis reportari possent: subjunctive of result. —*quibus*: abl. of instrument.

usui: dative of purpose: F.L. 134, 1: P.L. III., 82 (c).

et—erat: "and because it was generally understood that they had to winter in Gaul, corn had not been provided in these places for the winter."

omnibus constabat: literally, "it was agreed by all." Instead of the dative *omnibus* we also find *constare inter omnes*: B. VII., 44, 47.—*in hiemem*: when predetermination of future time is meant, the Latins use *in* with acc. Translate: "he called the Senate for the next day"; "he called the Senate on the next day."

CHAPTER XXX.

quibus rebus cognitis : express this in other ways.

principes : subject of *duxerunt.*

inter se collocuti : "talking with one another" : F.L. 223 ; P.L. III., 91.

cum—intelligerent—cognoscerent : "when they understood—observed." —*intelligere* denotes a rational discernment by means of reflection : *cognoscere*, to learn by the senses.

hoc : "on this account," "for this reason," explained afterwards by *quod* : causal ablative : F.L. 71, 3 ; P.L. III., 85 (m).

impedimentis : distinguish *impedimenta*, baggage of the legion : *sarcina*, of the individual soldier.

optimum factu : literally, "the best thing in the doing," *i.e.*, the best course. The supine in—*u* is the abl. of respect.

rebellione facta : "after the renewal of the war." Express this in other ways.

frumento commeatuque : "from corn and other supplies" : abl. of separation : see note B. III., Chapter III. : F.L. 158, 2, (i) ; P.L. III., 85, (h).

rem—producere : "to drag along the war" : cp. *rem trahere* ; *bellum protrahere* or *extrahere.*

his superatis—interclusis : equivalent to conditional clause = *si hi superati essent—interclusi essent.*— With *reditu* : cp. B. I., 8 : *commeatu prohibere.*

coniuratione facta : "forming a league" : here used in a good sense : cp. *coniurant* : see note B. III., Chapter VIII.

rursus = *re versus* : "back again" from peace to war.

paulatim : "little by little" : opposed to *universi.*

deducere : *i.e.*, to this place where they were going to make war, from the interior to the sea coast : note the force of *de* in *deducere* : cp. κατα in κατάγειν.

CHAPTER XXXI.

cognoverat : "was familiar with" : note the plupf. of *cognosco* has the force of an imperf. and the perf. that of a present : F.L. 145, 1 ; P.L. III., 72.

ex eventu navium : "from what had happened to his ships."

fore—suspicabatur : "suspected that that would happen which actually did." The foresight of Caesar was one of his most prominent characteristics.

subsidia : "resources," literally, "succours." Elsewhere *subsidia* in Caesar means : (1) "reserves," "relieving forces" : (2) "the act of bringing relief" : B. VII., 86.

quotidie : "daily," expressing simple repetition : *in dies singulos*, said of things daily increasing or decreasing : cp. note B. III., Chapter XXIII.

quae naves, earum=earum navium quae.—naves : antecedent expressed in relative clause.

ad eas res=eis rebus : "for these purposes."

administraretur : impersonally, "it was carried out" : *i.e.*, his directions were carried out.

duodecim —amissis : concessive, "though twelve ships had been lost."

reliquis—effecit : literally "he so arranged that it might be suitably sailed with the rest."—*reliquis* may be either (1) ablative instrument or (2) ablative of accompaniment.

CHAPTER XXXII.

dum geruntur : see note Chapter XVII., B. III.

frumentatum : "on a foraging expedition" : F.L. 174, 3 ; P.L. III., 105.

ad id tempus : "up to this time."

ulla suspicione interposita : "any suspicion having arisen" : F.L. 100, 5 ; P.L. II.., 85, (0).

hominum : "inhabitants" : here=*Britannorum.*

ventitaret : "continued to come" : note the force of the frequentative. So we have *actito* (from *agĕre*) ; *lectito* (from *lego*) ; *scriptito* (from *scribo*) ; *haesito* (from *haereo*) ; *visito* (from *video*). How are frequentatives formed ? F.L. 303, (a) ; P.L. III., 75, iii.

in statione : "on guard" : called *stationes*. For the gates of a Roman camp see plan (introduction p. xxv.)—*stationes* were properly guards at the gates of the camp : *excubiae*, guards by day or night : *vigiliae*, night guards only ; *custodiae*, guards to defend the fortification. The guard was inspected by *circuitores*, and changed every three hours, *i.e.*, at the end of each watch.

quam consuetudo ferret : "than was usual" ; "than custom admitted

of."—*ut* is omitted after *quam*. For another reason for subjunctive: F.L. 195, 3; P.L. III., 99, (g).

in ea parte—in quam partem: the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause is frequent in Caesar, and occurs when distinctness is required. In rendering into English omit the antecedent in the relative clause: see note Chapter I., B. III.

id quod erat suspicatus: scil. *esse*. The indic. *erat* is used because the words are inserted by the writer and are not dependent on *suspicatus*. Note that *id* is used merely for emphasis as in Cic. de Off. 2, 6: *male se res habet, cum quod virtute effici debet, id temptatur pecunia.*

aliquid novi consilii: "some new plan": literally, "something of a new plan": partitive genitive.

in stationem succedere: "to take their place on guard." Note the idea of motion conveyed by the Latin *succedere* and hence *in* with accusative.

confestim: "immediately." Note the emphatic position of the adverb. It is connected with the same root as in *festino*, "to hasten."

aegre sustinere, scil. *hostes*: "with difficulty were keeping the enemy in check." Compare the adverb *aegre*.

conferta legione: the ablative absolute denotes the cause of their being under a cross-fire: "in consequence of their being crowded together."

nam quod: "for since."—*nam* is taken with *delituerant*: while *quod* is joined to *erat*.

noctu: cp. *diu*, *interdiu*, *dudum* (=*diu-dum*): old ablatives.

tum—perturbaverant: "then suddenly attacking (our men) scattered, after they had laid aside their arms, and were busy in reaping, they (*i.e.*, the enemy) threw the rest into confusion, after slaying a few, since the ranks were irregular." With *dispersos*, scil. *nostros milites*.—*armis dispositis*: express this in other ways.

equitatu atque essedis circumdederant: scil. *nostros*. Express this by another construction.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

ex essedis: an adjective attributive of *pugnae*: "of the chariot fighting."

pugnae=*pugnandi*: cp. B. I., 28: *genus hoc erat pugnae.*

primo: "at first." Both *primo*, and *primum* means, "for the first time": *primo*, also means "at first": *primum*, "firstly."

ipso—equorum : "by the sheer dread caused by their horses": ablative of instrument. What genitive is *equorum?*

strepitu : "rattling": cp. Claudian Epigram IV.: *esseda multisonora.*

ordines, scil. *hostium.*

insinuaverint: future perf. indic.: literally, "they shall have made their way." In English we would say, "they have made their way."

pedibus : "on foot": F.L. 71, 3 ; P.L. III., 85 (e).

aurigae : see note B. IV., Chapter XXIV.—*interim* : refers to a momentary space of time: *interea*, implies continued duration.

illi: refers to the retainers (*clientes*) : see note B. IV., Chapter XXVI.

praestant : "secure."

tantum—efficiunt : "they became so proficient by daily experience and practice."

in—loco : "when the ground is sloping and even steep." Since the verb *sum* has no present participle in use, the prepositional ablative absolute is used for it. For the use of *ac.*

brevi, scil. *tempore* : "in a short time" ; "in a moment": cp. ἐν βραχει, scil. χρόνῳ.

per temonem : "along the whole length of the pole." According to Max Müller (Science of Language, Vol. II., p. 402), *tegmo=temo* : connected with *tignum.* Varo (L. L. VII., 78), derives it from *teneo*, as *holding* the yoke.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

quibus rebus : some take this as a causal ablative : "and owing to these facts." Others supply *permotus* or *adductus.* Others again take them as ablative absolute : "when matters were in this state." Others make *rebus* the ablative of cause depending on *perturbatis*, or as a dative depending on *tulit.*

namque : cp. καὶ γάρ : "and (this was evident) for." *Namque* in Caesar and Cicero is usually used before a vowel and always the first word of a proposition.

eius adventu : "on his arrival": ablative of time when.

quo facto : concessive abl. abs.: "though this was done."

ad lacessendum, scil. hostes: "for provoking the enemy to battle": others take *lacessendum* a gerundive with *proelium*: "for provoking a battle."

alienum: "unfavourable.—*alienus* is rarely applied to things and when it is, it is opposed to *suus* or *opportunus*: cp. *locus suus*: "ground of his own choosing," *i.e.*, "favourable ground."

suo—loco: for the omission of *in*: cp. B. IV., Chap. IV.

brevi—intermisso: "and a short time having elapsed": F.L. 100, 5; P.L. III., 85 (e).

dum—geruntur: see note B. III., Chapter XXVIII.

continuos dies: acc. of duration of time: P.L. 69, 9; F.L. III., 83 (c).—*continuus* denotes an unbroken succession: used (1) of time, as B. I., 48; V., 13: (2) of disaster, B. VII., 14.

tempestates: see note on B. IV., Chapter XXIII.

quae—continerent = *tales ut—continerent*: F.L. 188, 4, 5; P.L. III., 99, (b).

praedicaverunt: "openly boasted." Distinguish *praedĭco, praedīco.*

praedae faciendae: "of securing booty." The phrase does not occur elsewhere in Caesar.

in perpetuum: either supply *tempus* or *perpetuum* in neut. adj. used as an abstract noun: "for ever": cp. *εἰς ἀΐδιον*.

si—expulissent: "if they should succeed in driving out": the pluperfect denotes the accomplishment of the expulsion, and the subjunctive is used because of the virtual *oratio obliqua* in *demonstraverunt*.

daretur: "was offered": dependent question: F.L. 176, 2; P.L. III., 99, (d).

his rebus: "by these representations," to their countrymen.

CHAPTER XXXV.

idem: subject of *fore* and explained by the appositive clause *ut—effugerent*.—*effugerent*: means, they had escaped in the past and would do so in the future.

triginta: some commentators give CCC: others, XXX. The MSS., however, the latter.

diutius: join this word with *non*: "they could no longer stand."

quos = et eos: F.L. 232, note; P.L. II., 195.

tanto spatio—potuerunt: "for such a distance (as far) as speed and strength allowed." Others take *spatio* as ablative absolute: "the distance being so great."—*cursu et viribus*: literally, "by running and strength": ablative of instrument.

occīderunt, scil. *nostri milites.* Distinguish in meaning *occīderunt* and *occĭderunt.*

omnibus—incensis: "all the property far and wide being destroyed and burnt."—*affligere – solo aequare*: "to level to the ground." Another reading is *aedificiis incensis.*

CHAPTER XXXVI.

his—duplicavit; *duplico* follows the construction of *impero* by analogy.

quem ante imperaverat: see B. IV., Chapter XXVII.

in continentem: "to the continent": see B. IV., Chapter XXVII.

propinqua—aequinoctii: "as the day of the equinox was near": ablative absolute. The date of the equinox was September 24th. This remark shows how stubbornly the Britons opposed Caesar's advance. He landed on the 27th of August, and though he had been nearly a month attempting to gain possession of the island, we find him still at the sea shore.—*dies* is feminine here, as it usually is, when it means *time* generally or in the sense of a *fixed* or *appointed* day: cp. *die constituta, die dicta.*

infirmis — existimabat: literally, "he did not think that the voyage ought to be exposed to a storm, his ships being unseaworthy," *i.e.*, "he did not think that he on his voyage should run the risk of encountering a storm, seeing that his ships were unseaworthy."—*infirmis navibus*: ablative absolute or some say ablative of instrument with "unseaworthy ships," not a dative of agent with *subiciendam.*—*hiemi*: dative of indirect object governed by *subiciendam*: cp. B. VII., 77: *et perpetuae servituti* (*Galliam*) *subicere.*

eosdem—portus: *Boulogne* or *Ambleteuse.*

paulo sunt: were carried down the channel below *Gesoriacum* (Boulogne), perhaps as far as the modern Etaples.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

ex navibus—expositi, scil. *in terram*. This refers to the *duae onerariae*.

proficiscens: "in the act of setting out" = *cum proficisceretur*.

praedae: *praeda* = *prae-hend-a* or *prae-hid-a*: root HEND, Greek χαδ in χανδ-άνω, "to seize": cp. *praedium* = *praehendium*.

non ita: "with not so very large a number": instrumental ablative. This use of *ita* is limited like the English *so* to negative clauses: cp. B. V., 47; *non ita multum moratus*.

circumsteterunt, scil. *eos*: the three hundred.

nollent: F.L. 206, 6; P.L. III., 199, 214, (2). The *obliqua oratio* is implied in *iusserint*.—*orbe facto*: "having formed themselves into a circle." In Sallust (Jug. 97) we have a detailed account of this movement. The baggage was placed in the centre, and the soldiers, facing the enemy, formed a circle round it. In cases of extreme danger this movement was resorted to: cp. B. V., 33, where *Ambiorix* attacked Cotta and Sabinus.

celeriter: note the emphatic position. What would be the usual position?

ad clamorem: "at the shouts": *ad* either means "in answer to," "in accordance with," or goes with *convenerunt*.

suis auxilio: "as a help to his men": F.L. 134, 1; P.L. III., 82, (c).

amplius quatuor horis. What would be the ordinary construction? F.L. 69, 9; P.L. III., 83, (c). For the ablative: cp. B. VII., 9: *longius triduo*, B. IV., *longius anno*.

paucis vulneribus: "having sustained a trifling loss."

postea vero quam = *posteaquam vero*.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

Morinos: see note B. IV., Chapter XXI.

siccitates: the plural may mean either the continued dryness or the dryness in many different marshes. Compare this statement with what Caesar says in B. IV., Chap. XXXIV. These two statements hardly agree.

quo se reciperent non haberent: "did not know where to retreat to." With *habeo*: cp. ἔχω. The subjunctive would represent a subjunctive in the direct narrative: *quo me recipiam?* "Where am I to retreat to?" So with a past tense: *quo me reciperem non habebam*.

quo—perfugio : "which as a refuge." It is best to make *perfugio* an example of an antecedent attracted into the case of the relative since it is in the same clause, or make the object of *haberent*, *locum* and *perfugio* a dative of purpose. Caesar probably refers to the marshes on the *Scheldt* : cp. B. II., Chap. XVI., for similar conduct on the part of the Aedui.

superiore anno : B.C. 56 ; B. III., Chap. XXVIII.

quod—abdiderant : "because the Menapii had all concealed themselves by taking refuge in the thickest woods." What would be the meaning if *in silvis* had been the reading? Cp. B. II., Chap. XVI : *qui in silvis abditi latebant.*

neglexerunt : scil. *hoc facere* : cp. B. III., Chap. XXVII : *ultimae nationes hoc facere neglexerunt.* Dion Cassius gives this as a reason for Caesar's second invasion of Britain.

his rebus gestis : "owing to these exploits" : causal abl. abs.

ex : "in accordance with" :—*dierum viginti* : genitive of description : F.L. 130, 7, 8 ; P.L. III., 156, 115.

supplicatio ; the word may be either day of thanksgiving for national success, or a day of humiliation for national disaster. When a general gained a victory he sent a letter wreathed in laurels (*litterae laureatae*) to the Senate. If the victor deserved it, a thanksgiving (*supplicatio*) was usually appointed, which generally lasted several days. The thanksgiving for Caesar's victory over the Belgae was held for fifteen days, an honour which Caesar says no one had obtained before : B. II., Chapter XXXVII. The thanksgiving for his victory over Vercingetorix also lasted twenty days : B. VII., Chap. XC.

SHORT EXERCISES

BASED ON CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, B. IV.

For Oral Translation into Latin.

I.

1. During the succeeding year a great number of the Tenchtheri crossed the river Rhine. 2. They cross this river not far from the place where the river flows into the sea. 3. For several years the Suevi had harassed the Tenchtheri, and had kept them from tilling their land. 4. The Suevi have a hundred cantons, from each of which a thousand armed men are lead out to war every year. 5. The rest of the nation stay at home and maintain those who are in arms. 6. During the next year, those who are in arms now will remain at home. 7. Thus the one class (*hi*) stay at home and subsist on milk and flesh, while the other class (*illi*) are under arms. 8. Since the boys are not trained to any duty, they do nothing against their will. 9. On account of their daily exercise, they become men of extraordinary power. 10. The hides with which they are clothed are so scant that a great part of the body is exposed.

II.

1. They sell to the merchants what they take in war, for they do not import anything. 2. The Gauls take special delight in their horses, and often obtain them at extravagant prices; The Germans, on the other hand, (*autem*) often use small and ill-shaped ones. 3. Caesar says that the Germans by daily training, make their horses capable of undergoing the greatest fatigue. 4. They often train themselves to leap down from their horses and to fight on foot. 5. It is necessary to train their horses to remain in the same spot, so that they may be able to withdraw to them. 6. They think that nothing is a greater disgrace than to use housings. 7. However few they are, they dare to attack any number whatever of effeminate Gauls. 8. They think that wine should not be imported, because by it men become effeminate.

III.

1. It is supposed to be especial glory that the lands of their enemies should lie waste. 2. A large number of states could not withstand their power. 3. As German ideas go, that state is very large and flourishing.

4. The Ubii are the most civilized of all the states of that district. 5. They have been habituated to the customs of the Gauls because they border on the Rhine. 6. Merchants, too, often have intercourse with them. 7. The Suevi often attempted to drive them out of their territories. 8. They could not be driven out of their lands by the Suevi. 9. The Suevi made them tributaries and reduced them to a state of less importance. 10. They were rendered weaker by the Suevi.

IV.

1. The two nations were said to have withstood the power of the Suevi for several years. 2. The Menapii, alarmed at the approach of the Usipetes and Tenchtheri, stationed garrisons on this side of the Rhine. 3. These nations wandered about Germany for three years after they were expelled from their territories. 4. They were so terrified by the approach of this host that they left their lands which they possessed. 5. Having tried every resource they pretended to return to their own abodes. 6. They were unable to cross the Rhine on account of their want of vessels. 7. Before crossing the river they seized all the vessels of the Menapii. 8. They crossed the Rhine before the Menapii, who dwelt on this side of the river, were informed of their arrival. 9. When they crossed the river and seized all the houses of the Menapii, they maintained themselves for the greater part of that winter.

V.

1. No confidence ought to be placed in the Gauls on account of their fickleness. 2. They often aim at a change of government and are unstable in forming plans. 3. Travellers are often compelled against their will to disclose to them what they have heard about everything. 4. From what district do you come and what news have you heard? 5. They often repent immediately of schemes they enter into. 6. They are such slaves to idle stories that often the merchants invent news. 7. They often compelled the merchants to tell them where they were going and what they intended to do. 8. The merchants generally gave them fictitious news.

VI.

1. Caesar set out to the Roman army sooner than he was accustomed to do in previous years. 2. The things he suspected would happen had happened. 3. Several states sent ambassadors to the Germans and invited them to set out against the Gauls. 4. Everything has been done which you requested. 5. The Germans were led on by the hope that they would

defeat the Romans. 6. When Caesar came to the chiefs of the Gauls, he pretended that he had not heard what they were doing. 7. He quieted their feelings by his speech and resolved to cheer them. 8. He levied from the Gauls a large number of cavalry. 9. In that year he resolved to carry on war against the Germans.

VII.

1. He began to collect a supply of corn and to select cavalry for the war. 2. He set out against those places where he heard the Germans were. 3. When the ambassadors came to him, he was distant a long journey from their camp. 4. We neither refuse to fight, if we are provoked, nor are we the first to make war upon others. 5. We resist everybody that makes war upon us, and we ask for no quarter. 6. This custom has been handed down to us from our ancestors, not to refuse a battle, if we are provoked in war. 7. Let not the Romans allow us to be driven from the lands we possess. 8. We yield to the immortal gods alone, to whom not even the Suevi can be equal.

VIII.

1. Caesar thought it best to reply to their speech thus. 2. I can have no friendship with you, if you remain long in Gaul. 3. It is not right that men who cannot defend their own territories should settle down in the lands of others. 4. So great a number of people cannot seize lands without doing harm to others. 5. We shall allow you to settle, if you wish, in the lands of the Ubii. 6. In my camp there are ambassadors who complain of the wrongs done by the Suevi. 7. These ambassadors asked aid from Caesar. 8. He granted this request to those who were asking aid from him.

IX.—X.

1. We shall return to you and report what our country men decide. 2. We ask you not to advance near our camp. 3. "I," said Caesar, "am not able to grant you this request." 4. A large portion of the cavalry of the Germans had been sent across the river Rhine for the purpose of foraging. 5. When they asked Caesar not to move his camp nearer he thought it was for the purpose of causing delay. 6. I know that Caesar will move his camp nearer if he wishes. 7. Barbarous natives inhabit the large islands made by the Rhine where it approaches the ocean. 8. There are some of these natives that subsist on fish and birds' eggs. 9. The river Rhine, in the days of Caesar, flowed into the ocean by many mouths.

XI.

1. The Roman General on that day was not distant more than ten miles from the camp of the enemy. 2. On the next day the ambassadors of the enemy returned to the camp of Caesar. 3. We earnestly entreat you not to advance further. 4. We beg you to send forward some horsemen to keep your men from fighting. 5. If the Ubii will give us security on oath, we will accept the terms that you propose. 6. Here they assembled on the next day in great numbers to learn about Caesar's demands. 7. Tell the prefects not to harass the enemy. 8. Caesar meanwhile sent forward men to order the soldiers not to contend in battle. 9. On the next day the enemy assembled in as large bands as possible to withstand the attack of our army. 10. Caesar advanced not more than four miles to obtain water. 11. Do not harass the army in battle, but stand your ground until they advance to your van.

XII.

1. Though the number of our cavalry was more than five thousand, the enemy made an attack on them. 2. Our men feared nothing because the enemy had not more than five thousand in their army. 3. The enemy made a quick attack on our men. 4. As soon as they had dismounted they stabbed our horses underneath. 5. They did not cease from fighting till they had killed sixty-five of our men. 6. Piso, who had rescued his brother from danger, was himself surrounded and slain. 7. Piso himself fought against the enemy as long as he could, but at length *(denique)* he fell pierced with wounds. 8. His brother, who observed that Piso had fallen from his horse, rushed to his aid, but was slain.

XIII.

1. We must not listen to the ambassadors of the enemy, nor must we receive conditions from those who treacherously carry on war. 2. It was the height of folly to wait till the enemy had formed their plans. 3. Men who have treacherously sued for peace, and then made war without provocation, ought not to be listened to. 4. Caesar knew how great was the fickleness of the Gauls, and he gave them no time to form their plains. 5. The next day in the morning they came to Caesar to clear themselves for having deceived him. 6. It is the height of folly to let go by a single day suitable for battles. 7. I am glad that Caesar retained those elders who had come to sue for peace. 8. All his forces were led out of the camp on that day. 9. He ordered all of the cavalry to follow closely the enemy, so that no time should be allowed them to form their plans.

XIV.

1. He drew up his army in a triple line and quickly completed a journey of eight hours. 2. The rapidity of our advance and the defection of their countrymen threw the enemy into great confusion. 3. Caesar will arrive at the camp before we can tell what is going on. 4. Whether is it better to lead our soldiers against the enemy or to seek safety in flight? 5. The fear of the enemy was shown by their noise and bustling. 6. A battle was fought in this place by the enemy who boldly on that day withstood our troops. 7. All the children and women who crossed the Rhine began to flee in all directions. 8. The cavalry was sent by Caesar to overtake the rest of the enemy who had crossed the river. 9. Caesar sent forward his cavalry to pursue the women and children. 10. Among the waggons and baggage a fierce battle was fought by the enemy.

XV.

1. The Germans threw away their arms, abandoned their military standards and rushed out of camp. 2. When they reached the confluence of the Meuse and Rhine, they gave up hope of further flight. 3. There a great number was slain by Caesar's soldiers who pursued them to the banks of the river. 4. Overcome with fear they cast themselves into the river and perished. 5. We were all safe to a man, only a very few being wounded. 6. Many of the Germans were killed in that battle ; but some few escaped in safety to their own land. 7. When our men withdrew to the camp, nearly all were found to be unhurt. 8. Caesar retained some of the Germans in his camp who were unwilling to go home. 9. They said that they wished to remain rather in the Roman camp than to go back to their own land.

XVI.

1. For many reasons Caesar determined that the war should be finished. 2. He saw that the Germans were easily influenced to come into Gaul. 3. When you find that we have both the ability and the courage to cross the Rhine, you will fear for your own possessions. 4. Some of the cavalry of the enemy had crossed the Rhine for the purpose of foraging. 5. These had crossed over the Rhine into the territory of the enemy and had united their forces with them. 6. Caesar sent envoys to ask them why they carried on war against him. 7. These who had crossed the Rhine, as I have mentioned above, were not in the battle. 8. We earnestly beg of you to send us aid unless you are prevented by public duties from doing so. 9. Caesar had such a reputation for valour in consequence of the defeat of

the Germans that the army of the Roman people was safe from all attacks. 10. They promised that they would give a large number of ships for the army.

XVII.

1. To cross the river in boats is neither safe nor consistent with the dignity of the Roman people. 2. There was the greatest difficulty in crossing the river, because the Rhine, as I have mentioned, is very deep. 3. Therefore, a bridge must be built or else the army must not be taken over. 4. The piles sharpened a little at the lower end were driven in, not vertically, but sloping. 5. The greater the violence of the water, the more tightly are these logs held together. 6. If the barbarians send down trees or boards to knock down the bridge, these things cannot harm it. 7. Such was the strength of the material employed that the bridge resisted the strong current of the river. 8. The greater the force of the current, the more firmly did the materials resist it.

XVIII.

1. Within ten days Caesar built the bridge over the Rhine. 2. All the material was brought together within a few days. 3. The army was led over and a guard was posted at each end of the bridge. 4. After building the bridge he sets out into the territory of the enemy. 5. Ambassadors came to him from several states to ask peace from him. 6. He ordered them to bring hostages to him within a few days. 7. From the time that he began to build the bridge the enemy prepared for flight. 8. They left their lands and hid themselves in the woods to which they carried all their goods. 9. When the enemy asked for peace he told them that he would give it if they would obey him.

XIX.

1. The enemy burned all the villages and houses, and cut down all their corn. 2. Caesar promised that he would aid them in battle. 3. After the Suevi had learned that Caesar was building a bridge, a council was held. 4. They sent envoys in all directions and ordered their people (*cives*) to assemble in one place. 5. They placed all their wives and children in the woods and all who were unable to bear arms. 6. Let all who can bear arms assemble in one place. 7. The place where they were ordered to assemble was about the centre of the country of the Suevi. 8. After Caesar had plundered the Sigambri and relieved the Ubii, he withdrew into Gaul. 9. He spent in all seventeen days on the other side of the Rhine. 10. After this the bridge which he had built was cut down.

XX.

1. A short period of time was left to carry on a regular war. 2. In almost all the Gallic wars, the Britons furnished auxiliaries to our enemies. 3. It will be of great assistance to us if only we are able to ascertain what nation inhabits Britain. 4. If we cannot find out how great the island is, still, it will be of great advantage to examine the character of the people. 5. We know very little of the island, for very few persons except merchants go to it. 6. He thought if he should summon to himself the traders from all quarters, he might find out what harbours were suitable for war ships. 7. The sea coast and the districts opposite Gaul were known to the merchants. 8. The time of the year was so short that it was impossible to carry on a regular campaign. 9. When he called the merchants to him, they could not tell the size of the island.

XXI.

1. Caius Volusenus, a tribune in his army, was sent forward with a war ship. 2. Before ordering the fleet to assemble, he directed Volusenus to explore the sea coast. 3. Before sending the ambassadors home again, he made them liberal promises. 4. All his plans were reported by merchants to the Britons. 5. Several states of Britain sent envoys to promise him that they would do all his orders. 6. Commius, whose influence among the Atrebates he regarded of great value, was ordered to go to them. 7. Visit what states you can and tell them that I shall shortly come. 8. I will examine all the places as far as opportunity offers, seeing that I dare not go ashore. 9. He returned and reported to Caesar all that he had seen.

XXII.

1. While ships were being got ready in that district for the purpose of carrying on a war against Britain, ambassadors came to Caesar. 2. The Morini who had made war on the Roman people excused themselves on the ground that they were barbarians. 3. We are unacquainted with your custom, but we promise to do all that you order. 4. Caesar levied a large number of hostages from the Morini, because he thought that an enemy who had given hostages would obey his commands. 5. About forty transports will be enough to convey our legions across the sea. 7. To these are to be added the eighteen transports which are detained by the wind from coming into the harbour. 7. What galleys we had besides, we shall leave on the coast of Gaul. 8. Many ships were prevented by the storm from reaching the island. 9. We ordered the lieutenant to send troops against the enemy.

XXIII.

1. These things were arranged by Caesar on that day. 2. At the third watch of the following night he went on board his vessel. 3. He waited at anchor till the weather should be suitable for sailing. 4. It is by no means a suitable place for disembarking, when weapons can be thrown from the cliffs to the shore. 5. Both military science and especially seamanship demand that all commands be executed promptly. 6. After weighing anchor they advanced at a given signal about five miles from that place. 7. They obtained fair weather and moored the ships on an open beach. 8. He collected his officers and told them what he had learned from Volusenus. 9. In that spot they saw on all the hills the forces of the enemy.

XXIV.

1. The barbarians generally employed cavalry and charioteers in battle. 2. They followed our men with all their forces, after they learned of the arrival of the Romans. 3. It was not possible to moor ships of such size in that place. 4. The Romans could not moor their ships except in deep water. 5. The soldiers could not jump out of the ships, keep their footing amid the waves, and fight with the enemy all at once. 6. The enemy, on the other hand, with all their limbs free, could hurl weapons from dry ground. 7. Wholly unacquainted with this sort of fighting, our men were greatly terrified by the enemy. 8. The enemy boldly hurled their darts against our men, and spurred on their horses. 9. All those places were unknown to our troops who were oppressed with their heavy armour.

XXV.

1. The galleys were removed a little from the transports and put in motion with oars. 2. The enemy were dislodged by arrows and heavy missiles hurled from the ships of war. 3. If you do not wish to be frightened by the heavy missiles, fall back just a little. 4. The figure of our ships, the motion of the oars and the unusual kind of engines terrified the barbarians. 5. He at least who carried the eagle of the tenth legion did his duty to the state and to the commander. 6. If you do not jump down out of your ship, you will betray the eagle to the enemy. 7. Let no such disgrace be done; let us all leap down from the ships. 8. They leaped down from the ships and began to approach the enemy. 9. We pray the gods that this battle may turn out successfully for our legion.

XXVI.

1. The enemy fought fiercely for many hours. 2. We could not follow our own standards, but we flocked to any we met. 3. The enemy would

surround some as they came out of the ships in scattered groups. 4. The enemy knew all the shoals where our men landed. 5. Darts were thrown from the shore by the enemy. 6. When Caesar observed this he sent up some skiffs and spy boats filled with soldiers as a relief to those in distress. 7. Our men put the enemy to flight, but did not follow them up because they had no cavalry. 8. A fierce attack was made on the enemy by our men. 9. When Caesar saw his soldiers in danger he sent his reserves to aid them. 10. When all the spy boats were filled with soldiers, the Romans soon reached the island.

XXVII.

1. As soon as the Romans defeated the enemy in battle, the Britons gave hostages to Caesar. 2. When the Britons recovered from the flight they promised to do all that Caesar ordered. 3. Caesar sent forward Commius to Britain, but the Britons seized him after he disembarked. 4. They put him in chains although he had come to them in the character of an envoy. 5. After the battle was fought and peace made, he was sent back to Caesar. 6. The inhabitants asked the Romans to pardon their thoughtlessness. 7. Though you have made war on the Romans, I am willing to pardon your thoughtlessness, if you give hostages. 8. Caesar levied hostages from all the states of the island. 9. Within a few days we shall give some hostages to you ; others will be summoned from the more distant parts. 10. If you lay all the blame upon the multitude you cannot be pardoned by me.

XXVIII.

1. The eighteen ships did not reach the land till four days afterwards. 2. They were seen from the camp of the Romans, but some were carried down to the lower part of the island and others were driven back to the continent. 3. No ship was able to keep on its course owing to the great storm that arose. 4. Some of the vessels were driven back to the same place from which they had started and some cast ashore. 5. On the lower part of the island very many of the vessels were wrecked with great loss to themselves. 6. They started for the continent with night before them, even though the storm was great. 7. When the ships started for the continent, many of them were filling with waves. 8. They set sail at daybreak and landed at sunset. 9. A great storm arose at sea when the ships were sailing to Britain.

XXIX.

1. It happened that Caesar did not know that the full moon caused very high tides in the ocean. 2. He had the galleys drawn up on shore and the

transports anchored. 3. The Romans had no opportunity to lend aid to the ships. 4. On that night many ships were wrecked by the storm. 5. The rest of the ships lost their cables, anchors, and the rest of their rigging. 6. Throughout the whole army such a commotion took place that Caesar did not know what to do. 7. The Romans had no corn in the camp, for Caesar had not provided a supply since he intended to winter in Gaul. 8. All things necessary for building ships would have to be brought from the continent. 9. His ships were nearly all unseaworthy, and could not be repaired at this time.

XXX.

1. After this battle, the chiefs of Britain held conferences among themselves. 2. They learned that the Romans had few soldiers owing to the small size of our camp. 3. The camp of the Romans was very small because Caesar had no baggage in the army. 4. They thought that their best policy was to renew the war. 5. Since the Romans lack horsemen, ships and grain, the best thing to do is to keep them from supplies and prevent their return. 6. If our men were prevented from a return, the war would be prolonged to the winter. 7. They began again to form a conspiracy after they learned that our men had no cavalry. 8. No one will cross over to Britain for the purpose of carrying on war. 9. All the Britons left the camp, and a league began to be formed.

XXXI.

1. When the Britons learned what had happened to Caesar's ships they did not send hostages to him. 2. He suspected that they would not send hostages. 3. From the fact that many of the ships were severely disabled, he suspected that he should have to use the timber of these vessels for repairing the others. 4. Corn was collected by Caesar from that district because the Romans had not brought a supply of it from Gaul. 5. All things which were of need for repairing the vessels which had been wrecked were brought from the continent. 6. These matters were carried out by the soldiers with the greatest zeal. 7. He lost twelve ships at that time; still he was able to sail to the continent with the rest. 8. Many of the ships were very severely damaged at that time by the storm which suddenly arose. 9. Building material was collected by Caesar for repairing ships.

XXXII.

1. The seventh legion had been sent to forage when Caesar saw a larger cloud of dust than usual in the direction in which the legion marched. 2. In front of the gates of the camp the soldiers on guard saw a great cloud

of dust. 3. The cohorts which were on guard at once set out in that direction in which the enemy was marching. 4. Our men were hard pressed by the enemy and with difficulty kept their ground 5. "Do you see," says he, "a larger cloud of dust than usual in that direction in which the enemy's forces are?" 6. When the forces which were on guard before the gates of the camp had set out, in that direction the other cohorts immediately followed them. 7. While our men were engaged in reaping, the enemy who were skulking in the woods suddenly attacked them. 8. Our ranks were thrown into great confusion because the enemy suddenly attacked our men. 9. The enemy suddenly surrounded our men with many forces. 10. The enemy suspected that our forces would come to that spot to reap the corn.

XXXIII.

1. At first they ride around everywhere and then work their way in among the horsemen when they leap down from their chariots and the drivers withdraw from the battle. 2. Darts are hurled from all sides by the enemy against our troops, and when once they have thrown our men into disorder they fight on foot. 3. The Britons exhibited in battle the activity of cavalry and the steadiness of foot soldiers. 4. They even on a downward slope rein in their horses when at full gallop. 5. In a moment they are able to check their horses even when running at full gallop. 6. They are accustomed to run along the whole length of the pole, and to stand on the yoke. 7. Often have our men seen them on a steep slope rein their steeds. 8. When they were hard pressed by the Romans they had a safe retreat to their chariots. 9. The sheer terror caused by the horses and the rumbling of the wheels generally threw the ranks of our men into confusion.

XXXIV.

1. When our men had recovered from their fear, they thought it was time to provoke a battle. 2. For several successive days the enemy were prevented by a storm from offering battle. 3. There is a great opportunity to free our country for ever, if we drive the enemy out of the island. 4. We thought this a most important time for engaging in battle. 5. Our men were not able to leave the camp on account of the severe storms which followed for several days. 6. He collected all his infantry and cavalry together into one place. 7. What a fine opportunity you will have of driving the Romans from their camp, if only you collected all your forces against them. 8. Our men were greatly disconcerted by the Britons, but at the arrival of Caesar they recovered from fear. 9. They told their

countrymen that it would be an easy matter to drive out the Romans, if they would attack them with all their forces.

XXXV.

1. If the enemy are repulsed in battle, they easily escape danger in consequence of their speed. 2. Caesar said that the enemy would escape by flight, as they had done on the days previous. 3. Caesar obtained about thirty horses from Commius Atrebas, and pursued the enemy. 4. The legions were drawn up in battle array in front of the camp. 5. The onset of our men could not be withstood by the enemy who turned their backs in flight. 6. Several of the enemy were slain when they were overtaken by our men. 7. Our men followed the enemy on that day as far as they could. 8. Before the Romans withdrew to their camp they burnt all the houses of the enemy. 9. The thirty horsemen (of whom mention has been made before), pursued the enemy and killed several of them.

XXXVI.

1. The enemy sent ambassadors on the same day to the Roman camp to treat for peace. 2. "I demand," says Caesar, "double the number of hostages I formerly demanded, and I order you to bring them to the continent." 3. "I must not," says he, "expose my ships to an equinoctial storm." 4. Though they set sail at midnight, they nevertheless reached the port in safety. 5. He was not able to reach port with two merchantmen. 6. These two merchantmen were carried down to a lower part of the island. 7. At midnight he set sail for Britain with all the ships. 8. Although they set sail at midnight they nevertheless reached the port in safety. 9. Caesar will obtain favourable weather at daybreak.

XXXVII.

1. Caesar disembarked about three hundred soldiers on that day. 2. He set out to Britain after he subdued the Morini. 3. This people was induced by the hope of booty to attack our camp. 4. If you do not wish to be killed, lay down your arms. 5. When they had formed themselves into a circle, hastily they rushed with a shout against the foe. 6. All the cavalry was sent by Caesar to aid the Roman foot. 7. The battle lasted for more than four hours and several of our troops fell in battle. 8. Our men slew a great number of the enemy in battle, who threw away their arms. 9. Many of our friends received wounds in that battle.

XXXVIII.

1. These legions were led back from Britain against the Morini. 2. About six thousand men assembled for the defence of the three hundred whom the Morini had surrendered. 3. After our cavalry came in sight the enemy threw down their arms and fled. 4. We have no place to retreat to. 5. The year before, the Morini had used the swamps as a place for refuge. 6. They hid themselves in the swamps; but all the rest fell into the hands of the lieutenant. 7. They cut down all the corn which was in the fields. 8. Caesar decreed a thanksgiving of twenty days. 9. Caesar said that all the enemy withdrew to the thick woods, where they pitched their camp. 10. The houses of the enemy were all burned down by the soldiers of the Roman army after the battle was fought.

PROPER NAMES.

ABBREVIATIONS.

adj. = adjective ; f. = fem. ; m. = masc. ; N. = noun ; n. = neuter ; pl. = plural ; sing. = singular.

A.

A = Aulus, -i; N. m. : a Roman *praenomen.*

Adŭătŭci, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : *the Aduatuci*, a people of *Gallia Belgica*. According to Caesar they were descended from the Cimbri and Teutones, who had been left behind to guard the baggage and cattle when these two nations made a descent on Italy: B. II., Chap. XXIX. This is, however, contradicted when he says that the Belgae were the only Gallic tribe who kept the Cimbri and Teutones out of their territory. They lived about the confluence of the Sabis (*Sambre*) and the Mosa (*Meuse*).

Adcantŭannus, -i ; N. m.: *Adcantuannus*, a chief of the Sotiates. He endeavoured together with six hundred devoted partisans (*soldurii*) to escape from the town of the Sotiates when it was attacked by Crassus, one of the lieutenants of Caesar. He was unsuccessful in his attempt and was driven back into the town and forced to surrender: B. III., Chap. XXII.

Aedŭus, -a, -um ; adj. : *an Aeduan*. The Aedui were a powerful nation of Gaul. Their confederacy embraced all the tract of country between the *Allier*, the middle *Loire*, and the *Saône*, and extended a little below this river to the south. Their capital was *Bibracte*. When Caesar came into Gaul he found the *Aedui* had been overcome by their rivals, the *Arverni* and the *Sequani*, who had called in the aid of Ariovistus, a German prince. Caesar espoused the cause of the Aedui, and restored them to their former place of power.

Aemĭlĭus, -i ; N. m.: *L. Aemilius*, a Roman officer in command of a *decuria* of Gallic cavalry : B. I., Chap. XXIII.

Afrĭcus, -i ; m.: the *south-west* wind. Still called by the modern Italians *Africo*.

Agedincum, -i ; n.: capital of the Senones, on the Yonne, a tributary of the Seine, now called *Sens*.

Aldŭasbis, -is ; N. m.: also called the Dubis (now *Doubs*), a river on which Vesontio (now *Besançon*), the chief town of the Aedui, was situated. The word Dubis meant the *black* river: cp. Keltic *dhu*, "black," as in the modern names *Du*las, *Dou*las, *Dow*las, *Digg*les, *Dub*lin. Alduasbis means, "the river of black rocks."

Allŏbrŏges, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Allobroges*, a people of Gaul between the Isara (*Isere*) and the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) in the country occupied by *Dauphine*, *Savoy*, and *Piedmont*. Their chief city was Vienna (*Vienne*), about thirteen miles below Lugdunum (*Lyons*). The name means "highlanders," from *al*, "high"; *broga*, "land."

Alpes, -ĭum; N. pl. f.: *the Alps* derive their name from the Keltic *alp*, meaning "lofty." Their length is about 600 English miles. The following are the divisions generally given to this chain: *Alpes Maritimae*, from Nice to Mt. Viso; *Alpes Cottiae*, from Mt. Viso to Mt. Cenis; *Alpes Graiae*, from Mt. Iseran to Little St. Bernard; *Alpes Peninae*, from the Great St. Bernard to the sources of the Rhine and Rhone; *Alpes Rhaeticae*, from the St. Gothard to Mt. Brenner in the Tyrol; *Alpes Noricae*, from Mt. Brenner to the head of the river Plavis; *Alpes Carnicae* vel *Juliae*, extending to the confines of Illyricum.

Ambarri, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a people of Gallia Celtica, situated between the Aedui and the Allobroges, along either bank of the Arar (*Saône*).

Ambĭāni, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: *the Ambiani*, a tribe of *Gallia Belgica*, to the north of the Bellovaci, and the river Samara (*Somme*). They had as their capital Samarobriva, on the Samara. This town was afterwards called Ambiani (now *Amiens*). They occupied that part of modern *Picardie*, now called *Department de la Somme.*

Ambĭlĭāti, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Ambiliati*, a people of Ancient Gaul, in the neighbourhood of the modern Abbeville.

Ambiorix, -īgis; m.: *Ambiorix*, king of the Eburones.

Ambĭvărĭti, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Ambivariti*, a people of Ancient Gaul, near the Mosa (*Meuse*).

Anartes, -ĭum; m.: a Dacian tribe of the Theiss.

Ancalĭtes, -ĭum; m. pl.: a British tribe, near Oxford, that surrendered to Caesar.

Andes, -ĭum; N. m. pl.: *the Andes*, a Gallic tribe that occupied the modern *Anjou*, or what is now called *Department de la Mayenne*. They occupied the north bank of the Liger (*Loire*), not far from its mouth. Tacitus and Pliny called them Andecavi or Andegavi. Caesar says that they were near the sea, but in this statement he is inaccurate, as the Nannetes intervened: B. II., Chap. XXXV.; B. III., Chap. VII.; B. VII., Chap. IV.

Andŏcumbŏrĭus, -i; N. m.: a colleague of Iccius in the embassy which the Remi sent to announce their submission to Caesar

Antistĭus, -i; m.: *Caius Antistius Regius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Aquĭleia, -ae: N. f.: a celebrated city in Northern Italy, in the territory of Venetia, between the Alsa and Natiso, and about seven miles from the sea.

Aquĭtānia, -ae; N. f.: a district of Gaul between the Garumna (*Garonne*) and the Pyrenees. According to Strabo, the Aquitani differed from the Gauls both in physical features and in language. They resembled the Iberians.

Aquĭtāni, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: *the Aquitanians*, one of the three great divisions of Gaul inhabiting Aquitania, the district between the Garumna (*Garonne*) and the Pyrenees. They resembled the Iberi rather than the Gauls.

Arar, -ăris; N. m.: *the Arar* (now the *Saône*), a river of Gaul, rising in Mons Vosegus (now *Vosges*) and after a southern course falling into the Rhodanus (*Rhone*). The city of Lugdunum (now *Lyons*) stands at the junction of the two rivers: B. I, Chap. XII.

Arduenna, -ae; f.: *the Ardennes* forest of Gaul. According to Caesar, it reached from the Rhine and the territories of the Treveri to those of the Nervii, being upwards of fifty miles in length. The origin of the word is either from *ar denn, i.e.*, "the profound," "the deep" forest; or from *ard*, "hard"; *venna*, "pasture."

Arĭŏvistus, -i; N. m.: a king of the Germans who invaded Gaul, conquered the greater portion of the kingdom and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. Caesar marched against him and defeated him in battle. He died of wounds or through chagrin at his defeat. His name is by some derived from the German *Heer*, an army: *Fürst*, a leader; or from *Aar*, an eagle; and *vistus*, a Latinized form of *first*=*hurst*, a nest, ∴ the word=*eyry*.

Armorĭcus, -a, -um; adj.: *Armorican*. The ancient Armorica comprised *Brittany* and part of *Normandy*. The word is from *ar*, "on," and *mor*, "the sea."

Aruncŭleius, -i; N. m.: *Lucius Aruncuieius Cotta*, one of the legati in Caesar's army in Gaul. When Ambiorix, a king of the Eburones was seeking to withdraw him and his colleague Sabinus from winter quarters, Cotta was opposed to leaving the encampment, but finally yielded. The Roman army was drawn into an ambuscade, and both he and his colleague fell.

Arverni, -ōrum; N. pl.: a powerful tribe of Gaul, whose territories lay between the sources of the *Allier* and *Dordogne*, branches of the *Loire* and *Garonne*. The district is now *Auvergne*. The name is from *ar* or *al*, "high"; and *verann* (*fearann*), "country" or "region."

Ātrĕbas, -ātis; adj: *an Atrebatian*.

Atrĕbātes, -um; N. m. pl: *the Atrebates*, a native of *Gallia Belgica* of high renown for valour. Their territory lay S.E. from that of the Morini and S.W. from that of the Nervii, answering to the modern *Artois* in the *Department du Pas de Calais*. Their chief town was Nemetacum (now *Arras*, or as the Flemings call it, *Atrecht*).

Atrius, -i; m.: *Quintus Atrius*, an officer in Caesar's army, left to look after the fleet when Caesar invaded Britain.

Aulerci, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: *the Aulerci*, a general term applied to four different tribes in Gaul:

(1) *Aulerci Brannovices*, clients of the Aedui, whose territory lay between the latter and the Sequani, and corresponded to the modern *Briennois*.

(2) *Aulerci Cenomanni*: N.W. from the former, above the Andes and Turones; and west of the Carnutes, their country corresponded to the modern *Department de la Sarthe*. Their capital was Suindinum, afterwards Canomanni, now *Maus*.

(3) *Aulerci Eburones*: often called simply *Eburones*, N.W. of the Carnutes, along the west bank of the Sequana (*Seine*), above Lutetia (*Paris*). Their chief town was Mediolanum, afterwards Eburovices, now *Evreux*.

(4) *Aulerci Diablintes*, north-west of the Cenomanni, their chief town was Neodunum, afterward Diablintes (now *Jableins*).

Ausci, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Ausci*, a people of Aquitania in ancient Gaul.

Auruncŭleius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Axŏna, -ae; N. m.: *Axona*, a river of Gaul, passing through the country of the Remi. It is now called *Aisne*. It flows s.w., joins the Isara (*Isère*), and both fall into the Sequana (*Seine*).

B.

Bacēnis, -is (scil. *silva*); adj.: a forest in Germany separating the Suevi from the Cherusci. It corresponds to the western portion of the *Thuringian Forest*, and formed part of the Hercynia Silva or *Black Forest*.

Băcŭlus, -i; N. m.: *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a centurion of the first rank in the army of Caesar, who on several occasions distinguished himself by his valour: B. II., Chap. XXV.; B. III., Chap. V.; B. VI., Chap. XXXVIII.

Bălēāres, -ium; N. m. pl.: a name given to the people of the islands of Majorca and Minorca off the coast of Spain. The name was also applied to the islands themselves. The word is probably from βάλλειν, "to throw," or "shoot," and referred to the skill of the people in the use of the sling or the arrow.

Bătāvōrum Insŭla: that portion of Holland bounded on two sides by the northern and southern branches of the Rhine and on the third by the sea. It corresponds at the present day to a part of the Duchy of *Gueldres* and a large portion of Southern Holland: B. IV., Chap. X.

Balventĭus, -i; m.: *Titus Balventius*, a brave centurion of Caesar: V., 25.

Băsĭlus, -i; m.: *L. Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers; afterwards one of his conspirators.

Belgae, -ārum; N. m. pl.: a people of Ancient Gaul, separated from the Celtae in the time of Caesar by the rivers Matrona (*Marne*) and Sequana (*Seine*).

Belgĭum, -i; n.: the land of the *Belgae*; the modern *Belgium*.

Bellŏvăci, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: *the Bellovaci*, a powerful nation of the Belgae, to the north of the Parisii. Their capital was Caesaromăgus, afterwards Bellovaci, now *Beauvais*.

Bibracte, -is; N. n.: a large town of the Aedui in Gaul on the *Arroux*, one of the tributaries of the *Loire*. It was afterwards called Augustodunum, which name still remains in the modern *Autun*.

Bibrax, -actis; N. n.: *Bibrax*, a town of the Remi, eight miles from the Axona, (now *Aisne*). Some say it corresponds to the modern *Bray*, others to *Braisne* others to *Bièvre*.

Bigerrĭōnes, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Bigerriones*, a people of Aquitania, at the foot of the Pyrenees, to the west of the Garumni

Bibrŏci, -ōrum; m. pl.: a tribe in the S.E. of Britain (*Bray?*).

Bitūrĭges, -um; N. m. pl.: a name given to two nations of Gaul:

(1) *Bituriges Cubi*, a people of Gallia Celtica, west of the Aedui, their chief city was Avaricum, afterwards Bituriges, (now *Bourges*) and their territory corresponded to a part of the modern *Berry* and *Bourbonnais*, in the *Department du Cher et de l' Indre*.

(2) *Bituriges Virisci* were situated near the mouth of the Garumna (*Garonne*) and their capital was Burdigala (now *Bordeaux*).

Boduognātus, -i; N. m.: a leader of the Nervii in the attack made by Caesar.

Boii, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: a people of Celtic Gaul, who dwelt on the waters of the *Sollac*. From Gaul they passed into Germany and settled in the present Bohemia, a corruption of *Boierheim*, i.e., the residence of the Boii. They afterwards went to *Bavaria*, a corruption of *Boaria*. Their name means "the terrible ones"; from Celtic *bo*, "fear."

Bratuspantĭum, -i; N. n.: a town of the Bellovaci, near the village of *Gratepeuche*, between *Breteuil* and *Montidier*.

Brĭtanni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Britons*.

Britannĭa, -ae; N. f.: the island of *Great Britain*.

Britannĭcus, -a, -um; adj.: *British*.

Brūtus, -ī; N. sing. m.: *Brutus*, the commander of the Roman fleet in the war against the Veneti.

C.

Cabūrus, -i; N. m.: Caius Valerius Caburus, a Gallic chieftain who obtained the right of Roman citizenship (*civitas*). He is afterwards mentioned as holding the supreme power among the Helvii: B. VII., Chap. LXV.

Caerŏēsi, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: *the Caeroesi*, a people of Gallia Belgica, between the Treveri and the river Mosa (*Meuse*), who along with the Condrusi, Eburones, and Paemani went under the general term of the Germans. According to some the name still exists in the little river *Chiers*, between *Mouson* and *Sedan*: B. II., Chap. IV.

Caesar, -ăris; N. m.: Caius Julius Caesar: see Introduction.

Cāīus, -i; N. m.: a Roman *praenomen*.

Calēti, -ōrum, also **Calētes, -ĭum**; N. pl.: *the Caleti* or *Caletes*, a people of Gallia Belgica. They probably occupied the district not far from the neighbourhood of the modern *Rouen*.

Cantabri, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Cantabri*, a warlike people of the N.E. of Spain, along the shores of the Sinus Cantabricus (*Bay of Biscay*). Their country corresponded to the modern Biscay and part of *Asturias*.

Carcăso, -ōnis; N. sing. m.: *Carcaso*, a city of the Volcae Tectosages, in the Roman Province. It was situated on the river Atax (*Aude*) and lay inland in a western direction from Narbo Martius (*Narbonne*). It is now called *Carcasonne*.

Carnūtes, -um; N. pl.: *the Carnutes*, a nation of Gaul, between the Sequana (*Seine*) and the Liger (*Loire*) and west of the Parisii. They were clients of the Remi. Their territory was the chief seat of the Druids, who held here their courts of justice. Their chief town was Autricum (now *Chartres*): B. II., Chap. XXXV.; B. V., Chap. XXV., XXIX., LIV., etc.

Carvīlius, -i; m.: a British King of Kent.

Cassi, -ōrum; m. pl.: a tribe of Britain that surrendered to Caesar.

Cassiānus, -a, -um; adj.: of or belonging to Cassius.

Cassius, L.; N. m.: Lucius Cassius was consul 107 B.C. In that year a coalition was formed of the Cimbri and Teutones. After devastating Gaul, they united with the Helvetii and resolved to attack the Roman *Provincia* at several points. The Helvetian tribe *Tigurini* under Divico attacked the territory of the Allobroges by the bridge of Geneva and the fords of the Rhone. The rest of the Helvetii moved south. The Romans divided their forces. Cassius, the consul, hastened to Geneva, while his *legatus*, Scaurus, moved against the combined horde of Cimbri and Teutones. Both commanders were unfortunate. Cassius and his army were cut to pieces on the borders of Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*), while Scaurus was defeated and taken prisoner.

Castĭcus, -i; N. m.: a chief of the Sequani, on whom Orgetorix prevailed to seize the supreme power in his native State.

Cassivellaunus, -i; m.: *Cassivellaunus*; Casswallen, commander-in-chief of the British army against Caesar.

Cătamantoloedis, -is; N. m.: the father of Casticus.

Caturĭges, -um; N. m. pl.: a Gallic nation dwelling among the Cottian Alps. Their capital was Caturiges, traces of which are still to be found at *Chourges*, between *Gap* and *Embrun* in the department of *des Hautes-Alpes*.

Catuvolcus, -i; m.: Catuvolcus, chief of the Eburones, who poisoned himself after the failure of an insurrection he had promoted.

Cavarīnus, -i; m.: chief of the Senones.

Carvīlius, -i; m.: a petty British chief.

Celtae, also **Keltae, -ārum**; N. m. pl.: one of the tribes that inhabited Ancient Gaul. The word is derived either from *ceilt* or *ceiltach*, "an inhabitant of the forest," or from the root CEL, "high"; (cp. *celsus*, *columna*), hence *Celtae* means "highlanders."

Cenimagni, -ōrum; m. pl.: a British tribe in Suffolk, which surrendered to Caesar.

Centrōnes, -um; N. pl. m.: a people of Gaul who dwelt among the Alpes Graiae. They were defeated by Caesar in several battles. Their chief town was Forum Claudii Centronum (now *Centron*).

Cherusci, -ōrum; m. pl.: a German tribe between the Weser, the Elbe, and the Horz Mountains.

Cĭcĕro, -ōnis ; m. : *Quintus Tullius Cicero*, brother of the celebrated orator, M. Tullius Cicero. He was one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul.

Cimbĕrius, -i ; N. m. : *Cimberius*, a brother of Nasua, who along with the latter was joint commander of the Suevi when they were endeavouring to cross the Rhine and form a junction with Ariovistus. When the German princes were overthrown they retreated : B. I., Chap. XXXVII.

Cimbri, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : a people of Central Europe who invaded the Roman empire in the time of Marius. They were a branch of the Celtic tribe. They are supposed to have had their origin in the Cimbric Chersonese (*Jutland*).

Cingetorix, -ĭgis ; m.: (1) a Gaul, attached to Caesar, and the rival of Indutiomarus for the chief power among the Treviri ; (2) a British chief of Kent.

Cisrhenān-us, -a, -um ; adj. [*cis*, "on this side" ; *Rhenus*, "Rhine"] : "lying on this" (*i.e.* the Italian) "side of the Rhine."

Claudĭus, -i ; n.: Appius Claudius, consul with L. Domitius B.C. 54.

Cnēĭus, -i ; N. m. : *Cneius*, a Roman *praenomen*.

Cnēĭus, -i ; m.: a Roman *praenomen*.

Cŏcōsātes, -ium ; N. pl. m. : *the Cocosates*, a people of Aquitania, lying along the coast of the Sinus Cantabricus (*Bay of Biscay*). Their chief city was Cocossa on the coast, some distance above Aquae Augustae (now *Acqs* or *Dax*) : B. III., Chap. XXVII.

Commĭus ; m. : a leader of the Atrebates.

Commĭus, -i ; N. sing. m. : *Commius*, a chief of the Atrebatians.

Condrūsi, -ōrum ; m. pl. : *the Condrusi*, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the right bank of the Mosa (*Meuse*), in the district of the modern *Namur* and *Liege*.

Consĭdĭus, -i ; N. m. ; Publius Considius was an officer in Caesar's army. He was employed in the war against the Helvetii.

Cotta, -ae ; N. m. ; Lucius Arunculeius Cotta : see *Arunculeius*.

Corus, -i ; m : *Corus* or *Caurus*, the *North-west* wind.

Crassus, -i ; N. m. : M. Licinius Crassus, surnamed *Dives*, was a member of the first triumvirate. He was noted for his enormous wealth. At *Carrhae* he fell in battle against the Parthians.

Crētes, -um ; N. m. pl. : *the Cretans* : the inhabitants of Crete (now *Candia*), an island in the eastern part of the Mediterranean Sea, celebrated for their skill in archery.

Curiosolĭtae, -ārum ; N. m. pl. : *the Curiosolitae*, an Armoric nation in Gaul, north of the Veneti and northwest of the Redones. They occupied the district of the modern *St. Malo*, between *Dinant* and *Lambelle*, in Brittany : B. II., Chap. XXXIV.

D.

Dacus, -i ; m.: *a Dacian*. The Dacians occupied the S.E. provinces of the modern Kingdom of Austria.

Danūbius, -i ; m.: *the Danube*, the great river of Central Europe.

Dĕcĭmus, -i ; N. sing. m. : *Decimus*, a Roman *praenomen*.

Dĕcŭmānus, -a, -um; adj.: *Decuman*, a name given to one of the gates of a Roman camp.

Dīāblintes, -ĭum; N. pl. m.: *the Diablintes*, a branch of the Aulerci (see *Aulerci*).

Dis, Ditis; m.: *Pluto*, the god of the lower world.

Dīvĭco, -ōnis; N. m.: an influential noble among the Helvetii. He was the leader of the embassy sent to Caesar by the Helvetii after their defeat.

Dīvĭtiăcus, -i; N. m.: a leading nobleman of the Aedui, who possessed great influence with Caesar in consequence of his fidelity and attachment to the Romans.

Dubis, -is; N. m.: *the Dubis* (now the *Doubs*), was a river of Gaul, rising in the chain of Jura, and falling after a course of sixty leagues into the Arar (now *Saône*), near Cabillonum (now *Chalons*): B. I., Chap. XXXVIII.

Domitius, -i; m.: L. Domitius Abenobarbus, consul with Appuis Claudius Pulche, B.C. 54.

Druĭdes, -um; m. pl.: *the Druids* or priests of the ancient Britons and other Keltic tribes. The probable derivation is from the Keltic *der*, "an oak"; wydd, "mistletoe," and dyn, "a man"; hence "the man who gains supernatural information from the mistletoe on the oak."

Dumnŏrix, -īgis; N. m.: a powerful and ambitious chieftain of the Aedui, and brother of Divitiacus. He was disaffected towards Caesar and the Romans, and when the former was on the point of setting out to Britain, and had ordered Dumnorix to accompany him, the Aeduan on a sudden marched away with his cavalry. He was overtaken and slain.

Durocortorum, -i; n.: capital of the Remi, now *Rhenni*, situated on the Vele, a branch of the Aisnè.

E.

Ebūrōnes, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Eburones*, a nation of Gallia Belgica, to the s.w. of the Ubii. Caesar mentions them as Germans. Their territory lay on both sides of the Mosa (*Meuse*), from the modern *Liege* to *Aix-la-Chapelle*. Their chief town was Aduatuca: B. II., Chap. IV.

Ebūrŏvīces, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Eburovices*, a branch of the Aulerci; (see *Aulerci*).

Elŭsātes, -ĭum; N. pl. m.: *the Elusates*, a people of Aquitania, to the northwest of the Volcae Tectosages. Their chief town was Elusa (now *Euse*): B. III., Chap. XXVII.

Eratosthĕnes, -is; m.: a Greek born at Cyrene, in Africa, B.C. 276; appointed librarian to the Alexandrian library and died in 692 B.C. of starvation because he was tired of life. He acquired fame as a geographer, mathematician and critic.

Esŭbĭī, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Esubii*, a people in the Alpes Maritimae, north of the Edenates. They are sometimes called Esubiani. The river *Ubaye* runs through what was formerly their territory: B. III., Chap. VII.

Essui, -orum; m. pl.: a people of Gaul, supposed to be the same as the Saii, and lying on the north side of the Diablintes and Cenomani. Their chief city was Saii (now *Seez*), on the River Olina (now *Orne*).

F.

Fabius, -i; m.: Caius Fabius, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Flaccus, -i; N. m.: *Flaccus*, a Roman *praenomen.*

G.

Gabīnĭus, -i; N. m.: *Aulus Gabinius* was tribune of the Commons 69 B.C., and proposed the *lex Gabina* giving Pompey complete charge of the Roman fleet in the war against the pirates.

Galba, -ae; N. sing. m.: *Servius Galba*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Galba, -ae; N. m.: *Galba*, King of the Suessiones, appointed commander of the Belgic forces. After the victory of Caesar, his sons were delivered up to the Roman general as hostages: B. II, Chap. IV, XIII. His name is derived from the German *gelb*, "yellow," or from *kalb*, "a calf."

Galli, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: the inhabitants of *Gallia*; the Gauls.

Gallĭa, -ae; N. f.: *Gaul*, corresponding to France and the northern Italian provinces of Piedmont, Venetia, and Lombardy. Gaul was divided in *Gallia Transalpina*, or *Ulterior*, or Gaul beyond the Alps, comprising nearly all France; and *Gallia, Cisalpina*, or *Citerior*, or Gaul, this side of the Alps, *i.e.*, Northern Italy.

Gallĭcus, -a -um; adj.: *Gallic*: of or belonging to Gallia.

Gallus, -i; N. sing. m.: *a Gaul.*

Garītes, -ium; N. pl. m.: *the Garites*, a people of Aquitania, between the Elusates and Ausci, in part of *Gascony*, or the more modern department of *du Gers.*

Garumni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Garumni*, a Gallic tribe, near the head waters of the Garumna (*Garonne*), in the department of *de la Haute-Garonne.*

Gărumna, -ae; N. f.: now the *Garonne*, a river of Gaul. It runs from the Pyrenees (*montes Pyrenaei*) and empties into the Bay of Biscay (*Oceanus Cantabricus*). According to Caesar, the Garumna separated Aquitania from Gallia Celtica.

Gĕnāva, -ae; N. f.: a city of the Allobroges, at the western extremity of Lake Lemmanus (*Geneva*) on the south bank of the river Rhodanus (*Rhone*).

Geiduni, -ōrum; m. pl.: *the Geiduni* or *Gorduni*, a people of Belgic Gaul on the sea coast, above the Morini.

Germāni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *Germans.*

Germānĭa, -ae; N. f.: a district of Central Europe inhabited by the Germans. The word is probably from either (1) *wer*, "war" (the Romans softening the *w* to *g*) and *mann*, "a man," so the Germani means "warriors," or (2) from the Celtic *gerr*, "war," and *mann*, "a man." Other derivations are given.

Graecus, -a, -um; adj.: *Grecian*, a name given to an inhabitant of Greece, a country of Southern Europe.

Graiŏcēli, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a tribe of Gaul dwelling near the Alps.

Grudii, -ōrum; m. pl.: a Belgic tribe, subject to the Nervii, whose territories lay between the *Scaldis* (Scheldt) and the ocean. Their name still survives in the modern *land van Groede* (district of *Groede*), above *l'Ecluse* on the north.

H.

Harūdes, -um; N. pl. m.: a German tribe, in the vicinity of the Marcomanni, between the Rhine and the head waters of the river Danube. This district was in the vicinity of the present cities of *Rothweil* and *Fursternberg*.

Helvētĭus, -a, -um; adj.: *Helvetian*.

Helvētĭi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a nation of Gaul conquered by Caesar. It is generally supposed that Helvetia corresponded to modern *Switzerland*, but the boundaries of the ancient province were of less extent than the modern Switzerland, being bounded on the north by the Rhenus and Lake Brigantinus (*Constance*); on the south by the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) and Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*), and on the west by Mt. Jura.

Hercynia (scil. *Silva*): an extensive forest in Germania. According to Caesar, the breadth was a nine days' journey, while the length exceeded sixty. It extended from the territories of the Helvetii, Nemates and Rauraci, along the Danube to the country of the Daci and Anartes. It included the present *Black Forest*, which separates Alsace from Suabia; the *Steiger* in Franconia; the *Spissard* and *Odenwald* on the borders of Hesse Darmstadt; the *Thuringer* in Thuringia; the *Bohemerwald*, forming the boundary of Bohemia, and the *Hartz* mountains in Lunenburg. The word is said to be from the German word *hartz*, "resin," and still remains in the present *Hartz*, or from *hart*, "high."

Hibernia, -ae, f.: Ireland; for the derivation see note on B. V., Chap. XIII.

Hispānĭa, -ae; N. f.: *Spain*. The name is derived from a corrupt form of Hesperia (ἑσπερια) "the western land": cp. ἑσπερος, "the evening star"; *vesper*, "evening." From Hesperia comes Latin Hispania, Spanish Espagña, English Spain.

I.

Iccĭus, -i; N. m.: *Iccius*, a nobleman of the Remi, sent along with Andocumborius on an embassy to acknowledge the submission of their nation to Caesar.

Indutiomărus, -i; m.: a leading man among the Treveri and rival of Cingetorix, who sided with the Romans.

Illyrĭcum, -i: N. n.: *Illyricum*, the modern district occupied by *Dalmatia*, *Bosnia*, *Herzegovina*.

Itălĭa, -ae; N. f.: Italy; a country of Southern Europe.

Itius, -i; m.; a harbour of Gaul, said to be the modern *Boulogne*.

Iūnĭus, -i; m.: Quintus Iunius, one of Caesar's officers.

Iuppĭter, Iŏvis; m.: Iuppiter, son of Saturn, chief of the Roman gods.

Iūra, -ae; N. f.: a range of mountains extending from the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) to the Rhenus (*Rhine*) and separating the territory of the Helvetii from that of the Sequani. The word is from the Celtic, *Jou-rag*, "*the domain of God*" or "*Juppiter*."

L.

Laberius, -i; m.: Quintus Laberius Durcus, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

Lăbĭēnus, -i; N. m.: *Titus Labienus* was one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war. In the beginning of the civil wars he left Caesar for Pompey. He escaped at Pharsalia, but fell at Munda.

Lātŏbrĭges, -um; or **Latobrĭgi, -ōrum**; N. m. pl.: a people of Belgic Gaul. They extended along the banks of the Rhine, about ninety miles west of Lake Brigantinus (*Constance*).

Lemannus, -i; N. m.: now Lake of *Geneva*, separating the territory of the Helvetii from that of Gaul. It is about 45 miles long by 11 wide.

Lĕŏpontĭi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Leopontii*, a Gallic tribe dwelling near the sources of the Rhine among the Leopontine Alps, which separated Italy from Helvetia. Their district corresponded to the Val Levantina, that part of the Alps.

Lexovĭi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Lexovii*, a nation of Keltic Gaul, on the coast below the mouth of the Sequana. Their capital was Noviomagus, afterwards called Lexovii (now *Lisieux*): B. III, Chap. IX, XVII; B. VII, Chap. LXXV.

Levoci, -ōrum; m. pl.: a nation of Belgic Gaul on the river Scaldis (*Scheldt*) and northwest of the Nervii, lying between these and the Grudii. Their territory in part forms the present *Louvanie.*

Lĕucī, -ōrum; *the Leuci*, a people of Gallia Belgica.

Lingŏnes, -um; N. m. pl.: a people of Gaul, whose territories included Mons Vosgesus (*Vosges*), and consequently, the source of the Mosa (*Meuse*) and Matrona (*Marne*). They had a town named also *Lingones*(now *Langres*) and their territory corresponded to the modern department of *de la Haute-Marne.*

Lĭger, -ĕris; N. sing. m.: *the Loire*, the largest river in Gaul. It rises in Mons Cebennus (now *Cevennes*), and for the one half of its course was directly north, then turns to the west and falls into the Atlantic between the territories of the Pictones and the Nannetes. The Liger receives numerous tributaries, the most remarkable of which are the Elaver (now *Allier*), Carus (now *Cher*), Andria (now *Indre*) and Vincennia (now *Vienne*).

Liscus, -i; m.: the chief magistrate or Vergobret of the Aedui, who gave information to Caesar of the conduct and designs of Dumnorix.

Liscus, -i; N. m.: *Liscus* was chief magistrate or Vergobret of the Aedui, who gave to Caesar information of the conduct and designs of Dumnorix.

Lucanius, -i; m.: Quintus Lucanius, a brave centurion.

Lucĭus: Lucius, a Roman *praenomen.*

Lugotorix, -ĭgis; m.: a British chief who was captured in an attack on Caesar's camp.

Lutētia, -aè; f.: the capital of the Parisii, on an island of the Sequana (*Seine*), now *Paris.* The city first began to be of importance under the first French Kings and was extended to both banks of the river, the island being connected with them by bridges.

M.

M. = **Marcus**: a Roman *praenomen.*

Măgĕtōbrĭa, -ae; N. f.: a town, near which Ariovistus defeated the combined forces o the Gauls. Some say it corresponds to the modern *Moigte de Broie*, near the village of *Pontailler:* others to Bingium, now *Bingen.*

Mandrubatius, -i; m.: the chief of the Trinobantes in Britain, who attached himself t cCaesar.

Marcomāni, -ōrum: *the Marcomani*, a German people. The word is from German *mark;* English *march:* hence the name means *march*, or, *border men.*

Marcus: a Roman *praenomen.*

Mărĭus, -i; N. m.: *Caius Marius*, a celebrated Roman general, opponent of Sulla. (See Roman History.)

Mars, Martis; m.: Mars, the Roman god of war.

Matrŏna, -ae; N. f.: a river of Gaul, now the *Marne*, which formed part of the old boundary between *Gallia Belgica* and *Gallia Celtica.*

Meldi, -ōrum; m. pl.: a nation of *Gallia Belgica* occupying both sides of the river Rhine; their chief town was *Menapiorum Castellum*, now *Kessel.*

Mĕnăpĭi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Menapii*, a nation of Gallia Belgica, occupying both sides of the lower Rhine. Their fortress was called *Castellum Menapiorum* (now *Kessel*) on the Mosa (*Meuse*): B. II., Chap. IV.

Mercurĭus, -i; m.: Mercury, the Roman god, patron of traders thieves; and also the god of eloquence and messenger of Iuppiter. The name is from *merces*, "gain.'

Municius, -i; m.: *L. Municius Rufus*, one of Caesar's officers in the war against Ambiorix, and afterwards stationed in winter quarters among the Remi. He sided with Caesar in the civil war, but afterwards became one of Caesar's assassins. The year after Caesar's death, B.C. 43, he was killed by his own slaves.

Mona, -ae; f.: the isle of Anglesey. See note B. V., Chap. XIII.

Moritasgus, -i; m.: chief of the Senones, brother of Cavarinus.

Munatius, -i; m.: *L. Munatius Plancus*, a lieutenant of Caesar's, appointed with M. Crassus and C. Trebonius to the command of the three legions that wintered in Gaul.

Messāla, -ae; N. m.: *Marcus Valerius Messala* was consul along with Marcus Piso B.C. 61.

Mettĭus, -i; N. m.: *Mettius*, a Roman officer in Caesar's army.

Mōrĭni, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: *the Morini*, a tribe of Gallia Belgica, whose territory ay in the district of Calais and Dunkirk, a part of their territory bordering on the sea. The name means "sea people": being derived from the Celtic *mor*, "the sea": cp. Lat. *mare.*

Mŏsa, -ae; N. sing. m.: *the Meuse*, a river of Gaul, rising among the Lingones, a little west of Mt. Vosgesus, and falling into the Vahali. (now *Waal*): B. IV., Chap. X.

N.

Namēius, -i; N. m.: a chieftain of the Helvetii, sent along with Verudoctius at the head of an embassy to Caesar.

Nannētes, -ium; N. pl. m.: *the Nannetes*, a people of *Gallia Celtica* who dwelt about the district of the modern Nantes.

Nantŭātes, -iŭm; N. pl. m.: *the Nantuates*, a people who dwelt in the neighbourhood of Geneva.

Narbo, -ōnis; N. sing. m.: *Narbo*, an important city of Gaul on the river Atax (now *Aude*). It was subsequently the capital of the province of *Gallia Narbonensis*: B. III., Chap. XX.; B. VII., Chap. VII.; B. VIII., Chap. XL., VI.

Nasŭa, -ae; N. m.: Nasua, a chief of the Suevi.

Nemētes, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Nemetes*, a German tribe, along the west bank of the river Rhine occupying part of the *Grand Duchy of Baden*. Their chief town was Noviomagus (now *Spires*).

Nervĭcus, -a, -um; adj.: of or belonging to the *Nervii.*

Nervii, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Nervii*, a powerful nation of Gallia Belgica, whose territory was N.E. of that of the Atrebates. The river Scaldis (now *Scheldt*) passed through part of their territories. Their chief town was Bagacum (now *Baray*), which was afterwards supplanted by Cameracum (now *Cambray*) and Turnacum (now *Tournay*).

Noreia, -ae; N. f.: the capital of Noricum.

Norica: see Noricum.

Nŏrĭcum, -i; N. n.: a province of the Roman empire, bounded on the north by the Danube, on the west by Vindelicia and Rhaetia, on the east by Pannonia and on the south by Illyricum and Gallia Cisalpina. The chief town was Noreia, the capital of Norica or the Norici. It was in days of Caesar besieged by the Boii.

Norĭcus, -a, -um; adj.: of or belonging to *Noricum.*

Nŏvĭōdūnum, -i; N. n.: *Noviodunum.* There were three towns of this name in Gaul: (1) Noviodunum Suessionum, a town of the Suessiones, now *Soissons*: (2) Noviodunum Aeduorum, belonging to the Aedui, on the banks of Liger (*Loire*), now *Nevers*: (3) Noviodunum Biturigum, a city of the Bituriges, now *Neury-sur-Baranjon.*

Nŭmĭdae, -ārum; N. pl. m.: *the Numidians*, a people of Northern Africa, employed in the Roman armies as light skirmishers.

O.

Ocĕănus, -i; N. m.: the Atlantic *Ocean.*

Ocēlum, -i; N. m.: a city among the Cottian Alps; now *Usseau* in *Piedmont.*

Octodūrus, -i; N. sing. m.: now *Martigny* or *Martinach*, the chief town of the Veragri: B. III., Chap. I.

Orgĕtŏrix, -ĭgis; N. m.: a nobleman among the Helvetii, ranking first, according to Caesar, in birth and riches. Full of ambition, he formed a conspiracy among the nobles and prevailed on his people to seek a country other than their native land. He was chosen to carry out the plans of the conspirators. His conduct fell under suspicion and he was put on trial. By the aid of his retainers he managed to rescue himself, but shortly afterwards died, as was suspected, by his own hand.

Osismĭi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Osismii*, a people of *Gallia Celtica*, in the N. W. of Gaul. They occupied the part of modern *Brittany*, around Cape Finisterre. In their country was Brivates Portus (now *Brest*).

P.

P=Publius: a Roman *praenomen*.

Pādus, -i; m.: *the Po*, the largest river of Italy. It rises in Mons Vesulus (*Mt. Viso*), near the source of the Druentia (now *Drouce*), runs in an easterly direction for more than 500 miles and discharges its waters into the Adriatic about 30 miles south of the Portus Venetus (modern *Venice*).

Paemāni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Paemani*, a people of Gallia Belgica, their territory lay on the eastern side of the Mosa (*Meuse*), not far from the modern *Liege*: B. II., Chap. IV.

Parisii, -ōrum; n. pl.: *the Parisii*, a Gallic tribe, south of the Carnutes and Senones, their chief city was *Lutetia Parisiorum*, now *Paris*.

Pedĭus, -i; N. m.: *Quintus Pedius*, a nephew or great-nephew of Caesar. He is spoken of as one of the *legati* of Caesar: B. II., Chap. II.

Petrosĭdĭus, -i; m.: *Lucius Petrosidius*, a standard bearer in Caesar's army.

Pictŏnes, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Pictones*, a Gallic tribe along the southern bank of the Liger (*Loire*). Their chief town was *Lominum*, afterwards Pictones (now *Poitiers*), in the department *de la Vienne*. They occupied the district of the modern *Poitou*.

Pirustae, -ārum; m. pl.: a tribe in Illyricum.

Piso, -onis; N. sing. m.: an Aquitanian. See B. IV., C. XII.

Piso, -ōnis; N. m.: *Lucius Piso*, consul 61 B.C., with M. Messala.

Piso, -ōnis; N. m.: *Lucius Piso* was consul 112 B. C. Five years after he served as lieutenant under the consul Cassius, but was slain, together with him, by the Tugurini. He was ancestor of L. Piso, Caesar's father-in-law.

Plancus, -i; m.: *L. Munatius Plancus*, a lieutenant of Caesar's army.

Pleumonii, -ōrum; m. pl.: a Gallic tribe N.E. of the Atrebates, dependents of the Nervii in West Flanders, west of the Suessiones.

Pompeĭus, -ī; N. sing. m.: *Cneius Pompeius*, the Roman triumvir. (See Roman history.)

Praecōnīnus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Praeconinus*, a Roman *cognomen*.

Prĕcĭāni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Preciani*, a people of *Aquitania*.

Prōvincĭa, -ae; N. sing. f.: *the Provincia*, the southern part of Gaul, called afterwards *Gallia Braccata* and *Gallia Narbonensis*.

Publĭus, -i; N. sing. m.: a Roman *praenomen*.

Pulio, -ōnis; m.: a centurion of Caesar's, rival of Vorenus.

Pyrennaei (scil. *montes*): *the Pyrenees*, a range of mountains separating Gaul from Spain. The derivation of the word is from the Celtic *pyren* or *pyrn*, "a high mountain." From this root may be derived *Brenner* in the Tyrol; *Pyern*, in Austria; *Fernor*, in the Tyrol.

Q.

Q=Quintus: a Roman *praenomen*.

R.

Raurăci, -orum; N. m.: a Gallic tribe above the Helvetii and between the Sequani and the Rhine. Their chief town was Rauracum, afterwards called Augusta Rauracorum, and now *Augst*, a small village near *Basle*.

Rĕdŏnes, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Redones*, a tribe of Gallia Lugdunensis, occupying the district near the modern *Rennes*.

Rēmi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Remi*, a powerful Gallic nation whose capital was Dūrŏcortŏrum, the modern *Rheims*.

Rhēnus, -i; N. m.: *the Rhine*, rising in the Leopontine Alps, a little above *Mt. St. Gothard*, in the country of the *Grisons*. It passes through Lake Brigantinus (*Constance*), afterwards through Lake Acronius (*Tell*), nearly west to Basilia (*Basle*). At this point it flows northerly, receiving various tributary streams, till it enters the North Sea. The derivation is from the Aryan root *sru*, "to flow."

Rhŏdănus, -i; N. m.: *the Rhone*, a river rising in the Lepontine Alps, not more than two leagues from the sources of the Rhine. It passes through Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*), and flows in a swift current to the Sinus Gallicus (*Gulf of Lyons*). The word is derived also from the Aryan root *sru*, to flow."

Rōma, -ae; N. f.: *Rome*: (derived from *sru*, "to flow," properly *Srouma*, "the stream town").

Rōmānus, -a, -um: *Roman*.

Roscius, -i; m.: *Lucius Roscius*, one of Caesar's officers sent to winter with a legion in the territory of the Esubii.

Rutēni, -ōrum; N. pl.: *the Ruteni*, a people of *Gallia Aquitania*.

S.

Sabīnus, -i; N. m.: *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, one of the *legati* of Caesar.

Sabis, -is; N. m.: the Sabis (now *Sambre*), a river of Gallia Belgica, rising among the Nervii, and joining the Mosa (*Meuse*) in the territory of the Aduatuci.

Samarobrīva, -ae; f.: a town of the Ambiani on the Samara (*Somme*), hence called Ambiani (now *Amiens*).

Santŏni, -ōrum; or **Santŏnes, -um**: N. m. pl.: a people of Gallia Celtica, whose territories lay between the Pictones on the north and the Garumna on the south. Their chief town was Mediolanum, called Santones, now *Saintes*.

Scaldis, -is; m.: now the *Scheldt*, a river of Belgic Gaul, rising about 15 miles south of Camaracum (now *Cambray*) and falling into the German Ocean near the modern island of *Walcheren*.

Sedūni, -ōrum; pl. m.: a people of Helvetia, to the S.E. of Lacus Lemannus (lake of *Geneva*), and occupying the head waters of the Rhine. Their chief town was Sedūnum (now *Sion* or *Sitten*).

Segontĭăci, -ōrum; pl. m.: a people of Britain, living probably in *Hampshire*.

Segonax, -ācis; m.: one of the four rulers of Kent at the time of Caesar's invasion.

Senŏnes, -um; pl. m.: a powerful nation of Gallia Celtica, to the northwest of the Aedui.

Sedūsĭi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Sedusii*: a German tribe, forming part of the army of Ariovistus.

Segūsĭāni, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: a people of Gallia Celtica to the south of the Aedui and in whose territory lay the city of Lugdunum (*Lyons*). The chief town of their tribe was Forum Segusianorum (now *Feurs*).

Sĕnŏnĕs, -um; N. pl.: *the Senones*, a people of Gallia Lugdunensis, whose capital was Agendicum (now *Lens*).

Sēquăna, -ae; N. f.: a river of Gaul, rising in the extreme northern part of the territory of the Aedui and falling into the Oceanus Britannicus (*English Channel*).

Sēquănus, -a, -um; adj.: *a Sequanian*. The Sequani were a people of Gallia Celtica. They called in the aid of Ariovistus to aid them against the Aedui. After the defeat of their German allies, they severely felt the power of the Aedui. Caesar, however, restored them to their former power. Their chief town was Vesontio (now *Besançon*).

Sesūvĭi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Sesuvii*, a people of Gallia Celtica, who occupied the modern diocese of *Séez*.

Sextĭus, i-; N. sing. m.: *Sextius*, a Roman name.

Sibuzates, -ĭum; N. pl. m.: *the Sibuzates*, a people, *Gallia Aquitanica*.

Silanus, -i; m.: *Marcus Silanus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Silius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Silius*, a Roman name.

Sotĭātes, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Sotiates*, a people of *Gallia Aquitanica*.

Sulpitius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Sulpitius*, a Roman name.

Suēvi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Suevi*, a powerful tribe of northern and eastern Germany. Their name still exists in *Suabia*.

Sugambri, -ōrum; m. pl.: a German nation, in Caesar's time dwelling near the Rhine, but whose earlier settlements appear to have been further inland.

Sŭessĭōnes, -um.; N. pl. m.: *the Suessiones*, a Gallic people who occupied the district around the modern town of *Soissons*.

Suēvus, -a, -um; adj.: of, or belonging to the *Suevi*, a powerful tribe in North-eastern Germany.

Sulla, -ae; N. m.: Lucius Cornelius Sulla, a celebrated Roman. He served as quaestor to Marius in Africa and afterwards was the great political opponent of his old commander. After gaining the highest offices of the State, he gave up the dictatorship, and died B.C. 79.

T.

T. = Titus: a Roman *praenomen*.

Tamĕsis, -is; m.: the *Thames*.

Tarbelli, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Tarbelli*, a people of Aquitanian Gaul.

Tarŭsātes, -ĭum; N. pl. m.: *the Tarusates*, a people of Aquitanian Gaul.

Tasgetius, -i; m.: the chief of the Carnutes, whom Caesar restored to supreme power.

Taximagulus, -i; m.: a British prince, one of the four kings of Kent.

Tectosāges, -um; m. pl.: a division of the Volcae, who lived in the western part of the province. Their capital was Tolosa (now *Toulouse*).

Tenchthĕri, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Tenchtheri*, a German city on the Rhine.

Terrasĭdĭus, -i; N. sing. m.: *Titus Terrasidius*, a Roman officer in Caesar's army.

Teutŏnes, -um; also **Teutŏni, -ōrum**; N. pl. m.: a name given to a branch of the great Germanic family. Along with the Cimbri they devastated northern Italy and Gaul from 113 to 102 B.C.

Tibrocci, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Tibrocci*, a people of Germanic origin. Their capital was Brocomagus (now *Brumt*).

Tigŭrīnus, -a, -um; adj.: a canton of the Helvetii, near Lake *Zurich*.

Tĭtūrĭus: see Sabinus.

Tĭtūrĭus, -ĭi; N. sing. m.: *Titurius*, a Roman name.

Tolōsa, -ae; N. sing. f.: *Tolosa* (now *Toulouse*), a tribe in southern Gaul.

Tŏlŏsātes, -um; N. pl.: a people of Aquitania. Their chief town was *Tolosa* (now *Toulouse*).

Transrhēnāni, -a, -um; see *Transrhenanus*.

Transrhēnanus, -a, -um; [*trans*, "across"; *Rhēnus*, "the Rhine";]: *a dweller across the Rhine, that which is across the Rhine.*

Trebonĭus, -i; m.: *Caius Trebonius*, a Roman knight.

Trēvĕri (also Trēvĭri), -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Treveri*, a nation of Gallia Belgica N.E. of the Rhine, between the Mosa (*Meuse*) and the Rhenus (*Rhine*); their chief city was Augusta Treverorum (now *Treves*).

Trĭbrŏci, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Tribroci*, a German tribe on the left bank of the Rhine, in the modern Alsace.

Tulingi, -ōrum; N. pl.: a German tribe, whose territories lay to the north of the Helvetii. The modern *Stuhlingen* marks the site of the ancient capital.

Turōnes, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Turones*, a powerful nation of Gallia Celtica, which lay along the banks of the Liger (*Loire*). Their capital was Caesarodunum, afterwards Turones now (*Tours*).

U.

Ubii, -um, m. pl.: a German nation on the right bank of the Rhine. During the reign of Augustus they were removed by Agrippa to the opposite or left bank in Gaul. At a subsequent period Agrippina, the mother of Nero, established a colony of veterans in their territory, called by her *Colonia Agrippinae* (now *Cologne*).

Unelli, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Unelli*, a people to the N.W. of what is now *Normandy*. Their chief town was Coriallum (now *Gouril*).

Usĭpĕtes, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Usipetes*, a German tribe near the Tenchtheri, originally in Saxony.

V.

Valerius, -i; m.: *Valerius*, a Roman *nomen*.

Văhălis, -is; N. sing. m.: *the Vahalis* (now *Waal*) forming the left arm of the Rhine.

Vălĕrĭus, -i; N. m.: *Valerius*: a Roman *praenomen*.

Vangĭōnes, -um; N. pl. m.: *the Vangiones*, a German people on the Rhine in the neighbourhood of the modern *Worms*.

Velānius, -ĭi; N. sing. m.: *Velanius*, an officer in Caesar's army.

Velŏcasses, -ĭum; N. pl. m.: *the Velocasses*, also called *Bellocasii*, a people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was Rotomagus (now *Rouen*) on the north bank of the Sequana (*Seine*).

Vĕnĕti, -ōrum; N.pl. m.: *th Veneti*, a people of Gallia Cisalpina, in the district of modern *Venetia*.

Vĕnĕti, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Veneti*, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the western extremity, above *Nannetes*, and the mouth of the Liger (*Loire*), and bordering on the Atlantic. They were the most powerful among the Armoric states, and were conspicuous for their skill in navigation. Their chief town was Darioigum, afterwards called Veneti (now *Vannes*).

Vĕnĕtĭa, -ae; N. sing. f.: see *Veneti*.

Vĕnĕtĭcus, -a, -um; adj.: see *Veneti*.

Vĕrāgri, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Veragri*, a tribe who dwelt amid the Alps. Their chief town was Octodurus (now *Martigny* or *Martinach*).

Veromandŭi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: *the Veromandui*, a people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was Augusta Veromanduorum (now *St. Quentin*), in the old division of France called *Veromandois*.

Vĕrŭdoctĭus, -i; N.m.: a chief of the Helvetii, sent along with Nameius was at the head of an embassy to Caesar. Their object was to request permission to march through the Roman province.

Veromandui, -ōrum ; pl. m.: a people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was Augusta Veromanduorum (now *St. Quetin*), in the old division of France, *Veromandois.*

Vertico, -ōnis; m.: a Nervian nobleman, friendly to the Romans.

Vīrĭdovix, -icis ; N. sing. m.: *Viridovix*, a chief of the Unelli.

Vocātes, -ĭum ; N. pl. m.: *the Vocates*, a people of Aquitanian Gaul.

Voctio, -onis ; m.: a king of Noricum : whose sister was wife of Ariovistus.

Vocontii, -ōrum : a tribe of Southern Gaul, lying to the east of the Rhine. Their chief town was Dea (now *Die*).

Vŏlŭsēnus, -i ; N. sing. m.: *Volusenus*, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

Vorenus, -i ; m.: a Roman centurion, rival of Palis.

Volcatius, -i ; m.: *Caius Volcatius Tullus*, one of Caesar's officers left in charge of the bridge over the Rhine, while Caesar went in pursuit of the Suebi.

Vŏsĕgus (also **Vosgēsus**), -i ; N. sing. m.: *Vosegus* (now *Vosges*), a mountain chain in Gaul.

VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

a.	active.
abl.	ablative.
acc.	accusative
adv.	adverb.
card.	cardinal.
cf.	confer, *i.e.*, compare.
comm.	common gender.
comp.	comparative.
conj.	conjunction.
demonstr.	demonstrative.
dep.	deponent.
dim.	diminutive.
distrib.	distributive.
e. g.	exempli gratiâ (for instance).
=	meaning the same as.
f.	feminine gender.
freq.	frequentative.
impers.	impersonal, -ly.
incep.	inceptive.
indecl.	indeclinable.
interrog.	interrogative.
irreg.	irregular.
m.	masculine gender.
n.	neuter, neuter gender
num.	numeral.
opp.	opposed to in meaning
ord.	ordinal.
p.	page.
part.	participle.
pass.	passive.
pl., or plur.	plural.
prep.	preposition.
pron.	pronoun.
rel.	relative.
sc.	scilicet (one must understand).
sq.	sequens (and the following).
sing.	singular.
subst.	substantive.
sup.	superlative.
usu.	usually.
v.	verb.
v. or V.	vide (look at).

VOCABULARY.

A.

a. d. = ante diem, a phrase used in reckoning the days of the month.

a, ab, abs, prep. w. abl., *by, from, at, etc.*; **a dextro cornu**, *on the right wing*: **a tergo**, *in the rear*; sometimes a, ab, is used as an adv.: **ab millibus passuum octo** = eight miles *off*.

ab-do, ĕre, abdĭdi, abdĭtum, *to hide.*

ab-dūco, ducĕre, duxi, ductum, *lead away.*

ab-ĕo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to go away.*

ab-futurus, fut. part. of **ab-sum.**

ăbĭcĭo (abj.) ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to cast* or *throw away, throw down.*

ăbĭēs, ĕtis, f., *fir.*

ab-iungo (abjungo), ĕre, nxi, nctum, *to separate, detach, disjoin.*

ab-rĭpio, ĕre, ripui, reptum, *to tear away; carry off by force.* [rapio.]

abs-cīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum, *cut off, cut away.* [caedo.]

absens, -tis, pres. part. of absum, *absent.*

absimilis, e, adj., *unlike.*

ab-sisto, ĕre, abstĭti, *to desist, stand aloof from.*

abs-tineo, ēre, tinui, tentum *hold back; abstain from; spare.* [teneo.]

abs-trăho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, *drag away; take away by force.*

absum, abesse, abfŭi, fut. inf., abfore or abfuturus esse, *to be away from, be absent, be distant.*

abundo, are, avi, atum, *overflow; abound in; be well supplied with.* [unda, a wave.]

ac (=atque), conj., *and, and moreover.*

accēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to come* or *go near, to approach; to be added.*

accelero, are, avi, atum, *make haste; quicken; hurry.*

accerso (=arcesso), ĕre, īvi, ītum, *to send for, summon.* [ad-cēdo.]

accĭdo, ĕre, cĭdi, no sup., *to happen; turn out; fall to the lot of,* [ad-cado.]

accīdo, ĕre cīdi, cīsum, *to cut into.* [ad-caedo.]

accĭpio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to receive; to learn.* [ad-capio.]

acclīvis, e, adj., *sloping upwards; ascending.* [clivus.]

acclīvitās tātis, *an upward slope; an ascent.*

accommŏdātus, a, um, pf. pass. part. of accommodo, *suited, adapted.*

accommŏdo, are, avi, atum, *fit, adapt, adjust.*

accūrāte, adv., comp. -tius, *carefully, exactly.*

ac-curro, ĕre, cucurri or curri, cursum, *run to, hasten to.*

ac-cuso, are, avi, atum, *accuse, blame reproach.* [ad, causa.]

ācer, ācris, ācrĕ, adj., *sharp, keen, energetic, violent.*

ăcerbē, adv., *sharply, bitterly, harshly.*

ăcerbitās, tātis, *sharpness, bitterness, sorrow, trouble, hardship.*

ăcerbus, a, um, *harsh, bitter, cruel, severe, disagreeable.*

ācerrĭme. *V.* acriter.

ăcervus, i, m, *a heap, pile.*

ăcĭes, ēi, f., *a sharp point or edge*; *keenness* or *fierceness* of the eye; *line of battle, battle array.* [root AC sharp; "a thin line."]

acquīro, ĕre, quīsīvi, quīsītum, *to gain, obtain, procure.*

ācrĭter, adv., *fiercely, sharply,* comp. acrius: sup. acerrime. [acer.]

actuārĭus, a, um, adj,, *impelled by oars.* [ago.]

actus, pf. part. of *ago.*

acuo, acuĕre, -ui, ūtum, *sharpen.*

acūtus, a, um, pf. part. of acuo, as adj., *sharp, pointed.*

ad, prep. w. acc., *to, towards, up to*; *by, near to.*

ădactus. *V.* adigo.

ăd-aequo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make equal to*; *to equal, rival.*

ad-ămo, āre, āvi, ātum, *conceive an affection for, love, covet.*

ad-augeo, ēre, auxi, auctum, *to increase.*

ad-do, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to add.*

ad-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead to, bring to, induce.*

ădemptus. *V.* adimo.

ăd-ĕo, īre, ĭi, ĭtum, *to go to, approach.*

ădĕo, adv., *to this degree, thus, thus far, so.*

adeptus, pf. part. of **adipiscor.**

adĕquito, are, avi, atum, *ride up to*; *ride towards.* [eques.]

adfectus. *V.* adficio.

adfero. *V.* affero.

ad-ficio. *V.* afficio.

adflictus. *V.* adfligo.

ad-flīgo, flīgĕre, flixi, flictum, *to cast* or *throw down.*

ad-grĕgo, are, avi, atum, *to add to a flock*; adgregare se, *to attach oneself.* [ad, grex, grego.]

ad-haereo, ēre, haesi, haesum, *to stick to.*

ad-haeresco, ĕre, haesi, haesum, *stick to*; *adhere to.*

ad-hĭbeo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *bring in, call in, invite, to have* (one up) *to, to summon, employ, consult.* [ad, habeo.]

ad-hortor, ari, atus, *to encourage, urge on.*

adhuc, adv., *as yet*; *hitherto*; *still*; *up to this time.*

ad-ĭăceo, ēre, iacui, no sup., *to lie near to*; with dat.

adicio (adjicio), ĕre, iēci, iectum, *throw to, throw upon, add.* [iacio.]

ad-ĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *to bring* or *drive to*; *drive home.* [ad, ago.]

ăd-ĭmo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, *to take away, deprive of.* [ad, emo.]

ad-ĭpiscor, i, eptus, *to gain, obtain.*

adĭtus, ūs, m., *a going to, access, approach.* [ad, eo.]

adiūdico, are, avi, atum, *adjudge, award, assign.*

ad-iungo, ĕre, nxi, nctum, *to join to.*

ad-iūtor, ōris, m., *a helper.*

ad-iŭvo, are, iūvi, iūtum, *to aid.*

admātūro, are, avi, atum, *ripen, mature*; *hasten.*

ad-mĭnister, tri, m., *an attendant, agent.*

ad-mĭnistro, are, avi, atum, *to manage.*

admirandus, a, um, gerundive of admiror, *wonderful.*

ad-mīror, ari, atus, *to wonder at, to admire.*

ad-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to admit*; *commit.*

ad-mŏdum, adv., *up to the limit, much, very.*

ad-mŏneo, ĕre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to advise, warn.*

adŏlescens, entis, part. of adolesco : as adj., *young* ; as subst., comm., *a young man, youth.*

adolesco, ĕre, olēvi, ultum, *grow up; reach adult age.*

ăd-ŏrior, iri, ortus, 4 (but with some 3rd conj. forms) *to attack.*

adpĕto (app.), ĕre, īvi, or ii, ītum, *to draw near, approach.*

ad-plĭco (app.), āre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to put against.*

ad-porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to convey.*

ad-prŏpinquo (app.), āre, āvi, ātum, *to come* or *draw near to.*

adscendo. *V.* ascendo.

ad-scisco, ĕre, scīvi, scītum, *approve ; admit, receive, adopt.*

ad-sĭdŭus, (ass.) a, um, adj., *continual, constant.* [adsideo.]

ad-sisto, (ass.) ĕre, astĭti, no sup., *to stand by.*

ad-sŭēfăcĭo, (ass.) ĕre, fēci, factum, *to accustom, to habituate* ; in pass., *to get used* (to anything).

ad-sŭesco, (ass.) ĕre, ēvi, ētum, *to grow used to, get accustomed to.*

adsum, -esse, -fui, *to be present, be at hand.*

ad-tingo, (att.) ĕre, tĭgi, tactum, *to touch, border upon.*

ad-tribuo. See attribuo.

adulescens. v. adolescens.

adulescentia (or adolescentia), ae, f, *youth* ; *age of youth.*

adulescentulus, i, m, dimin., *a lad, stripling.*

adventus, ūs, m., *a coming, approach.*

adversarius, i, m, *an adversary, opponent* ; *foe.*

adversus, a, um, adj., *turned towards, facing.*

adversus, prep. w. acc., *opposite to, against.*

adverto, ĕre, verti ,versum, *turn to* ; **animum advertere**, *direct the mind to, observe, notice, perceive.*

advŏco, are, avi, atum, *call to, summon.*

ad-vŏlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to fly to* ; *to hasten off to.*

aedĭfĭcium, i, n., *a building.* [aedes, facio.]

aedĭfĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make a building, to build.* [aedes, facio.]

aeger, gra, grum, adj., *ill, sick.*

aegrē, adv., *with difficulty.*

aequāliter, adv., *evenly, regularly, uniformly.*

aequĭnoctĭum, i, n, *the equinox.* [aequus, nox.]

aequĭtās, ātis, f., *equality, justice, evenness* ; animi aequitas, *contentment.*

aequo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make equal.*

aequus, a, um, adj., *equal, level, advantageous.*

aeraria, ae, *a copper mine.* [aes.]

aerarius, a, um, *belonging to, pertaining to copper or bronze.*

aereus, a, um, *made of copper or bronze.*

aes, aeris, n., *bronze* ; *money.* **aes alienum**, *debt* (other people's money).

aestās, ātis, f., *summer.*

aestĭmātĭo, ōnis, f., *a valuation.*

aestĭmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to estimate. reckon.*

aestīvus, a, um, adj., *pertaining to summer ; of summer.*

aestuārium, i, n, *a marshy arm of the sea.*

aestus, ūs, m., *heat* ; *tide* ; *current.*

aetās, ātis, f., *age, time of life.*

aeternus, a, um, adj., *eternal, unbroken, perpetual.*

Afrĭcus ventus, *the south-west wind.*

affĕro (adf.), afferre, attŭli, allātum or adlatum, *to bring forward, allege.*

afficio (adf.), ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to affect, influence ; to visit with, treat.*

affigo (adf.), ĕre, fixi, fixum, *fix on ; attach to.*

affingo (adf.), ĕre, finxi, fictum, *invent, add falsely.*

affīnitās (adf.), ātis, f., *relationship* by marriage ; *kinship.*

affirmatio (adf.), -ōnis, f., *declaration ; assurance, assertion.*

affixus, pf., part. of **affigo.**

afflictus, v. **affligo.**

affligo, v. **adfligo.**

ăger, gri, m., *land, territory, domain.*

agger, ĕris, m., *pile, mound, rampart, mole, dike ; materials for a mound.*

aggredior (adg.), i, gressus sum, *go to ; attack.*

aggrego, v. **adgrego.**

ăgito, are, avi, atum, *drive, trouble, vex ; propose, consider, discuss.*

agmen, ĭnis, n., *an army on the march, a column ; a train.*

ăgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *to do, act, drive, push forward ; to treat* (with any one ; cf. Eng., *drive a bargain*).

agrĭcultūra, ae, f., *farming, husbandry.* [aeger, colo.]

ălăcer, cris, cre, adj., *brisk, eager.*

alacritās, ātis, *eagerness, ardor, zeal.*

ālārius, a, um, adj., *on the wings, belonging to the wings of an army ;* hence alarii=*the allies,* who were placed on the wings.

albus, a, um, adj., *white.*

alces, is, f., *the elk.*

ălĭās, adv., *at another time* : alias.. alias..*at one time..at another time.*

aliēnatus, p. part. of alieno.

aliēno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to derange, deprive of reason.*

ălĭēnus, a um, adj., *that belongs to another, foreign* ; **aes alienum**, *debt.*

ălĭō, adv., *elsewhere, to another place.* [alius.]

ălĭquamdiu, adv., *for a considerable time.*

aliquando, adv., *at some time, at length ; some time.*

aliquanto, adv. of degree, *somewhat, considerably, rather.*

ălĭquantum, adj. used as subs., *a certain amount.*

ălĭqui, ălĭqua, ălĭquod, indef. adj., *some, any.*

ălĭquis, ălĭqua, ălĭquid, indef. pron., subst., and adj., *some one, something.*

aliquot, indecl. indef. adj., *some, several.*

ălĭter, adv., *otherwise, in a different way* ; **aliter ac**, *differently from what, otherwise than.* [alius.]

ălius, ia, iud (gen. alīus, dative, alii), *other, another* ; *alius..alius, one.. another* ; *alii..alii, some..others.*

allatus, v. **affero.**

allĭcio (adl.), ĕre, lexi, lectum, *to draw to, to attract.*

ălo, ĕre, ălŭi, altum and ălĭtum, *to feed, nourish, foster, promote.*

alter, ĕra, ĕrum (gen. alterius, dat. alteri), adj., *the other of two, one of two, the other* ; in plur., alteri..alteri, *the one party..the other party.*

alternus, a, um, adj., *alternate, one after another, mutual.* [alter.]

altĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *height* or *depth.*

altum, i, n., *the deep,* the *deep sea.* [altus.]

altus, a, um, adj., *high, deep.*

alūta, ae, f., *tanned skin, soft leather.*

ambactus, i, m., *a retainer, vassal.*

ambo, ambae, bo, adj., *both.*

āmentia, ae, f., *madness, folly.* [a, mens.]

āmentum, i. n., a *strap* or *thong.*

amfractus, ūs, m., *a winding path.* [amb, frango.]

ămīcē, adv., *kindly, in a friendly manner.*

ămīcĭtĭa, ae, f., *friendship.*

ămīcus, a, um, adj., *friendly.*

āmitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to lose.*

ămŏr, ōris, m., *love, affection.*

amplē, adv., *largely, liberally, abundantly.*

amplĭfĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to widen, extend, enlarge.*

amplior, comp., adj., from amplus, *large, full.*

amplĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *width, size.*

amplĭus, comp. adv., *more, further.* [amplus.]

amplus, a, um, adj., *great, large.*

an, conj. introducing second half of a disjunctive or double question, *or* ; an.. an, *whether..or.*

anceps, cipitis, adj., *two headed; double, two-fold; doubtful.*

ancŏra, ae, f., *an anchor.*

angŭlus, i, m., *a corner, angle, extreme point.*

angustĭae, ārum, f., *narrowness.*

angustĭus, comp. adv., *within more narrow limits*; *more scantily.*

angustus, a, um, adj., *narrow, contracted.*

ănĭma, ae, f., *the soul, life, breath.*

ănĭmadverto, ĕre, ti, sum, *to turn the mind to, give heed to, notice, observe.* [animus, ad, verto.]

ănĭmăl, ālis, n., *an animal.*

ănĭmus, i, m., *mind, courage, resolution, thought.*

annōtĭnus, a, um, adj., *a year old, of last year, last year's.* [annus.]

annus, i, m., *a year.*

annuus, a, um, adj., *annual, yearly.*

anser, ĕris, m., *a goose.*

ante, prep. w. acc. and adv., *before.*

anteā, adv., *before.*

antĕ-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to go before, go ahead, take the lead.*

antĕ-cursor, ōris, m., *a forerunner;* in plur., of an army, *advanced guard, scouts.*

antĕ-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to prefer.*

antemna or **antenna**, ae, f., *a sail-yard.*

antepōno, ĕre, posui, posĭtum, *place before; prefer.*

antequam, conj., *before*; *before that.*

anteverto, ĕre, verti, versum, *place before; prefer.*

antīquĭtus, adv., *anciently, in former times, of old.* [antiquus.]

antīquus, a, um, adj., *old, ancient.*

ăpĕrĭo, īre, ĕrŭi, ertum, *to open, unclose.*

ăpertē, adv., *openly, manifestly.* [apertus.]

ăpertus, a, um, perf. part. of aperio: as adj., *open, unprotected.*

appăro, are, avi, atum, *provide, prepare, equip.*

appello, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call upon, call upon by name, to call.*

appello, ĕre, appŭli, appulsum, (of ships) *to bring to port.*

appeto, (adp.) ere, petivi, or ii, petītum, *aim at, desire, seek*; *approach.*

applico, are, plicui, plicatum or plicitum, *attach*; *lean against.*

apprŏbo, (adp.) are, avi, atum, *approve of, assent to, favor.*

appropinquo v. **ad-propinquo.**

appulsus v. **appello**, ĕre.

aptus, a, um, adj., *fit, suitable.*

ăpŭd, prep. w. acc., *at, in, among, with, near, at the house of.*

ăqua, ae, f., *water,*

ăquātio, ōnis, f., *getting water.*

ăquila, ae. f., *an eagle. The eagle, the principal standard of a Roman legion*, carried on the top of a staff, originally of silver, later of gold.

ăquilifer, ĕri, m., *eagle bearer, the officer who carried the chief standard of a Roman legion.* ("The eagle-bearer was *aquilifer*, chosen by the centurions among the hardiest and bravest soldiers, and distinguished by a bearskin which covered his helmet and shoulders." Bond and Walpole.)

arbĭter, tri, m., *a witness, judge, umpire.*

arbĭtrium, ii, n., *a decision, judgment.* [arbiter, *an umpire.*]

arbĭtror, āri, ātus, *to judge, think, consider.* [arbiter.]

arbor, ŏris, f., *a tree.*

arcesso, ĕre, cessīvi, cessītum, *send for, summon, fetch.*

ardeo, ēre, arsi, arsum, *to be on fire, to burn*: **Gallia ardet**, *is aflame, burning with wrath.*

arduus, a, um, adj., *steep, high, difficult.*

argentum, i, n., *silver.*

argilla, ae, f., *clay.*

aridus, a, um, adj., *dry.* **aridum**, subst., *dry land, the shore.*

ariēs, ariĕtis, m., *battering ram*; also *a prop, buttress, support.*

arma, ōrum, n. plur., *arms, weapons of war.*

armāmenta, orum, n. pl., *implements, fittings, tackle, rigging.*

armātura, ae, f., *armor, equipment.* levis armaturae, *light-armed* (soldiers).

armātus, a, um, part. armo: as adj., *armed, wearing arms.*

armo, are, avi, atum, *to furnish with weapons, arm, equip.*

arrĭpio, ĕre, rĭpŭi, reptum, *to seize, snatch up.* [ad, rapio.]

arroganter, adv., *insolently, arrogantly, haughtily.*

arrogantia, ae, f., *insolence, arrogance, haughtiness.*

ars, tis, f., *art, handicraft, skill.*

artē, adv., *closely, tightly.* [artus.]

artĭcŭlus, i, m., dim. of artus, *a joint* of an animal body.

artĭfĭcium, ii, n., *skilled labour, handicraft, a trade.*

artus, a, um, adj., *close, tight fitting.* [arceo, shut up.]

arx, arcis, f., *fortress, stronghold, citadel.*

ascendo, (ads.), ĕre, scendi, scensum, *to climb, mount up, ascend.* [ad, scando.]

ascensus, (ads.) ūs, m., *a going up, look, ascent.*

aspectus, (ads.) ūs, m., *appearance, sight.*

asper, ĕra, ĕrum, adj., *rough*: oppugnatio, *fierce, severe.*

assiduus, v. **adsiduus**.

assisto, v. **adsisto**.

assuefacio, v. **adsuefacio**.

assuesco, v. **adsuesco**,

at, conj., *but, yet.*

atque(ac) conj., *and, and also*; with words meaning difference, *than.*

attexo, ĕre, texui, textum, *weave to*; *add, join.*

attingo, ĕre, tĭgi, tactum, *to reach, touch.*

attrĭbŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *to add to, assign, give.*

auctŏr, ōris, m., *an adviser, instigator.*

auctōrĭtās, ātis, f., *influence*; seldom translated *authority.*

auctus, a, um, pf. part. of augeo, *increased*; as adj., *distinguished.*

audācia, ae, f., *boldness, daring.*

audācter, adv., *boldly*; audacius, audacissime. [audax.]

audax, ācis, adj., *bold, spirited, fearless; audacious.*

audĕo, ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep., *to dare.*

audiens, -ntis, pres. part. of audio; as adj., *obedient to.*

audĭo, īre, īvi, ītum, *to hear, to hearken unto, obey.*

audītio, ōnis, f., *report, rumor, hearsay.*

augĕo, ēre, auxi, auctum, *to enlarge, increase.*

aurīga, ae, m., *chariot driver, charioteer.*

auris, is, f., *an ear.*

aut, conj., *or*: aut..aut, *either..or.*

autem, conj., introducing a thought, *either* entirely opposed to the previous train of thought *or* simply different; (1) *but*, (2) *moreover, now* (transitional).

autumnus, i, m., *autumn.* [augeo.]

auxiliaris, e, adj., *auxiliary.*

auxilior, ari, atus sum, *assist, help.*

auxĭlĭum, ĭi, n., *aid, help.*

avāritia, ae, f., *greed, avarice, covetousness.*

āvĕho, ĕre, vexi, vectum, *carry away.*

āversus, a, um, part of averto, *turned away; behind, in the rear.*

āverto, ĕre, ti, sum, *to turn* (anything) *away.*

ăvis, is, f., *a bird.*

ăvus, i, m., *a grandfather.*

B.

baltĕus, i. m., *a sword-belt.*

barbărus, i. m., *a foreigner, barbarian.* [βάρβαρος.]

bellicōsus, a, um, adj., *warlike.*

bellĭcus, a, um, adj., *used for war, warlike.*

bello, are, avi, atum, *wage war.*

bellum, i, n., *war.*

bĕnĕ, adv., *well.*

bĕnĕ-fĭcium, *a kindness, favor.* [bene-facio.]

bĕnĕ-vŏlentĭa, ae, f., *good will, friendship, kindness.* [bene, volo.]

bĭdŭum, i. n., *a space of two days.* [bis, dies.]

bĭennium, i, n, *a space of two years.* [bis, annus.]

bīni, ae, a, distrib. num. adj., *two at a time, two each, in groups of two.*

bĭpedālis, e, adj., *two feet long, wide, thick, etc.*

bĭpertīto, adv., *in two divisions.*

bĭs, num. adv., *twice.*

bŏnitās, ātis, f., *goodness, excellence.*

bŏnus, a, um, adj., *good*; as subst., **bona**, orum, n. plur., *wealth, goods, property.*

bŏnum, i. n., *profit, good, advantage.*

bōs, bŏvis, comm., *an ox, a cow.*

brachium, i, n., *an arm.*

brĕvis, e, adj., *short, brief.*

brĕvitās, ātis, f., *shortness, smallness, smallness of stature.*

brĕviter, adv., *briefly, shortly.*

brūma, ae, f., *winter*; *the winter solstice.* [brevis.]

C.

C. = Caius.

cacūmen, ĭnis, n., *a point, peak, summit.*

cadāver, eris, n., *a corpse, dead body.*

cādo, ĕre, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, *to fall*; *to fall* (i.e. *be killed*) *in battle.*

caedes, is, f., *a cutting down, slaughter.* [caedo.]

caelestis, e, adj., *belonging to the sky, heavenly*: as subst., *a deity.*

caerimonia, ae, f., *a religious ceremony or rite.*

caerŭlĕus, a, um, adj., *blue.*

călămĭtās, ātis, f., *mishap, disaster.*

callidus, a, um, adj., *crafty, cunning, expert, skilful.*

cālō, ōnis, m., *camp-follower.*

campester, tris, tre, adj., *on level ground, flat, level.*

campus, i, m., *a plain.*

căno, canĕre, cĕcĭni, cantum, *sing, sound a musical instrument.*

căper, pri, m., *a he-goat, goat.*

căpillus, i, m., *hair, lock of hair.*

căpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, captum, *to take, make* (in the nautical sense of *reach*).

caprĕa, ae, f., *a wild she-goat.*

captīvus, a, um, adj., *taken prisoner*: as subst., **captīvus**, i, m., *a prisoner of war, captive.* [capio.]

captus, p. part. of capio; capta, orum, n, pl. subst., *plunder.*

captus, ūs, m., *capacity, comprehension, notion, idea.* [capio.]

căpŭt, ĭtis, n., *the head.*

cărĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to be without*; govs. abl.

carīna, ae, f., *the keel* of a ship.

căro, carnis, f., *flesh.*

carpo, ĕre, carpsi, carptum, *pluck*; *censure, criticise, slander, revile.*

carrus, ūs, m., *a cart, waggon.*

cārus, a, um, adj., *dear, valued.*

căsa, ae, f., *a hut.*

cāsĕus, i. m., *cheese.*

cassis, idis, f., *a helmet.*

castellum, i, n., *a fort, redoubt.* [dimin. of castrum.]

castīgo, are, avi, atum, *punish, reprove, censure.*

castrum, i. n., *a fort*; more usual in plur., **castra**, ōrum, n., *a camp.*

cāsus, ūs, m., *accident, chance, event.* [cado.]

cătēna, ae, f., *a chain.*

causa, ae, f., *a reason*, **causā**, abl. sing. with gen., *for the sake of, on account of.*

cautē. adv., *cautiously.* [caveo.]

cautēs, is, f., *a jagged rock, crag, cliff.*

cautus, pf. part. pass. of caveo.

căveo, ēre, cāvi, cautum, *to take care; be on one's guard.*

cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum (of troops), *to retire, fall back.*

cĕlĕrĭtās, ātis, f., *quickness, speed, swiftness.* [cĕler.]

celeriter, adv., *quickly.*

cēlo, are, avi, atum, *conceal, keep in the dark, hide.*

censĕo, ēre, censŭi, censum, *to be of opinion, to think.*

census, ūs, m., *a census, count.* [censeo.]

centēni, ae, a, distrib. num. adj., *a hundred each.*

centum, *a hundred.*

centŭrĭo, ōnis, m., *a captain of a hundred men, a centurion.*

cerno, ĕre, crēvi, crētum, *to distinguish by the senses, to see, perceive.*

certāmen, ĭnis, n., *a contest, rivalry.*

cērtē, adv., *certainly, surely*: **certius** (cognoscere) *more exactly, more in detail.*

certus, a, um, adj., *assured, fixed, settled*: (aliquem) **certiorem facere**, *to inform, let anyone know*; in pass., **certior fieri**, *to be informed.*

cervus, i, m., *a stag, deer.*

cespēs, ĭtis, m., *a cut sod* or *turf.*

cētĕrus, a, um, adj., *the rest*; usually in plur., *the rest, the others.*

cibāria, ōrum, n. plur., *provisions.*

cĭbus, i, m., *food.*

cingo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to surround, encompass.*

cippus, i, m., *a stake, post, palisade.*

circā, adv., *round about, around.*

circĭnus, i, m., *a pair of compasses.*

circĭter, prep. gov. acc. and adv., *about*; mostly of numbers or time.

circueo, v., **circumeo**.

circuitus, part. *V.* circumeo.

circŭĭtus, ūs, m., *a going round, compass.* [circum, eo].

circum, prep. w. acc. and adv., *around, about.*

circum-cīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum, *to cut around, cut.*

circumcīsus, a, um, pf. part. of **circumcido**, *cut off, inaccessible, steep.*

circum-clūdo, ĕre, si, sum, *to shut in all around, to surround.*

circum-do, dăre, dĕdi, dătum, *to surround, inclose*; *place round.*

circŭm-ĕo, īre, ĭi, and īvi, circuĭtum, *to go round, visit.*

circum-fundo, ĕre, fūdi, fūsum, *to pour around*; with se, *to crowd around, gather around.*

circumicio, icĕre, iēci, iectum, *throw around, place around.*

circumiectus, pl. part. of **circum icio**, *surrounding.*

circum-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send around.*

circum-mūnio, ire, ivi, ītum, *surround with walls, fortify round about.*

circummunītio, ōnis, f., *a fortifying round about*; *an investment of a town by siege.*

cĭrcumplector, plecti, plexus, *embrace, surround, encompass.*

circum-sisto, ĕre, stĕti, *to stand around, surround.*

circumspĭcĭo, ĕre, exi, ectum, *to look around.*

circumsto, stare, steti, *stand around.*

circumvallo, are, avi, atum, *surround with a rampart, blockade.*

circumvĕhor, vĕhi, vectus, *ride* or *sail around.*

circum-vĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, *to come round* (esp. in a hostile way), *to surround, entrap.*

circumventus, a, um, p. part. circumvenio.

cis, prep. with acc., *on this side of.*

cĭtatus, a, um, *hurried, moved* or *spurred on quickly.* [pl. part. of cito].

cĭtĕrior, adj., formed from citra; *on the nearer side, nearer.*

cĭtissimē, superl. of adv. cito, *most quickly.*

citrā, prep. w. acc., *on this side of.*

citro, adv. *hither.*

cīvis, is, c., *a citizen.*

cīvĭtās, ātis, f., *citizenship*; *a state* (i.e. *the body of citizens*). [civis.]

clam, adv. *secretly* [celo.]

clāmĭto, are, avi, atum, freq., *to keep calling out, to cry aloud.* [clamo.]

clāmor, ōris, m., *a shout, shouting.*

clandestīnus, a, um, adj., *secret, hidden.*

clārus, a, um, adj., *clear*; vox, *loud, distinct, clear.*

classis, is, f., *a fleet.*

claudo, ĕre, clausi, clausum, *shut, close*; claudere agmen, *bring up the rear.*

clāvus, i, m., *a nail, spike.*

clēmentia, ae, f., *kindness, mercy, clemency.*

clĭens, tis, m., *a dependant*; of nations, *vassals.*

clĭentēla, ae, f., *the condition of being dependent, vassalage.*

clīvus, i, m., *a slope, hill* [clino, to lean.]

cŏăcervo, are, avi, atum, *heap up, collect.*

cŏactus, ūs, m., *a forcing, compulsion.*

coagmento, are, avi, atum, *fasten together, connect.*

coarto, are, avi, atum, *to press*, or *squeeze together* [arto, make tight.]

coēgi, v. cogo.

co-ĕmo, ĕmĕre, ēmi, emptum, *buy up, purchase.*

cŏ-ĕo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to come together, meet, assemble.*

coelestis, e, adj., *heavenly*; *celestial*; as subst., **coelestes**, ium, pl., *the gods.*

coepi, isse, v. defect., *to begin.*

coerceo, ēre, ercui, ercitum, *to confine, restrain, check.*

cōgĭtātio, ōnis, f., *a thinking, deliberation, reflection.*

cōgĭto, are, avi, atum, *to consider, ponder, reflect upon.*

cognātĭo, ōnis, f., *kindred.*

cognĭtus, a, um, p. part. cognosco.

cognosco, ĕre, gnōvi, gnĭtum, *to discover, learn, take cognizance of*; in perf. tenses, *know.*

cōgo, ĕre, cŏēgi, cŏactum, *to bring together, collect*; *compel.* [co-ago.]

cŏhors, tis, f., *a cohort*; $\frac{1}{10}$ *of a legion.*

cohortatio, ōnis, f., *encouraging, encouragement.*

cŏhortor, ari, atus, *to animate, encourage, exhort.*

co-iĕrim, v. co-eo.

collatus, part. of confero.

col-laudo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to praise highly.*

collectus, a, um, part. colligo.

collĭgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum, *to get together, collect*; *to get, acquire*; se colligere, *recover one's self, rally.* [con, lego.]

collis, is, m., *a hill.*

col-lŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to station.*

col-lŏqium, ii., n., *a conference.*

col-lŏquor, i., locūtus, *to confer; hold a conference.*

cŏlo, ĕre, cŏlŭi, cultum, *to cultivate*; *to worship, honor.*

cŏlōnĭa, ae, f., *a colony, a body of emigrants, colonists.* [colonus, colo.]

cŏlor, ōris, m., *colour.*

comburo, ĕre, ussi, ustum, *burn up, consume.*

cŏmĕs, ĭtis, m., *a companion.*

comitium, i, n., the place in the Roman Forum where the elections were held ; hence *the assembly, the elections.*

cŏmitor, ari, atus sum, *to accompany.*

commeātus, ūs, m., *journey, voyage, convoy*; *provisions, supplies.* [cum, meo.]

com-mĕmŏro, are, avi, atum, *to call to mind, recount, relate.*

commendo, are, avi, atum, *commit* or *entrust to* for protection.

commentarius, i, m., *memoir, commentary.*

commeo, -meare, -meavi, -meatum, *to go to and fro, visit, resort to.*

commīlito, ōnis, *a fellow soldier, comrade.*

com-mĭnus, adv., *hand to hand.* [con, manus.]

commissūra, ae. f., *a joint, juncture.*

com-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send or bring together*; pugnam or proelium, *to join battle*; *to do, commit* (esp. any bad or unworthy action).

commŏdē, adv., -ius, -issime, *conveniently, advantageously, suitably.*

com-mŏdus, a, um, adj., *suitable*; subst. **commodum**, i, n, *advantage, profit.*

commonefacio, facere, fēci, factum, *remind, impress upon.*

com-mŏror, ari, atus, *to delay, stay.*

commŏveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *agitate, disturb, alarm, excite, influence.*

commūnĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make common, share* (with anyone), *to consult.* [communis.]

com-mūnĭo, īre, īvi or ii, ītum, *to fortify strongly, intrench.*

com-mūnis, e, adj., *common, general.*

commūtātĭo. ōnis, f., *change, alteration.*

com-mūto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to change wholly, to exchange, replace.*

1. **compăro**, (conparo), are, avi, atum, *prepare, get together, secure, collect* [com, paro.]

2. **compăro**, are, avi, atum, *compare* [compar, like.]

compello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, *drive together, collect; force, compel.*

compendium, i, n., *a saving, gain, profit.*

com-pĕrĭo, īre, pĕri, pertum, *to find out for certain, learn, ascertain.*

compertus, part. of comperio, *known, certain.*

complector, i, plexus sum, *embrace, surround, include.*

com-plĕo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, *to fill full, fill up.*

complures, a or ia, *several.*

com-porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to carry together, collect.*

com-prĕhendo, ĕre, di, sum, *to catch* or *seize hold of.*

com-prŏbo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to confirm, establish, make good.*

cōnātum, i, n., *an attempt.*

cōnātus, ūs, m., *an attempt.*

cōnātus, a. um, pf. part. of cōnor.

concēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *yield, grant.*

concerto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to contend.*

concessus, ūs, m., *permission, leave.*

con-cĭdo, ĕre, cĭdi, *to fall together, to fall down.*

concīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum, *cut up, cut to pieces, cut into sections* [caedo.]

concĭlĭo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to reconcile.*

concĭlium, ĭi, n., *an assembly, meeting, council.*

concĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to rouse up, stir up, excite.* [con, cieo.]

con-clāmo, are, avi, atum, *to call* or *cry out together, to shout.*

codcludo, ĕre, clūsi, clūsum, *shut up, enclose, confine* [claudo.]

concrepo, āre, ui, ītum, *rattle, crash.*

con-curro, ĕre, curri, cursum, *to run together, flock.*

con-curso, āre, freq., *to run to and fro, rush about.*

concursus, ūs, m., *a running* or *flocking together, a concourse, collision.*

condemno, are, avi, atum, *condemn, sentence* [damus.]

condĭcĭo, ōnis, f., *a condition* (of a bargain), *terms*; *condition* (=*state, circumstances.*)

condōno, are, avi, atum, *give up, forgive, excuse, pardon.*

con-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead* or *bring together*; *to hire.*

confectus, v. conficio.

con-fercĭo, īre, no, perf., fertum, *to cram, stuff* or *press close together.* [[illegible].]

con-fertus, a, um, part. confercio; adj., *dense, close-packed, crowded.*

con-fĕro, -ferre, contŭli, collātum, *to bring* or *gather together.*

con-festim, adv., *forthwith.*

con-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to finish, accomplish, perform*; *to wear out* (with wounds), *exhaust.*

con-fīdo, ĕre, fīsus sum, *to believe, trust, rely on.*

confīgo, fīgere, fixi, fixum, *fasten together, join.*

confīnis, e, adj., *bordering on, adjoining.*

con-fīnĭum, ĭi, n., *limit, border*, (of lands); *district.*

confio, fiĕri, irreg. pass. of **conficio**, =regular form **conficior**, vii., 58.

confirmatio, ōnis, f., *assurance, assertion, encouragement.*

con-firmo, are, avi, atum, *to make firm, encourage*; 2. *to assert, protest* or *pledge one's self to* (a thing.)

confisus, pf. part. of confido, *relying on, trusting to.*

con-fĭtĕor, ēri, fessus, *to acknowledge, confess.*

confixus, part. of **configo**.

con-flāgro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to burn, be consumed.*

con-flictātus, a, um, part. conflicto, *harassed, distressed.*

conflicto, are, avi, atum, *dash against* or *together, struggle with*—pass. *be harassed.*

con-flīgo, ĕre, flixi, flictum, *to clash with, dash together, engage with.*

confluens, entis, m., *meeting of two streams*; *confluence.*

confluo, ĕre, fluxi, no supine, *flow together*; *flock together.*

confŭgio, ĕre, fūgi, *to flee for refuge.*

confundo, ere, fūdi, fūsum, *pour together, mix, blend, unite.*

congero, ĕre, gessi, gestum, *bear, bring* or *carry together, collect, heap* or *pile up.*

con-grĕdior, i, gressus sum, *to meet, to engage in fight*: congrĕdi cum, *to make common cause with.*

congressus, a, um, part. of **congredior**.

congressus, ūs, m., *a coming together, encounter, engagement.*

con-ĭcĭo, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to cast, fling, hurl.*

coniectūra, ae, f., *a conjecture, inference.*

con-iunctim adv., *jointly, in common.*

con-iungo, ĕre, nxi, ctum, *to join, unite.*

coniunx, coniŭgis, c., *a husband* or *wife, spouse* [iungo.]

con-iūrātĭo, ōnis, f., *a conspiracy.* [con-iuro.]

coniūro, are, avi, atum, *take oath together, league together, conspire.*

con-laudo, v. **col-laudo**.

con-lŏco, v. **col-loco**.

con-lŏquĭum, v. **col-loquium**.

con-lŏquor, v. **col-loquor**.

cōnor, ari, atus, *to attempt, try.*

con-paro, v. **comparo**.

con-pello, v. **compello**.

con-plūres, v. **complures**.

conquiesco, ĕre, quiēvi, quiētum, *rest, repose.*

con-quīro, ĕre, quīsīvi, quīsītum, *to search out, seek after.* [con-quaero.]

consanguineus, a, um, adj., *of the same blood*; as subst., m., *relative, kinsman.*

con scendo, ĕre, ndi, nsum, *to climb, mount, go on board.*

con-scĭentĭa, ae, f., *consciousness.*

conscisco, ĕre, scīvi, scītum, *decree, appoint*—**sibi mortem consciscere**, *commit suicide.*

conscius, a, um, adj, *conscious, accessory to.*

con-scrībo, ĕre, psi, ptum, *to write*; *to enlist, enrol.*

consecratus, a, um, part. consecro.

con-secro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make sacred, consecrate.*

con-sector, āri, ātus sum, *to chase, pursue.*

con-sēdi, pf. of consīdo.

consensio, ōnis, f., *agreement, unanimity.*

consensus, ūs, m., *consent, assent, united opinion.*

con-sentio, sentīre, sensi, sensum, *to agree, make common cause.*

con-sĕquor, sĕqui, secūtus, *to follow up, follow; obtain, attain, acquire.*

conservo, are, avi, atum, *save, spare, maintain.*

con-sīdo, ĕre, sēdi, sessum, *to take a seat, sit down; pitch a camp.*

consĭlium, ii, n., *plan, counsel; council of war.*

con-sĭmĭlis, e, adj., *very like.*

con-sisto, ĕre, stiti, stitum, *to place one's self, stand*; 2. *to consist in* or *of.*

consobrinus, i, *born of a mother's sister*; *cousin* [soror.]

con-sōlor, āri, ātus sum, *to cheer, comfort.*

conspectus, ūs, m., *sight, view.*

con-spĭcĭo, ĕre, spexi, spectum, *to behold, descry, observe.*

conspĭcor, āri, ātus, *to get sight of, see, perceive.*

conspīro, are, avi, atum, *agree, conspire* [spiro, breathe].

constanter, adv., *steadily, uniformly, resolutely.*

constantia, ae, f., *firmness; constancy, resolution.*

con-stat, stāre, impers. v., *it is agreed, well known, it is clear.*

consterno, are, avi, atum, *alarm, terrify.*

consterno, ĕre, stravi, stratum, *strew over; cover.*

con-stīpo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to crowd* or *press closely together.*

con-stĭtŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *to draw up, arrange; to appoint; to decide, settle, determine; to resolve.*

consto, stāre, stiti, stātum, *stand still, remain; consist in, depend on; cost.* See **constat.**

constratus. See **consterno.**

consŭesco, ĕre, suēvi, suētum, *to grow accustomed*; in perf tenses, *to be accustomed, to be wont.*

consŭētūdo, ĭnis, f, *custom, usage.* [consuesco]

consuētus. See **consuesco.**

consul, ŭlis, m., *consul.* Two consuls were chosen annually as the chief magistrates of Rome.

consulātus, ūs, n., *the consulship, office of consul,*

consŭlo, ĕre, lŭi, ltum, *to take counsel*; with dat., *to have regard to, consult the interests of.*

consulto, adv., *intentionally.* [consulo.]

consulto, are, avi, atum, *to consult.*

consultum, i, n., *a resolution, decree.*

con-sūmo, ĕre, sumpsi, sumptum, *to take up, use up, consume, waste, spend.*

consumptus. *V.* consumo.

con-surgo, ĕre, surrexi, surrectum, *to arise, rise up.*

con-tăbŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to line with planks.*

contăgĭo, ōnis, f., *a touching, contact, contamination.*

contāmino, are, avi, atum, *taint, pollute.*

con-temno, ĕre, tempsi, temptum, *to despise, hold cheap.*

contemptĭo, ōnis, f., *contempt, scorn.*

contemptus, ūs, m., *contempt, scorn.*

con-tendo, ĕre, di, tum, *to contend* (as rivals); *to fight; strive, make an effort.*

contentĭo, ōnis, f., *contest, rivalry.*

contestor, ari, atus sum, *call to witness, supplicate, appeal to.*

contexo, ĕre, texui, textum, *weave, bind together, join.*

contĭnens, entis, f., *the mainland*; also adj., *unbroken, continuous.*

continenter, adv., *constantly, incessantly.*

con-tĭnĕo, ēre, ŭi, tentum, *to keep, keep in, restrain*; (of space) *to contain* [con, teneo.]

con-tingo, ĕre, tĭgi, tactum, *to touch, reach.*

continuatio, ōnis, f., *continuation, succession.*

continuo, adv., *forthwith, immediately.*

contĭnŭus, a, um, adj., *unbroken, continuous.*

contĭo, ōnis, f., *an assembly*; *a speech, harangue.*

contionor, ari, atus sum, *address, harangue.*

contra, prep. w. acc. and adv., *against*; *in opposition, in reply.*

con-trăho, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to draw together, draw in, lessen.*

contrarius, a, um, *opposite, contrary.*

contrōversĭa, ae, f., *contention, dispute.*

contŭmēlĭa, ae, f., *affront, insult*; *buffeting, rough usage*; c. verborum, *insulting language, scoffs, taunts.*

convalesco, ĕre, valui, no sup., *to get well, recover strength.*

convallis, is, f., *a valley enclosed on all sides.*

convĕho, vehĕre, vexi, vectum, *bring together, collect, convey.*

con-vĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, *to come together, assemble, muster.*

conventus, ūs, m., *an assembly*; *a court of justice*; plur., *the assizes*; (of soldiers) *parade.*

con-verto, ĕre, ti, sum, *to turn, direct*; *face about.*

convinco, ĕre, vīci, victum, *conquer utterly*; *convict, prove.*

convŏco, are, avi, atum, *call together, summon.*

cŏ-ŏrĭor, īri, ortus, *to arise.*

cōpĭa, ae, f., *abundance, a sufficient supply*; in plur., *forces.*

cōpiōsus, a, um, *well supplied, wealthy, rich.*

cōpula, ae, f., *band*; *grappling iron.*

cor, cordis, n., *the heart.*

cōram, adv. and prep. w. abl., *in the presence of*; *face to face.*

corium, i. n., *thick skin, hide.*

cornu, ūs, n., *a horn.*

corōna, ae, f., *crown*; *circle.*

corpus, ŏris, n., *a body.*

corripio, ĕre, ripui, reptum, *seize violently*; *carry off.*

corrumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *break to pieces*; *spoil, destroy, ruin.*

cortex, ĭcis, m. and f., *bark* of a tree.

cōrus ventus, m., *the north-west wind.*

cŏtīdĭānus, a, um, adj., *daily.*

cŏtīdĭe, adv., *daily.*

crassitudo, inis, f., *thickness.*

crātis, is, f., *wicker-work, hurdle.*

crēber, bra, um, adj., *frequent.*

crēbro, adv., *frequently, often.*

crēdo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to believe.*

crĕmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to burn.*

creo, are, avi, atum, *create, make*; *choose, elect, appoint.*

cresco, ĕre, crēvi, crētum, *grow, increase*; *become great or powerful.*

crīmen, inis, n., *charge, accusation*; less commonly, *fault, crime.*

crŭcĭātus, ūs, m., *torture.* [crucio, crux.]

crudēlis, ĕ, adj., *cruel.*

crudēlitas, ātis, f., *cruelty.*

crudēliter, adv., *cruelly.*

crūs, ūris, n., *a leg.*

cŭbīle, is, n., *a place of rest, couch, lair.* [cubo.]

culpa, ae, f., *fault.*

cultus, ūs, m., *way of living, civilization.* [colo.]

cum, prep. w. abl., *with.*

cum, (quum), conj., *when; since; although.*

cunctatio, ōnis, f., *delay, hesitation, tardiness.*

cunctor, ari, atus sum, *delay, hesitate.*

cunctus, a, um, adj., *all together, all.* [co-iunctus.]

cŭneātim, adv., *in the form of a wedge.*

cŭneus, i, m, *a wedge; a wedge-formation*, military term.

cunīculus, i, m., literally, *rabbit; burrow*; in military sense, *a mine.*

cŭpĭde, ĭus, issime, adv., *eagerly.*

cŭpĭdĭtās, ātis, f., *covetousness, desire, greed.* [cupidus, cupio.]

cŭpĭdus, a, um, adj., *eager for, desirous of.* [cupio.]

cŭpĭo, ĕre, īvi or ii, ītum, *to wish;* WITH DAT., *to be well inclined to*, =faveo.

cūr, adv., *why.*

cūra, ae, f., *care, attention, anxiety, trouble.*

cūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to care for*; w. acc. of gerundive, *to cause* or *order* anything to be done.

curro, ĕre, cucurri, cursum, *run.*

currus, ūs, m., *chariot.*

cursus, ūs, m., *speed; course.* [curro.]

custōdĭa, ae, f., *a guard, watch.*

custōdio, ire, ivi, ītum, *guard, defend.*

custōs, ōdis, c., *a guard, keeper, watch.*

D.

D. = **Decimus**, a proper name.

damnātus, a, um, part. damno, *condemned*; as subst., **damnati**, orum, m., *convicts, criminals.*

damno, are, avi, atum, *condemn, sentence.*

damnum, i, n., *hurt, injury, loss.*

dē, prep. w. abl., *from, down from; about, concerning.*

dēbĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to owe.*

dē-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to go away, depart.*

dĕcem, num. adj., *ten.*

deceptus. See decipio.

dē-cerno, ĕre, crēvi, crētum, *to decide, settle.*

dēcerto, are, avi, atum, *fight, engage in battle.*

dēcessus, ūs, m., *retreat, withdrawal.*

dēcĭdo, ĕre, cĭdi, no supine, *fall down.*

dĕcĭmus, a, um, ord. num, adj., *tenth.*

dēcipio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *deceive.*

dēclāro, are, avi, atum, *make clear, declare, announce.*

dēclīvis, e, adj., *sloping, descending.*

dēclīvitās, ātis, f., *declivity, descent.*

dēcrētum, i, n. See **decerno**.

decŭmānus, in the phrase *decumāna porta, the rear or main entrance of a Roman camp,* placed farthest from the enemy, opposite to the *porta praetoria,* and named from the fact that the 10th cohort encamped near it.

dĕcŭrio, ōnis, m., *a decurion*, a cavalry officer in charge of ten men.

dēcurro, ĕre, cucurri or curri, cursum, *run down, hasten, move off.*

dēdĕcus, ŏris, n., *disgrace.*

dēditīcius, a, um, *one who has surrendered.*

dēditio, ōnis, f., *a surrender.*

dē-do, -dĕre, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, *to deliver* or *give up, to devote.*

dē-dūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, *to lead away, withdraw* (troops); (of ships), *to bring down, launch.*

dēductus. *V.* deduco.

dēfatīgātio, ōnis, f., *weariness, fatigue, exhaustion.*

dēfātīgātus, part. of defătīgo, *wearied out, exhausted.*

dēfatīgo, are, avi, atum, *tire out, exhaust, fatigue.*

dēfectĭo, ōnis, f., *rebellion, revolt.* [deficio.]

dē-fendo, ĕre, di, sum, *to repel, ward off.*

defensio, ōnis, f., *defence.*

dēfensor, ōris, m., *a defender.*

dē-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to announce, report*; *to bear down, carry down, bring.*

defessus, a, um, pf. part. of **defetiscor**, *wearied, worn out.*

dē-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to revolt; to fail, be wanting.*

dē-fīgo, ĕre, xi, xum, *to fasten* or *fix down* or *in.*

dēfīnio,i re, ivi, ītum, *set bounds to, limit, define, fix, assign.*

dēfluo, ĕre, fluxi, fluxum, *flow down, flow away.*

dēfŏre, fut. inf. of desum,=defuturum esse.

dēformis, ĕ, adj., *ill-shaped, ugly.*

dē-fŭgĭo, ĕre, fūgi, *to flee from, avoid, shun.*

dē-ĭcĭo, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to cast* or *throw down*; *to disappoint.*

dēiectus, a, um. See **de-icio.**

dēiectus, ūs, m., *descent, slope, declivity.* [iacio.]

dĕinceps, adv., *one after the other, in succession, in turn.* [deinde, capio].

dĕinde, adv., *thereafter, afterwards, then, next.* [de, inde].

dē-lātus. See defero.

dēlecto, are, avi, atum, *delight, please*; in pass. *take pleasure in.*

dēlectus, a, um. See **deligo.**

dēlectus, ūs, *selection*; *levy* (of soldiers). [deligo.]

dēlĕo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, *to destroy.*

dēlībero, are, avi, atum, *weigh* (mentally), *deliberate, ponder, consult.* [libra, a balance].

dēlībro, are, avi, atum, *strip off the bark, peel.* [liber, bark.]

dēlictum, i, n., *offence, fault, crime.* [fr. pf. part. of delinquo.]

dē-lĭgo, āre, avi, atum, *to bind up, bind fast.* [ligo, "to bind."]

dē-lĭgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum, *to choose* [lego, "choose."]

dēlītesco, ĕre, litui, no supine, *hide, conceal one's self, lie in wait.* [lateo, lie hid].

dēmentia, ae, f., *madness, folly.* [demens, de, mens].

demessus. See **dēmĕto.**

dēmĕto, ĕre, messui, messum, *cut down, reap, mow.*

dē-migro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to retire from, remove, emigrate.*

dēmĭnŭo minŭĕre, minŭi, minūtum, *lessen, take away from, impair.* [mĭnus.]

dē-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send* or *let down*; se, *to descend.*

dēmo, ĕre, dempsi, demptum, *to take off, remove.*

dē-monstro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to show, point out.*

dēmŏror, ari, atus sum, *delay, linger; hinder.*

dēmum, adv., *at last.*

dēnĕgo, are, avi, atum, *deny, refuse.*

dēni, ae, a, dis. adj., *ten apiece, ten.*

dēnīque, adv., *at last, finally*; *in short, in a word.*

dē-nuntĭo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to declare.*

dē-pello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, *to drive away, remove.*

dē-perdo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to lose, lose utterly.*

dē-pĕreo, īre, perĭi, *to perish utterly.*

dē-pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to lay down.*

dēpŏpulor, āri, ātus sum, *to ravage, lay waste.*

dēporto, are, avi, atum, *carry off, remove.*

dēposco, ĕre, poposci, no supine, *demand, require.*

dēpositus. See **dēpōno.**

dēprecātor, ōris, m., *an intercessor.*

dēprĕcor, āri, ātus sum, *to avert by entreaty, beg off.*

dē-prĕhendo, ĕre, di, sum, *to catch, seize upon.*

dēprĭmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, *press down, sink.* [premo].

dēpugno, are, avi, atum, *fight* (to an issue).

dēpulsus. See **depello.**

dērīvo, are, avi, atum, *draw off* (of a stream); *turn aside.* [rivus.]

dē-rŏgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take away withdraw.*

dēscendo, ĕre, scendi, scensum, *to descend.*

dēsĕco, are, secui, sectum, *cut off.* [seco, cut.]

dē-sĕro, ĕre, rŭi, rtum, *to abandon, forsake.*

dēsertor, ōris, m., *a runaway, deserter.* [desero.]

dēsertus, a, um, part. desero, *deserted*; adj., (of places) *solitary, waste.*

dēsīdĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to wish.*

dēsĭdĭa, ae, f., *idleness, sloth.*

dēsigno, are, avi, atum, *mark out, point out, describe, appoint*; *mean, signify.*

desĭlio, īre, sĭlŭi, sultum, *to leap down.*

desisto, ĕre, stiti, stitum, *to cease from.*

dēspectus, a, um. See **despicio.**

dēspectus, ūs, m., *a looking down, a view* from a height; pl. *heights.*

dēspērātio, ōnis, f., *despair.*

dē-spēro, are, avi, atum, *to despair.*

despĭcĭo, ĕre, spexi, spectum, *to despise, look down upon.*

dēspŏlio, iare, iavi, iatum, *despoil, rob, plunder.*

dēstĭno, are, avi, atum, *make fast, bind*; *determine, appoint.*

destituo, uĕre, ui, ūtum, *put aside, desert, abandon.* [statuo].

destrictus. See **destringo.**

destringo, ĕre, strinxi, strictum, *strip off, unsheath, draw* (a sword).

dē-sum, esse, fŭi, *to be wanting, fail.*

dēsŭper, adv., *from above.*

dētĕrior, ius, compar. adj., *inferior, worse*; superl. deterrimus.

dē-terrĕo, ēre, terrŭi, terrĭtum, *to frighten thoroughly, deter.*

dēterrĭtus. See **deterreo.**

detestor, āri, ātus sum, *to curse, call down curses upon.*

dētĭneo, ēre, ui, tentum, *keep back, delay, detain, stop.*

dētractus. See **detraho.**

detrăho, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to withdraw from.*

dētrecto, are, avi, atum, *avoid, decline, escape.* [tracto, handle].

dētrīmentōsus, a, um, *injurious, hurtful.*

dētrīmentum, i, n., *damage, loss.* [" a rubbing off," de, tero.]

dētrūdo, ĕre, trūsi, trūsum, *thrust off, remove.*

dēturbo, are, avi, atum, *cast down, dislodge, drive away.*

de-ūro, ĕre, ūssi, ūstum, *burn up, consume.*

dĕus, i, m., *a deity, a god.*

dē-vĕho, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to carry down, convey.*

dēvĕnio, ire, vēni, ventum, *come from; depart to, arrive at.*

dēvexus, a, um, adj., *sloping, steep.*

dēvinco, ĕre, vīci, victum, *conquer completely.*

dēvŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call down.*

devōtus, pf. part. of devoveo; as adj., *attached to, faithful to*; as subst., *devoted follower.*

dē-vŏvĕo, ēre, vōvi, vōtum, *to vow, devote.*

dexter, dextra, dextrum, adj., *on the right-hand side, right.*

dextra, ae, f. (scil., manus) *the right hand.*

dĭcio, ōnis, f., *sway, dominion, authority, lordship.*

dīco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to say*: dicere diem, *to fix, name a day.*

dĭco, are, avi, atum, *devote, give up.*

dictio, ōnis, f., *speaking, pleading.* [dico.]

dictum, i, n, *word, command.*

dīdūco ĕre, duxi, ductum, *lead in different directions, divide, separate, distribute, scatter.*

dĭes, ēi, m. (sometimes f. in sing.), *a day.*

dif-fĕro, ferre, distŭli dīlātum, *to differ.*

diffĭcĭlis, e, adj., *difficult.*

difficultās, ātis, f., *difficulty.*

difficulter, adv., *with difficulty*, compar., difficilius.

dif-fīdo, ĕre, fisus sum, *to distrust, despair of.*

diffīsus, a, um, pf. part. of **diffīdo**; as adj., *distrusting, doubtful.*

dif-fundo, ĕre, fūdi, fūsum, *to spread out.*

dĭgĭtus, i, m., *finger*; as a measure, the 16th part of a Roman foot, *an inch, finger's breadth.* —**digitus pollex**, *the thumb.*

dignĭtās, ātis, f., *dignity.*

dignus, a, um, adj., *worthy, fitting.*

dī-iūdĭco, are, avi, atum, *to decide, determine.*

dīlectus, a, um, part, diligo.

dīlĭgenter, -ius, -issime, adv., *attentively, carefully.*

dīlĭgentĭa, ae, f., *carefulness.*

dīlĭgo, ĕre, lexi, lectum, *to esteem highly, to love.*

dīmensus. See dimetior.

dīmētior, iri, mensus sum, *measure off.*

dīmicātio, ōnis, f., *fierce combat, hot engagement.*

dīmĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to fight.*

dīmĭdius, a, um, adj., *half;* dimidium, n., *the half.* [medius.]

dī-mitto, ĕre. mīsi, missum, *to send out in various directions; to forego, let slip, relinquish, abandon.*

dīrecte, adv., *straight, directly.*

dīrectus, a, um, part. dirigo; also adj., *straight.*

dīrĭgo, ĕre, rexi, rectum, *to form into a straight line; draw up troops in battle array.*

dīrĭmo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, *take apart, break up*; *break off, put an end to.* [dis, emo.]

dīripio, ĕre, ripui, reptum, *tear asunder, plunder, ravage, pillage.* [dis, rapio.]

dis- or **di-** adverbial prefix, *apart, asunder.*

dis-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to go away, depart.*

disceptātor, ōris, m., *arbitrator, umpire, judge.*

discerno, ĕre, crēvi, crētum, *distinguish between.*

discessus, ūs, m., *departure.*

disciplīna, ae, f., *training, discipline.*

disclūdo, ĕre, clūsi, clūsum, *keep apart, hold apart, separate, divide.* [claudo.]

disco, discĕre, dĭdĭci, *to learn by study.*

discrīmen, inis, n., *risk, danger; difference.*

discŭtio, ĕre, cussi, cussum, *shatter, disperse, clear away.* [quatio.]

disicio, ĕre, ieci, iectum, *drive asunder, scatter, rout.* [iacio.]

dispār, păris, adj., *unequal.*

dispăro, are, avi, atum, *divide, part, separate.*

di-spergo, ĕre, si, sum, *to scatter about, disperse.*

dispersus, a, um, p. part. used as adj., *scattered* [dispergo.]

dis-pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to set in different places, to station.*

dĭspŭtātĭo, ōnis, f., *arguing, disputing; an argument.*

dis-pŭto, are, avi, atum, *to investigate, treat of, discuss.*

dissensĭo, ōnis, f., *disagreement, discord.*

dis-sentĭo, īre, si, sum, *to differ in opinion, disagree.*

dissĕro, ĕre, sēvi, sĭtum, *plant here and there, place at intervals.* [sero, plant.]

dissimŭlo, are, avi, atum, *disguise, conceal.* [similis.]

dissĭpātus, a, um, part. dissipo.

dis-sĭpo, āre, avi, atum, *to disperse, scatter.*

dissuādeo, ēre, suāsi, suāsum, *dissuade, advise against, oppose.*

distĭneo, ēre, ui, tentum, *keep apart; hold off; separate.*

disto, stare, no pf. or supine, *stand apart, be separated.*

distrăho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, *drag asunder, pull apart, divide.*

dis-trĭbŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *to divide, distribute.*

ditissimus, see **dives**.

dĭū, -tius, -tissĭme, adv., *for a long time, long.*

diurnus, a, um, adj., *of the day, by day.* [dies.]

dĭūtĭnus, a, um, adj., *enduring for a long time, lasting, long.*

diutissimē, see **diu**.

diuturnitās, ātis, f., *length of time, long duration.*

diuturnus, a, um, adj., *long* in time. [diu.]

dīversus, a, um, part. diverto; adj., *in different directions, apart, remote.*

dīvĕs, vĭtis, comp. **divitior** or **ditior**, superl. **divitissimus** or **ditissimus**, *rich, wealthy.*

dī-vĭdo, ĕre, vīsi, vīsum, *to divide, separate.*

dīvīnus, a, um, *divine.*

do, dăre, dĕdi, dătum, *to give.*

dŏcĕo, ēre, ŭi, ctum, *to teach, instruct, tell.*

dŏcumentum, i, n., *proof, warning.*

dŏlĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to grieve for, take to heart.*

dŏlor, ōris, m., *pain* (of body or mind), *grief, chagrin.*

dŏlus, i, m., *craft, fraud, deceit, stratagem.*

dŏmestĭcus, a, um, adj., *domestic*; **bellum domesticum**, *intestine, civil war.*

dŏmĭcĭlium, i, n., *dwelling.*

dŏmĭnor, ari, atus sum, *be master, have dominion.*

dŏmĭnus, i, m., *master, lord, owner.*

dŏmus, ūs, f., *house, home;* **domi**, loc. case, *at home.*

dōno, are, avi, atum, *give, present.*

dōnum, i, n., *a gift.*

dōs, ōtis, f., *dowry, marriage portion.*

dŭbĭtātio, ōnis, f., *doubt, hesitation.*

dŭbĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to doubt, hesitate.*

dŭbĭus, a, um, adj., *doubtful.*

dŭbĭum, i, n., as subst., *uncertainty, risk.*

dŭcenti, ae, a, adj., plur., *two hundred.*

dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead; to hold, consider.*

ductus, ūs, m., *leadership, the lead, command.*

dum, conj., *while, until.*

dŭŏ, ae, o, card. num. adj., *two.*

duŏdĕcim, card. num. adj., *twelve.*

duŏ-decimus, a, um, ord. num., *twelfth.*

duŏdēni, ae, a, dis. adj., *twelve apiece, twelve.*

duplĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to double.*

dūrĭtĭa, ae, f., *hardness, hardness of life.*

dūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to harden, make hardy.*

dūrus, a, um, adj., *hard.*

dux, dŭcis, m. and f., *a leader.*

E.

ē or **ex**, (**e** before consonants, **ex** before vowels) prep. with abl., *out of, from the inside of; in accordance with; in consequence of; following after, on;* **ex unā parte**, *on one side;* **ex usu**, *of advantage.*

ĕā, (*sc.* parte *or* viā), adv., *on that side, by that way, there.* [is.]

ēdīco, ĕre, dīxi, dictum, *make known, command.*

ē-disco, ĕre, dĭdĭci, *to learn off by heart.*

ēditus, a, um, *elevated, high,* [ēdo].

ē-do, dĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *put forth, exhibit; elevate.*

ē-dŏceo, ēre, dŏcui, doctum, *teach, instruct, inform, tell.*

ē-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead forth, draw out.*

effarcio, īre, farsi, fartum, *stop up, stuff, fill.*

effēmino, are, avi, atum, *make womanish, weaken, enervate*

ef-fĕro, ferre, extŭli, ēlātum, *to bring out; to set forth, publish;* in pass., *to be puffed up, elated, inspirited.*

ef-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to bring to pass, accomplish, effect, produce.*

effŏdio, ĕre, fōdi, fossum, *dig out, tear out.*

effossus. See **effodio**.

ef-fŭgĭo, ĕre, fūgi, *to escape.*

ĕgens, ntis, pres. part. of egeo, *wanting, needy.*

ĕgĕo, ēre, ŭi, *to lack, need, be in want of.*

ĕgestās, ātis, f., *neediness, extreme poverty.*

ĕgo, mei, personal pron., *I;* pl. nōs, nostrum.

ĕgŏmet, pl. nosmet, emphatic form of ego.

ē-grĕdĭor, i, gressus, *to come* or *go out.*

ēgrĕgĭē, adv., *remarkably, splendidly.*

ē-grĕgĭus, a, um, adj., *distinguished, remarkable.* [e, grege, i.e. *out of the* (common) *herd.*]

ēgressus, a, um, part. egredior.

ēgressus, ūs, m., *going out, the way out, departure.*

ēicio, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to turn out, cast out, cast up.*

ēius-mŏdi, *of that kind, of such a kind.* [is, modus]

ē-lābor, i, elapsus, *to slip away, escape.*

ēlapsus, a, um, part. elabor.

ēlātus. See **effero**.

ēlectus. See **eligo**.

ĕlĕphantus, i, and ĕlĕphas, antis, m., *an elephant.*

ēlĭcĭo, ĕre, lĭcŭi and lexi, lĭcĭtum, *to entice* or *draw out.*

ēlĭgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum, *choose out, select, pick.*

ēmĭgro, are, avi, atum, *move out, emigrate.*

ēmĭneo, ēre, minui, no supine, *project, stand forth.*

ēmĭnus, *at a distance, from afar,* [e, manus.]

ēmitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *send forth, let go, hurl, let slip.*

ĕmo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, *buy, purchase.*

ēnascor, nasci, natus sum, *grow out, shoot out* (of branches.)

ĕnim, conj. *for.*

ēnītor, i, nixus or nīsus sum, *struggle, strive.*

ē-nuntĭo, āre, avi, atum, *to disclose, tell.*

ĕō, adv., 1. an old dat. or acc., *thither, to that place*; 2. abl. of **is** used as adv. in phrase: **eo quod**, *for the reason that*; 3. abl. used as adv. of degree, *the, by that much.*

eo, īre, ivi or ii, ĭtum, *to go.*

eōdem, adv., *to the same place.*

ephippium, i, *saddle-cloth.*

ephippiatus, a, um, adj., *furnished with saddle-cloths, saddle-using.*

ĕpistŏla, ae, f., *a letter.*

ĕpŭlae, ārum, f. (irreg. plur. of epulum), *banquets, feasts.*

ĕquĕs, ĭtis, m., *a horseman, rider*; *a (Roman) knight*; in plur., equites, *cavalry*; used also of *the "Knights"* of Gaul. [equus.]

ĕquester, tris, tre, adj., *belonging to cavalry, cavalry.*

ĕquĭtātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*

ĕquus, i, m., *a horse.*

ērectus, a, um, (pf. part. of **ērigo**) adj., *high.*

ēreptus, v. eripio.

ergā, prep. with acc., *towards.*

ĕrgo, adv., *therefore, then.*

ē-rĭgo, ĕre, rexi, rectum, *to raise* or *set up.*

ērĭpio, ĕre, rĭpŭi, reptum, *to snatch away*; with se, *to escape, flee.*

erro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to stray, wander; to wander from the truth, be mistaken.*

ērumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *burst forth, sally, make a sortie.*

ēruptĭo, ōnis, f., *a breaking out*; (of troops) *a sally.*

essĕda, ae, f., *war-chariot.*

essĕdārius, i, m., *charioteer, chariot warrior.*

ĕt, conj., *and, also*; et..et, *both..and.*

ĕtĭam, conj., *also, even, furthermore.*

etiamsi, conj., *even if, although.*

etsi, conj., *although.*

ēvādo, ĕre, vāsi, vāsum, *escape.*

ēvello, ĕre, velli, vulsum, *pull out.*

ēvĕnio, ire, vēni, ventum, *turn out, happen.*

ēventus, ūs, m., *issue, consequence, result.* [e-venio.]

ēvŏcatus, a um, pf. part. of **ēvoco**; as subst. *a veteran* serving voluntarily after his time was out.

ē-vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call out, summon.*

ēvŏlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *fly* or *rush forth.*

ex, prep., w. abl., see **e**.

exactus, see exigo.

exagito, are, avi, atum, *drive out, annoy, harass.*

exāmĭno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to weigh in the balance, examine, test.* [examen, *the tongue of the balance.*]

exănĭmātus, a, um, part. exanimo.

ex-ănĭmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to kill.* [ex, anima, breath].

ex-ardesco, ĕre, arsi, arsum, *to burst into a blaze, take fire.*

ex-audĭo, īre, īvi, ītum, *to hear distinctly.*

ex-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to go forth* or *out; to go out from; leave.*

ex-cello, ĕre, cellŭi, celsum, *to be eminent, excel.*

ex-celsus, a, um, pf. part. of excello; adj., *tall, lofty.*

excepto, are, avi, atum, *catch up, pick up* with the hands [excipio.]

exceptus, a, um, pf. part. of excipio.

ex-cĭpio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to catch, take, capture; take in turn, relieve* (of sentinels, etc.).

excĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to raise, erect, build; to arouse, incite.*

ex-clūdo, ĕre, clūsi, clūsum, *to shut out, cut off.*

ex-cōgĭto, are, avi, atum, *to think out, contrive.*

ex-crŭcĭo, are, avi, atum, *to torture.*

excŭbĭtor, ōris, m., *sentinel* ["one who lies out," ex, cubo.]

excŭbo, are, cŭbui, cŭbĭtum, *lie out, keep watch.*

exculco, are, avi, atum, *tread down,* [ex, calx, the heel.]

excursio, ōnis, f., *a running out, a sally, sortie.*

excūsatio, ōnis, f., *excuse-making, apology, defence.*

excūso, are, avi, atum, *excuse, defend.*

exemplum, i, n., *example; warning, punishment.*

ex-ĕo, ire, ii, ĭtum, *to go forth* or *out.*

ex-ercĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to employ, keep busy; drill, exercise (troops).*

exercĭtatĭo, ōnis, f., *exercise, training, practice.* [exerceo].

exercitatus, a, um, *skilled, trained.*

exercĭtus, ūs, m., *an army.* [exerceo].

ex-haurĭo, īre, hausi, haustum, *to draw out, take out.*

exĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *to bring to an end, complete.*

exiguē, adv., *barely, hardly*

exĭguĭtās, ātis, *smallness, shortness, small number, scantiness.*

exĭgŭus, a, um, adj., *small.*

exĭmius, a, um, *eminent, distinguished, excellent.*

existĭmātĭo, ōnis, f., *judgment, opinion.*

existĭmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to consider, judge, think.*

existo, (**ex-sisto**), ĕre, stĭti, stĭtum, *to come forth, arise.*

exĭtus, ūs, m., *an issue, end, result.* [exeo].

expecto, v. **exspecto**.

expĕdio, ire, ivi, or ii, ītum, *set free, disengage, get ready.*

expĕdītĭo, ōnis, f., *a foray, incursion, expedition.*

expĕdītus, part., from expedio, *unimpeded, ready, easy, lightly equipped.*

ex-pello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, *to drive out, banish, expel.*

ex-pĕrĭor, iri, pertus, *to try.*

ex-pĭo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to atone for, make good.*

expleo, ēre, plēvi, plētum, *fill up, complete.*

explōrātor, ōris, m., *a scout, spy.*

explōrātus, pf. part. of **exploro**, *ascertained for certain;* pro **explorato**, *as a fact.*

ex-plōro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to search out, reconnoitre.*

ex-pōno, ĕre, pŏsui, pŏsitum, *to land* (troops), *to set on shore* (nautical).

exporto, are, avi, atum, *carry out.*

exposco, ĕre, poposci, no supine, *demand.*

expŏsĭtus. See expono.

exprīmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, *press out; extort; raise.*

expugnātio, ōnis, f., *attack, assault.*

expugno, are, avi, atum, *take by storm, capture, attack.*

expulsus, a, um, part. **expello.**

exquīro, ĕre, quīsīvi, quīsītum, *seek out, enquire, ask for.*

exquīsītus. See **exquiro.**

exsĕquor, sĕqui, secutus or sequutus sum, *follow out; maintain, enforce.*

exsĕro, ĕre, serui, sertum, *thrust out, make bare.*

exsertus. See **exsero.**

exsisto, ĕre, stiti, stitum, 1. *make to come forth*, 2. *come forth, arise, spring up, ensue; appear; project.*

exspecto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to wait, wait for, await.*

exspŏlio, iare, iavi, iatum, *deprive, strip, rob.*

exstinguo, uĕre, stinxi, stinctum, *quench, extinguish, destroy utterly.*

exsto (exto), āre, no perf. or sup., *to stand forth; stand out, project above.*

exstructus, a, um, part. exstruo.

ex-strŭo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to build up, raise, rear.*

exter or **externus**, a, um, adj.; *outer, outward.* Comp. **exterior**, *outer;* superl. **extremus**, *outermost, last, extreme.*

exterreo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *frighten thoroughly, terrify.*

extimesco, ĕre, timui, no supine, *fear greatly, dread.*

extorqueo, ēre, torsi, tortum, *twist out, extort, force from.*

extrā, prep. w. acc., *beyond, outside of.*

ex-trăho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, *to drag out, waste.*

extrēmus, a, um, adj., super. of exterior, *furthest, extreme;* as subst., **extremum**, i, n., *the end.*

extrūdo, ĕre, trūsi, trūsum, *push out, force out.*

exŭl, is, m., *an exile, outlaw.*

ex-ŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *to despoil, strip.*

exūro, ĕre, ūssi, ūstum, *burn up.* [ex, completely.]

F.

făber, i, m., *a smith, workman, mechanic* [root FA, in facio].

făcĭlĕ, adv., *easily.*

făcĭlis, e, adj., *easy.* [facio].

făcĭnus, ŏris, n., *a crime.* [facio].

făcĭo, ĕre, fēci, factum, *to do, make:* aliquem certiorem, *to inform, let one know.*

factio, ōnis, f., *a faction, party.*

factu, abl., supine of **facio.**

factum, i, n., *a deed, action, achievement.*

factus, a, um, part. fio.

făcultās, ātis, f., *means, opportunity.*

fāgus, i, f., *a beech-tree.*

fallo, ĕre, fefelli, falsum, *deceive, disappoint.*

falsus, a, um, part. fallo; adj., *false.*

falx, cis, f., *a grappling hook*, used in attacking fortifications.

fāma, ae, f., *report, rumor, tradition; tidings.* [for, fari.]

fămēs, is, f., *hunger, famine.*

fămilia, ae, f., *household; servants; family:* paterfamiliae, *master of a house.*

fămĭlĭāris, e, adj.; usu. as subst., **fămĭlĭāris**, is, m., *an intimate friend.* [familia.]

fămĭlĭārĭtās, ātis, f., *intimacy, close friendship.*

fās, n., indecl., *what is right, lawful, permitted by Heaven.*

fastīgātē, adv., *sloping.*

fastīgatus, a, um, adj., *sloping.* [fastigo, slope off to a point.]

fastigium, i, n., *top* of a roof or hill; *sloping side, descent, declivity.*

fātum, i, n., *fate.*

făveo, ēre, fāvi, fautum, *to favor.*

fax, făcis, f., *torch, firebrand.*

felīcitās, ātis, f., *success.*

felīciter, adv., *fortunately, prosperously.*

fēmĭna, ae, f., *a woman.*

fĕmur, ŏris or ĭnis, n., *a thigh.*

fĕra, ae, f., *a wild animal.*

fĕrax, ācis, adj., *fertile.* [fero.]

fĕrē, adv., *almost, nearly.*

fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to bear, bring; to bear, endure; to assert, say.*

ferrāmentum, i, n., *an iron tool.*

ferraria, ae, f., *iron-mine.*

ferrarius, a, um, adj., *made of iron.*

ferrĕus, a, um, adj., *made of iron.* [ferrum.]

ferrum, i, n., *iron.*

fertīlis, e, adj., *fertile, fruitful.*

fertīlitās, ātis, f., *fertility.*

fĕrus, a, um, adj., *wild;* **fĕra**, ae, f., subst., *wild beast.*

fervĕfactus, a, um, part., *heated, made red-hot.* [ferveo, facio].

fervĕo, ēre, bŭi, *to be a-glow:* **ferventes glandes**, *red-hot bullets.*

fībŭla, ae, f., *brace.* [figo, fasten.]

fīdēlis, ĕ, adj., *faithful, trustworthy, true.*

fīdes, ĕi, f, *faith, confidence; assurance, word of honor.*

fiducia, ae, f., *trust, confidence.*

fĭgūra., ae, f., *form, shape.*

fīlia, ae, f., dat. and abl. pl. filiābus, *daughter.*

fīlĭus, ii, m., *a son.*

fingo, ĕre, finxi, fictum, *to form, devise, frame.*

fīnio, īre, īvi or ii, ītum, *to end; to determine* or *fix the limits of; to describe the extent of.* [finis.]

fīnis, is, m., *a boundary, border, limit;* **fines**, plur., *territory.*

fīnĭtĭmus, a, um, adj., *bordering, adjoining, neighboring;* plur. subst., **finitimi**, orum, m., *neighbors.*

fīo, fĭĕri, factus, v. irreg. (pass. of facio), *to be made, to be done, become, take place.*

firmĭter, adv., *steadily, firmly, strongly.*

firmĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *firmness, strength.*

firmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make strong, secure.*

firmus, a, um, adj., *strong, powerful.*

fistūca, ae, f., *rammer, pile-driver.*

flāgito, are, avi, atum, *ask earnestly, importune, demand.*

flamma, ae, f., *blaze, flame.*

flecto, ĕre, xi, xum, *to bend, curve.*

fleo, flēre, flēvi, flētum, *weep.*

flētus, ūs, m., *weeping.*

flo, flāre, flāvi, flātum, *to blow.*

flōrens, ntis, pres. part. of floreo, *blooming, flourishing, prosperous, influential.*

flōs, flōris, m., *flower.*

fluctus, ūs, m., *wave.*

flūmen, ĭnis, n., *a river.*

fluo, ĕre, fluxi, fluxum, *flow*.

fŏdio, ĕre, fōdi, fossum, *dig*.

foedus, ĕris, n., *a compact, treaty*.

fŏre=futurum esse, fut. infin. of **sum**.

fŏrem=essem. See **sum**.

fŏrīs, adv., *out of doors, outside, abroad*. [old abl.]

forma, ae, f., *shape*.

fors, fortis, f., *chance, luck*.

forte, adv., *perchance, peradventure*

fortis, e, adj., *brave*.

fortĭter, -tius, -tissime, adv., *bravely*.

fotĭtūdo, inis, f., *bravery, courage*.

fortuīto, adv., *by chance*.

fortūna, ae, f., *fortune:* in plur., *possessions, property*.

fortūnātus, a, um, adj., *successful, wealthy*.

fŏrum, i, n., *forum, market-place*.

fossa, ae, f, *a ditch, trench*. [fodio.]

fŏvĕa, ae, f, *a pit, pitfall* (for catching wild animals).

frango, ĕre, frēgi, fractum, *break, wreck, dash in pieces* (of ships); *break down, wear out* (of men).

frāter, tris, m., *a brother*.

frāternus, a, um, *of a brother, brotherly*.

fraus, fraudis, f., *deceit, deception*.

frĕmĭtus, ūs, m., *din, noise*.

frĕquens, entis, adj., *crowded, thronging, in large numbers*.

frētus, a, um, adj., *relying upon* (governs abl.).

frīgidus, a, um, adj., *cold*.

frīgus, ŏris, n., *cold*.

frons, tis, f., *the forehead*.

fructuōsus, a, um, *fruitful, fertile*.

fructus, ūs, m., *produce, fruit*: of money, *interest*.

frūmentārius, a, um, adj., *pertaining to corn;* **res frumentaria**, *corn supply*.

frūmentātio, ōnis, f., *foraging; obtaining corn*.

frūmentor, āri, ātus sum, *to forage*.

frūmentum, i, n., *corn, grain*.

fruor, frui, fruĭtus, or fructus sum, *enjoy*, gov's abl.

frustrā, adv., *in vain, without effect*.

fŭga, ae, f., *flight, rout, running away*.

fŭgio, ĕre, fūgi, fŭgitum, *to flee*.

fŭgĭtīvus, a, um, adj., *fleeing*; as subst., *a runaway, deserter*.

fŭgo, are, avi, atum, *put to flight, rout*.

fūmo, are, avi, atum, *smoke*.

fūmus, i, m., *smoke*.

funda, ae, f., *a sling*.

fungor, fungi, functus sum, *perform* a duty, *discharge*; gov's abl.

fūnis, is, m., *a rope*.

fūnebris, e, adj., *pertaining to a funeral; funeral* (adj.).

fūnus, ĕris, n., *burial, funeral rites*.

fŭror, ōris, m., *fury, rage, madness*.

furtum, i, n., *theft*. [fur.]

fūsĭlis, e, adj. [fundo.] strictly *molten, fluid, liquid*; at Bk. v, 43, **fusilis argilla**, *softened clay*.

fŭtūrus, a, um, future part. of **sum**.

G.

galea, ae, f., *a helmet* (of leather.)

Gallĭcus, a, um, adj., *Gaulish, Gallic*.

gallīna, ae, f., *a hen*. [gallus.]

gaudeo, ēre, gāvīsus sum, semidepon. *rejoice*.

gāvīsus. See gaudeo.

gĕner, ĕri, m., *a son-in-law*.

gĕnerātim, adv., *by tribes*.

gens, tis, f., *a clan, nation*.

gĕnus, ĕris, n., *a class, sort.*

gĕro, ĕre, gessi, gestum, *to carry on:* ger. bellum, *to wage war:* res gestae, *what has happened, events, achievements.*

glădĭus, ĭi, m., *a sword.*

glans, dis, f., *an acorn; an acorn-shaped missile.*

glēba, ae, f., *a clod* (of earth.)

glōrĭa, ae, f., *glory, renown, praise.*

grātĭa, ae, f., *favor; thanks, return, requital.*

grātŭlātĭo, ōnis, f., *rejoicing, congratulation.*

grātulor, ari, atus sum, *congratulate.*

grātus, a, um., adj., *acceptable, agreeable, pleasing.*

grăvis, e, adj., *heavy, severe.*

grăvĭtās, ātis, f., *weight, authority, gravity, importance.* [gravis.]

grăvĭter, -ius, issime, adv., *heavily; deeply, severely:* **graviter ferre**, *to be indignant at, take amiss.*

grăvo, are. avi, atum, *load heavily, weigh down;* passive, *feel displeasure, hesitate, be unwilling.*

gŭbernātor, ōris, m., *a helmsman.* [guberno.]

gusto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to taste, eat.*

H.

hăbĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to have: to deem, hold, consider:* orationem or contionem habēre, *to deliver a speech* or *harangue.*

haesĭto, are, avi, atum, *stick, stick fast, remain fixed* [haereo.]

hāmus, i, m., *hook.*

harpăgo, ōnis, m., *grappling-hook.*

haud, adv., *not.*

hērēdĭtas, ātis, f., *heirship, inheritance.* [heres.]

hīberna, orum, n., *winter-quarters.*

hībernācŭlum, i, n., *winter abode.*

hīc, haec, hōc, demonstr., pron., *this.*

hīc, adv., *here.*

hĭĕmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to pass the winter; to winter.* [hiems.]

hĭems, is, f., *winter.*

hinc, adv., *hence.*

hŏdĭē, adv., *to-day* [hoc-die.]

hŏmo, ĭnis, comm., *a human being, a man.*

hŏnestus, a, um, adj., *distinguished, honorable, noble.* [honor.]

hŏnor, ōris, m., *honor, esteem.*

honōrifĭcus, a, um, *honor-producing, honorable, full of honor* [facis.]

hōra, ae, f., *an hour.*

horreo, ēre, horrui, no supine, *shudder, shudder at, dread.*

horrĭdus, a, um, adj., *rough, uncouth, savage.*

hortor, āri, ātus, *to exhort, urge.*

hospes, ĭtis, m., *a guest.*

hospĭtĭum, ĭi, n., *hospitality;* at *V.* 27, it means, *hospitable relations.*

hostis, is, comm., *an enemy.*

hūc, adv., *to this place, hither;* **accedit huc**, *to this is added.*

huiusmŏdi, *of this sort.*

hūmānus, a, um, adj., *refined, civilized.* [homo.]

hŭmerus, i. m., *shoulder.*

hŭmĭlis, e, adj., *lowly; insignificant.* [humus.]

hŭmĭlĭtās, ātis, f., *lowliness, weakness.*

I.

N.B.—No distinction is made between I and J.

iaceo, ēre, iacui, no supine, *lie down, lie;* **iacens**, as subst., *one fallen.*

iăcio, ĕre, iēci, iactum, *to cast, hurl, fling, throw.*

iacto, are, avi, atum, *fling, toss about; discuss.*

iactūra, ae, f. *(a throwing), expense, cost.*

iăcŭlum, i, n., *a dart, javelin.* [iacio.]

iam, adv., *now, already.*

ĭbi, adv., *in that place, there.* [is.]

ictus, ūs, m., *a blow, stab, stroke* [īco.]

idcirco, adv., *for that reason.*

ĭdentĭdem, adv., *from time to time, repeatedly, again and again,* [idem, doubled.]

īdem, ĕădem, ĭdem, pron., *the same.*

ĭdōnĕus, a, um, adj., *convenient, suitable, adapted.*

Idūs, uum, f. pl., *the Ides,* the 13th day of the month, except in March, May, July, October, when it was the 15th.

ignis, is, m., *fire.*

ignōbĭlis, e, adj., *unknown to fame, obscure.*

īgnōmĭnia, ae, f., *disgrace, dishonor.*

ignōro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to be ignorant of.* [in gnarus.]

īgnōsco, ĕre, gnōvi, gnōtum, *(not to know), to pardon, overlook, forgive*

ĭgnotus, a, um, pf. part. of **ignosco**; as adj., *unknown.*

illatus, v. inlatus.

ille, a, ud, pron. dem., *that; he, she, it.*

illic, adv., *there, in that place.*

illigatus, v. inligatus.

illigo, v. inligo.

illo, adv., *thither, to that place; to that end.*

illustris, v. inlustris.

imbēcillitās, ātis, *weakness, feebleness.*

imber, imbris, m., *rain, rainstorm.*

ĭmĭtor, ari, ātus sum, *to imitate.*

immānis, e, adj., *enormous, huge.*

immĭnĕo, ēre, no perf. or sup., *to impend, be close at hand.*

immitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send against, cast, hurl, let loose.* [inmitto.]

immŏlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to offer up, sacrifice.* [in, mola.]

immortālis, e, adj., *undying, immortal.* [in, mortalis, mors.]

immūnis, ĕ, adj., *free from taxes; free from public duty; exempt.*

immūnitās, ātis, f., *exemption* or *freedom from public charges and services.*

imparātus, a, um, adj., *unprepared.*

impĕdīmentum, i, n., *a hindrance;* plur., **impedimenta**, orum, *the baggage (train) of an army.* [impedio.]

impĕdīo, ire, īvi or ĭi, ītum, *to entangle, hamper, hinder.* [in, pes.]

impĕdītus, a, um, part. impedio.

impello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, *to drive on, urge; impel; instigate.*

impendeo, ēre, no pf. or supine, *hang over, overhang.*

impensus, a, um, *dear* (in price). [impendo.]

impĕrātor, ōris, m., *a commander* (in chief).

impĕrātum, i, n, *that which is commanded; a command, order.* [impero.]

imperfectus, a, um, adj., *unfinished, incomplete.*

impĕrītus, a, um, adj., *inexperienced, ignorant.*

impĕrĭum, ĭi, n., *a command, order; authority, control, power.*

impĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to command, order.*

impetro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to obtain a wish.*

impĕtus, ūs, m., *assault, attack, onset.*

impĭus, a, um, adj., *without reverence for the gods, one's country,* or *parents; impious, wicked.* [in-pius.]

implĭco, are, avi, or ui, ātum or ĭtum, *enfold, entangle, involve.* [plĭco, fold.]

implōro, are, avi, atum, *to entreat, appeal to.*

impōno, ĕre, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum, *place on; impose; mount.*

importo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to convey, import.*

importatus, *V.* importo.

imprīmīs, adv., *especially, particularly.* [in, primus.]

imprŏbus, a, um, *bad, shameless.*

imprōvīsum, i, n., *that which is unforeseen:* usu. in abl. w. de, adverbially, **de improviso** *suddenly, unexpectedly.* [in, pro, video.]

imprōvīsus, a, um, adj., *unforeseen.*

imprūdens, entis, adj., *unwitting, taken unawares.*

imprūdentia, ae, f., *ignorance, lack of foresight.*

impūbes, ĕris, adj., *unmarried, under age.*

impugno, are, avi, atum, *fight against, attack, assail, charge.*

impulsus, a, um, part., impello.

impūne, adv., *without punishment.*

impūnītās, ātis, *freedom from punishment, impunity.*

imus, superl. of **inferus.**

impulsus, ūs, m., *prompting, instigation.* [impello.]

ĭn, prep. w. acc., *into, against, to, towards;* w. abl., *in, on, upon, among, within.*

ĭnānis, e, adj., *empty, void.*

incautē, adv., *carelessly.*

incautus, a, um, adj., *heedless, off one's guard.* [caveo.]

incēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *advance, proceed; come upon, seize upon* (as of grief, etc.)

incendĭum, ĭi, n., *a fire, camp-fire.*

incendo, ĕre, cendi, censum, *set on fire, burn; rouse, fire, excite.* [candeo, shine.]

inceptus. See **incipio.**

incertus, a, um, adj., *doubtful:* iter incertum, *taken at hazard* or *at a venture.*

incĭdo, ĕre, cĭdi, cāsum, *to happen, occur.* [in, cado.]

incīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum, *cut into, lop off.* [caedo, cut.]

incĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to begin.*

incīsus. See **incīdo.**

incīto, are, avi, atum, *rouse, urge, incite.*

incŏgnĭtus, a, um, *unknown.* [cognosco.]

incrĕpĭto, are, avi, atum, *reproach, blame, chide, taunt.*

incumbo, ĕre, cŭbui, cŭbĭtum, (*to lie or lean upon*), *devote one's self to, attend to.*

incursus, ūs, *an assault, attack.*

in-cŏlo, ĕre, cŏlŭi, cultum, *to inhabit, dwell.*

incŏlŭmis, e, adj., *safe, unharmed.*

ĭncommŏdē, adv., *disastrously, unfortunately.*

incommŏdum, i, n., *disadvantage, disaster, misfortune.*

incrēdĭbĭlis, e, adj., *not to be believed, marvellous.* [in, credo.]

incursĭo, ōnis, f., *invasion, attack.* [incurro.]

inde, adv., *from that place, thence.*

indĭcĭum, i, n., *secret information.*

in-dīco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to appoint, proclaim.*

indictus, perf. part. of **indīco.**

indictus, a, um, adj., *unsaid*—**causā indictā**, *without a hearing.* [in, not, dico.]

indignē, adv., *unworthily, shamefully.*

indignitās, ātis, f., *unworthiness, unbecoming conduct; disgrace, indignity, insult.*

indignor, ari, atus sum, *think unworthy, be indignant at.*

indignus, a, um, adj., *unworthy.*

indīligens, ntis, adj., *careless, heedless.*

indīligenter, adv., *carelessly.*

indīligentia, ae, f., *carelessness.*

indūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, *lead on or into, induce, influence; cover.*

indulgeo, ēre, dulsi, dultum, *favor, indulge, be kind to.*

indŭo, ŭĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *put on*—**se induere**, *to get tangled.*

industriē, adv., *industriously, diligently.*

indūtiae, arum, pl. f., *a truce, armistice.*

ĭn-ĕo, īre, īvi, or ii, ĭtum, *to go into, enter upon.*

inermis, e, adj., *unarmed.* [in, arma.]

iners, ertis, adj., *indolent, idle, unmanly.* [in, not; ars.]

infāmĭa, ae, f., *disgrace, dishonor.*

infans, ntis, c., *one who does not speak; an infant, child.* [in, not; fari, speak.]

infectus, a, um, adj., *unaccomplished.* [facio.]

infĕrĭor, us, comp. adj., *lower.* [inferus, infra.]

infĕro, -ferre, intŭli, inlātum or illātum, *to bring on* or *against:* bellum, *to make, to wage, carry on against:* vulnus, *to inflict:* in ignem, *to throw* (anything) *into.*

inferus, a, um, adj., *below, underneath*; compar. **inferior**, *lower*; superl. **infĭmus**, or **īmus**, *lowest*; *lowest part of.*

infestus, a, um, adj., *hostile.*

in-fĭcio, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to dye, stain.*

infĭdēlis, e, adj., *unfaithful.*

infīgo, ĕre, fixi, fixum, *fasten in.*

infĭmus. See **inferus.**

infīnītus, a, um, adj., *endless, unlimited.* [in, finis.]

infĭrmĭtās, ātis, f., *weakness, fickleness.*

in-firmus, a, um, adj., *weak.*

inflecto, ĕre, flexi, flexum, *to bend.*

influo, ĕre, fluxi, fluxum, *to flow into.*

infŏdio, ĕre, fōdi, fossum, *bury, dig in.*

infrā, prep. w. acc., *below, under.*

ingens, entis, adj., *large, vast, immense.*

ingrātus, a, um, adj., *displeasing.* [in, gratus.]

ingrĕdĭor, grĕdi, gressus, *to advance, enter on.*

inicio, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *throw in, infuse; lay on.* [in, iacio.]

iniectus. See **inicio.**

ĭnĭmīcĭtĭa, ae, f., *enmity, hostility.*

ĭnĭmīcus, a, um, adj., *unfriendly;* subst., **inimicus**, i, m., *an enemy, foe.* [in, amicus.]

inīquitās, ātis, *unevenness; inequality; unfairness; bad character; unfavorable position.*

ĭnīquus, a, um, adj., *not level:* locus, *disadvantageous, unfavorable.* [in, aequus.]

ĭnĭtĭum, ii, n., *a beginning.* [in, eo.]

ĭnĭtus, a, um, part. ineo.

iniungo, ĕre, iunxi, iunctum, *fix, fasten upon.*

iniūrĭa, ae, f., *injury, wrong, oppression.* [in, ius.]

in-iussu, m., (only in abl.), *without the command.*

inlātus, (ill-), a, um, part. infero.

inlĭgātus, (ill-), a, um, part. inlĭgo.

in-lĭgo, (ill-), āre, avi, atum, *to bind on, tie on.*

inlustris, (ill-), e, adj., *distinguished, high* (of social rank). [in, lustro.]

innascor, nasci, nātus sum, *be born in; spring up.*

innītor, nīti, nīsus or nixus sum, *lean on.* [nitor.]

innixus. See innitor.

in-nŏcens, ntis, adj., *harmless, guiltless, innocent.*

innocentia, ae, f., *innocence, blamelessness, integrity.*

ĭnŏpĭa, ae, f., *want, lack, poverty.*

inŏpīnans, ntis, adj., *not expecting, unawares, off one's guard.*

inpĕtro, v. impetro.

inquit, v. defect., *says he.*

in-rumpo, (irr-), ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *to break, burst,* or *rush in,* or *into.*

inscĭens, entis, adj., *not knowing, ignorant.*

inscientia, ae, f., *lack of knowledge, ignorance.*

inscius, a, um, adj., *not knowing, ignorant.*

insĕquor, i, quūtus or cūtus, *to follow up, pursue.*

insero, ĕre, serui, sertum, *fasten into.* [sero, join.]

insĭdĭae, ārum, f., plur., *an ambuscade, ambush.* [insideo.]

insĭdĭor, āri, ātus sum, *to lay an ambush.*

insignē, is, n., *sign, badge, distinction.*

insignis, e, adj., *noted, remarkable.*

ĭnsīlio, ire, silui, sultum, *leap upon.* [salio.]

insĭmŭlo, are, avi, atum, *charge, accuse.*

insinuo, are, avi, atum, *worm one's way into, thrust one's self into, penetrate.*

insisto, ĕre, stĭti no sup., with in. and acc., *to devote oneself to; press forw rd.*

insŏlenter, adv., *haughtily, insolently.*

inspecto, are, avi, atum, *look on.*

instābilis, e, adj., *unsteady.* [in, not; sto.]

instans, pres. part. of insto, *pressing, imminent.*

instar, n, indecl., *image of; like unto,* gov's gen.

instīgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to urge on, incite.*

instĭtŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *to set up, build: to fabricate, fashion, make:* sermonem, *to arrange, keep up.*

instĭtūtum, i, n., *mode* or *manner of life, custom, habits.*

in-sto, stāre, stĭti, stātum, *to press forward.*

instructus. See instruo.

instrūmentum, i, n., *furniture.* [in-struo.]

instrŭo, ĕre, struxi, structum, *to build, construct; to draw up in array; fit out, equip.*

insuēfactus, a, um, adj., *unaccustomed.*

insuētus, a, um., adj., *unaccustomed.*

insŭla, ae, f., *an island.*

insŭper, adv., *above, overhead, on top.*

intĕger, gra, grum, adj., *untouched, whole, new; unimpaired, undiminished.*

intĕgo, ĕre, texi, tectum, *cover, cover over.*

intellĕgo, ĕre, exi, ectum, *to understand, perceive: to be quite aware.*

intendo, ĕre, tendi, tentum, *strive.*

intentus, a, um, *attentive, eager, bent on, intent.*

inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among, during.*

inter-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to come between, intervene; to interfere, occur, arise.*

inter-cĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to catch* or *seize on the way, to intercept.* [inter, capio.]

interclūdo, ĕre, clūsi, clūsum, *shut off, cut off, block up, hinder.*

inter-dīco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to forbid, prohibit, interdict.*

interdiu, adv., *in the day time, by day.*

interdum, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile; sometimes.*

intĕrēā, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

intĕr-ĕo, īre, ĭi, ĭtum, *to die, perish.*

inter-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to kill, slay.*

interĭcio, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *throw between, put between*; in pass. of time, *elapse, intervene.* [iacio.]

intĕrim, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.* [inter, im (old acc. of is.)]

intĕrior, ōris, adj., comp. from intra, *inner, interior.*

intĕrĭtus, ūs, m., *destruction, death* [intereo.]

intermitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to put* or *send between; to leave off, to allow to pass* or *elapse, to pause, to stop.*

internĭcio (-necio), ōnis, f., *slaughter; utter destruction, annihilation.* [inter, neco, kill.]

interpello, are, avi, atum, *interrupt, disturb, hinder.*

inter-pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to put* or *set between*: fidem, *to pledge one's word.*

inter-pres, ĕtis, comm., *an interpreter.*

interprĕtor, ari, atus sum, *to explain, expound.*

interrŏgo, are, avi, atum, *ask, question.*

interrumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *break down, break up.*

interscindo, ĕre, scĭdi, scissum, *cut down, destroy.*

inter-sum, esse, fŭi, *to be among, to take part in*; also as impersonal verb, **interest**, *to be of importance, to concern.*

intervallum, i, n., *interval.* [inter, vallum.]

intervĕnio, īre, vēni, ventum, *to come up, arrive.*

interventus, ūs, *coming up; arrival on the scene, intervention.*

intexo, ĕre, ui, textum, *weave in, interlace.*

intŏleranter, adv., *excessively, earnestly, vehemently.*

intrā, prep. w. acc., *within.*

intrītus, a, um, adj., *unworn, unfatigued.* [tero.]

intro, are, avi, atum, *enter, go in.*

intrōdūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, *lead into.*

intro-ĕo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to go into, to enter.*

intrŏĭtus, ūs, m., *entrance.* [introeo.]

intrō-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send* or *let in.*

introrsus, adv., *towards the interior; inwards.* [intro, versus.]

intrō-rumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *to break in, enter by force.*

intueor, tuēri, tuĭtus sum, *look upon, gaze upon.*

intŭli, v. infero.

intus, adv., *on the inside, within.*

inūsitātus, a, um, adj., *strange, unfamiliar, novel.*

inūtilis, e, adj., *useless, unserviceable, disadvantageous.*

invĕnio, īre, vēni, ventum, *to discover, find.*

inventor, ōris, m., *an author, discoverer.*

in-vĕtĕrasco, rascere, rāvi, incep., *to grow old, to become established* or *fixed.*

invictus, a, um, *unconquerable, invincible.*

invĭdeo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, *envy, be jealous of.*

invĭdia, ae, f., *envy.*

inviŏlātus, a. um, adj., *sacred, inviolable.*

invĭtātus, a, um, part. invito.

invīto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to invite, allure.*

invītus, a, um, adj., *unwilling.*

ipse, a, um, pron. demonstr., *self; himself, herself, itself;* for emphasis, *very, just.*

īrācundĭa, ae, f., *passion, anger.*

īrācundus, a, um, *passionate, prone to anger.*

irrīdeo, ēre, rīsi, rīsum, *laugh at, mock, ridicule.*

irrīdĭcŭlē, adv., *without wit;* **non irridicule**, *wittily.*

irrumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *break into, rush into.*

irruptio, ōnis, f., *a breaking into, attack, sortie, dash.*

is, ĕă, id, pron. demonstr., *that; he, she, it.*

iste, a, ud, pron., demonst., *that of yours, that near you, that which you are interested in,* &c.

ĭta, adv., *in this manner, so, thus.*

ĭtăque, conj., *and so, accordingly, therefore.*

ĭtem, adv., *also, likewise.*

ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, n, *journey, march; road, path, way.* [supine stem it- of eo, to go.]

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

iŭba, ae, f., *mane.*

iŭbĕo, ēre, iussi, iussum, *to bid, command, order.*

iūdĭcĭum, ĭi, n., *judgment, decision, opinion.* [iudex.]

iūdĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to decide, judge.* [iudex.]

iŭgum, i, n., *yoke, ridge.*

iūmentum, i, n., *baggage animal, beast of burden.* [iugum.]

iunctura, ae, f., *a joining, joint, space between; span.*

iunctus. See **iungo.**

iungo, ĕre, iunxi, iunctum, *join, unite, connect.*

iūnior. See iuvenis.

iūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to swear.*

iūs, iūris, n., *right* (i. e., *legal right,* what one is entitled to); *rightful authority.*

iūs-iūrandum, iūrisiurandi, n., *an oath.* [ius, iuro.]

iussus, a, um, part. iubeo.

iustĭtĭa, ae, f, *justice.*

iustus, a, um, adj., *complete, regular, due.*

iŭvenis, e, adj., *young;* comp. **iunior**, superl., **minimus natu.**

iŭventūs, ūtis, f., collective noun, *the youth, the young persons of a community.*

iŭvo, āre, iūvi, iūtum, *to help.*

iuxtā, adv., *near, next.*

K.

Kal. = **Kalendae.**

Kalendae, arum, f., pl., the Calends or Kalends, the Roman name for the first day of the month. **Kalendae Apriles**, the April Kalends, or Kalends of April, April 1st.

L.

L. = **Lucius.**

lābor, lābi, lapsus, *to slip, tumble down;* hence, *to slip* or *fall away from* a thing, *to be disappointed.*

lăbor, ōris, m., *labor, toil.*

lăbōro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to labor, to be in difficulties, to be hard pressed.*

labrum, i, n., *a lip; rim, brim.*

lac, lactis, n., *milk.*

lăcesso, ĕre, essīvi, essītum, *to attack, provoke.*

lacrĭma, ae, f., *a tear.*

lacrimo, are, avi, atum, *weep.*

lăcus, ūs, m., *a lake.*

laedo, ĕre, laesi, laesum, *hurt, violate.*

laetātĭo, ōnis, f., *exultation, rejoicing.* [laetor.]

laetĭtĭa, ae, f., *joyfulness, rejoicing.*

laetus, a, um, *glad, joyous, joyful.*

languidē, adv., *feebly.*

languor, ōris, m., *feebleness, weariness.* [langueo.]

lăpis, ĭdis, m., *a stone.*

lapsus, a, um, part. lābor.

laqueus, i, m., *noose.*

largĭor, īri, ītus, *to bestow, impart, yield.* [largus.]

largĭter, adv., *greatly, much.* **largiter posse**, *to have great influence.*

largītio, ōnis, f., *liberality, bribery.*

lassitūdo, ĭnis, f., *faintness, weariness, exhaustion.*

lātē, adv., *widely, broadly, extensively*, comp. **latius**, sup. **latissime**.

lātēbra, ae, f., *hiding-place, covert.*

lăteo, lătēre, lătui, no supine, *lie hid, be unnoticed.*

lātissĭme, sup. adv. [latus.]

lātĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *breadth, width.* [lātus.]

lātius, compar. of **lātē**.

latro, ōnis, *robber, freebooter.*

latrōcĭnĭum, ii, n., *freebooting, robbery, highway-robbery:* in plur., *freebooting expeditions, forays.* [latrocinor, latro.]

lătus, ĕris, n., *a side.*

lātus, a, um, adj., *wide, broad.*

laudo, are, avi, atum, *praise.*

laus, laudis, f., *praise, credit.*

lăvo, are, lāvi, lavātum, lautum or lōtum, *wash;* pass. used reflexively, *bathe.*

laxo, are, avi, atum, *spread out, open out, extend.*

lēgātĭo, ōnis, f., *an embassy.* [lēgo, *to send with a commission, to depute.*]

lēgātus, i, m., *a lieutenant-general; an envoy, ambassador, deputy.* [lēgo.]

lĕgĭo, ōnis, f., *a legion.* [lĕgo, *to choose.*]

lĕgionārius, a, um, adj., *legionary (soldier).*

lēnis, e, adj., *gentle, slack.*

lēnĭtās, ātis, f., *smoothness, gentleness.*

lēnĭter, adv., *gently, slightly, slowly.*

lēnĭus, adv., comp. of lēnĭter, *more feebly.*

lĕpus, ŏris, m., *a hare.*

lĕvis, e, adj., *light* (i.e. *not heavy*); hence, *light-minded, frivolous.*

lĕvĭtās, ātis, f., *lightness; fickleness.* [lĕvis.]

lĕvo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to lighten, ease, relieve.*

lex, lēgis, f., *a law.*

lĭbenter, adv., *freely, willingly, gladly.*

lĭber, era, erum, adj., *free.*

lībĕrālĭtās, ātis, f., *liberality, generosity, kindness.*

lībĕrālĭter, adv., *graciously, courteously, kindly.*

lībĕrē, adv., *freely.*

lībĕri, ōrum, m., plur., *children.* [lĭber, *free.*]

lībĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make* or *set free; to free, release.* [lĭber.]

lĭbertās, ātis, f., *freedom, liberty.*

lībrīlis, e, adj., *a pound in weight.* [lĭbra, a pound, a balance.]

lĭcentia, ae, f., *lawlessness, presumption.*

lĭceor, ēri, licitus sum, *bid.*

lĭcet, ēre, lĭcŭit, and lĭcĭtum est, impers. v. *it is lawful; it is allowed, permitted.*

lignātĭo, ōnis, f., *felling* or *getting wood.* [lignum.]

lignātor, ōris, m., *a woodcutter, one sent to get wood.*

līlium, i, n., *lily.*

līnea, ae, f., *line.* [linum, thread.]

lingua, ae, f., *tongue, language.*

lingula, ae, *a tongue of land, point.* [lingua.]

linter, tris, f., *boat, skiff.*

līnum, i, n, *flax.*

līs, lītis, f., *dispute, lawsuit:* **litem aestimare**, *to settle the matter in dispute.*

littera, ae, f., 1. singular, a *letter* of the alphabet; 2. plur., *an epistle, letter, dispatch*; *writing, literature.*

lītus, ŏris, n., *shore* of the sea, *strand, beach.*

lŏcus, i, m. (pl. loca, orum, n.), *place, position, region; chance, opportunity.*

lŏcūtus. See **lŏquor.**

longē, -ius, -issime, adv., *far.* [longus.]

longinquus, a, um, adj., *distant; long, prolonged.* [longus.]

longĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *length.* [longus.]

longŭrius. i, m., *a long pole.*

longus, a, um, adj., *long.*

lŏquor, loqui, loquūtus or locūtus sum, *to speak, talk, say.*

lōrīca, ae, f. (*a cuirass made of leather thongs:* hence) *a breastwork, mantlet, parapet.* [lorum, *a thong.*]

Lūna, ae, f., *the moon, the moon-goddess.*

lux, lūcis, f., *light:* primâ luce, *at day break.*

luxŭria, ae, f., *luxury.*

M.

M. = Marcus.

M'. = Manius.

māceria, ae, f., *wall, enclosure.*

māchinātio. ōnis, f., *a contrivance, machine.* [māchĭna.]

maestus, a, um, adj., *sad, sorrowful.*

măgis, adv., *more,* comp. of **magnŏpere**; superl. **maximē.**

măgistrātus, ūs, m., *a magistrate.*

magnĭfĭcus, a, um, adj., *grand, splendid, magnificent.* [magnus, facio.]

magnĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *greatness; great amount:* venti, *force, violence.* [magnus.]

magnŏpĕrē, = **magno opere**, adv., *greatly, earnestly, strongly.*

magnus, a, um, adj., (comp. **māior**, us; sup. **maxĭmus**, a, um), *great:* ĭtinera, *forced marches.*

maiestās, ātis, f., *greatness, dignity.*

māiōres, um, m, (*v.* magnus), plur. subst., *ancestors, forefathers.*

mălăcia, ae, f., *a calm, stillness.*

mălĕficium, i, n, *an evil deed, crime, mischief, hurt.*

mālo, malle, mālui, *I prefer, I would rather.*

mălus, a, um, adj., *bad, evil.*

mālus, i, m., *upright pole; mast* of a ship.

mandātum, i, n., *order, injunction, instruction.*

mando, āre, āvi, ātum, *to commit* (to any one's charge), *to consign, entrust, enjoin upon*; litteris, *to commit to writing.*

māne, adv., *in the morning, early.*

mănĕo, ēre, mansi, mansum, *to bide, to stay, remain.*

manĭpulāris, e, *belonging to a maniple* or *company.*

manipŭlus, i, m., *a maniple, company of soldiers.* See Introduction.

mansŭēfăcĭo, ĕre, fēci, factum, *to tame.* [mansuetus (part. of mansuesco = manus, suesco, *to accustom to be handled*), facio.]

mansuētudo, inis, f., *gentleness, mercy, kindness, compassion.*

mănus, ūs. f., *a hand*; *a band, body, force* (of soldiers).

mărĕ, is, n., *the sea.*

maris, v. mas.

mărĭtŭmus (also **marĭtĭmus**), a, um., adj., *maritime, of the sea.*

mās, măris, adj., *male, of the male sex*; subst., *a male* (opp. femina).

mătăra, ae, f., *a Gaulish javelin, pike.*

māter, tris, f., *mother*; **matres familiae**, *matrons.*

mātĕrĭa, ae, f., *timber.*

mātĕrior, iari, iatus sum, *procure timber.* [materia.]

mātrimōnium, i, n., *marriage, wedlock.*

mātūrē, adj., *early, soon.*

mātūresco, ĕre, rui, no sup., *to grow ripe.*

mātūro, are, avi, atum, *make haste, hasten.*

mātūrus, a, um, *ripe, early.*

maxĭmē, adv., *most of all, chiefly, especially.* [maximus, magnus.]

maximus, a, um, superl of **magnus.**

mĕdĕor, ēri, *to cure, heal, remedy.*

mĕdĭōcris, e, adj., *middling, moderate.* [medius.]

mediōcrĭter, adv., *moderately.*

mĕdĭterrāneus, a, um, adj., *inland.*

mĕdĭus, a, um, adj., *mid, middle.*

mĕlĭor, ius, adj., *better.* [comp. of bonus.]

membrum, i. n., *a limb, member of the body.*

mĕmĭnī, isse, defective verb (used only in perf. tenses), *remember.*

mĕmŏrĭa, ae, f., *memory, recollection.*

mendācium, i, n., *falsehood, lie.*

mens, mentis, f., *the mind.*

mensis, is, m., *a month.*

mensūra, ae, f., *measure, extent.* [metior.]

mentio, ōnis, f., *mention.*

mercātŏr, ōris, m., *trader, merchant.*

mercātūra, ae, f., *commerce, trade.* [mercor, merx.]

mercēs, ēdis, f., *pay, hire, reward.*

mĕreo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, also **mereor**, ēri, itus sum, *merit, deserve, earn*; *serve.*

mĕrīdĭānus, a, um, adj., *mid-day.*

merīdiēs, ei, m., *mid-day*; *the south.*

mĕrĭtum, i, n., *good deed, service* (to any one). [mereo.]

-met, enclitic, suffix, used to emphasize pronouns, *e.g.*, **nosmet**, *ourselves.*

mētior, iri, mensus sum, *measure, measure out, distribute*; used passively, *be measured out*, I, 16, 23.

mĕto, ĕre, messui, messum, *reap, harvest.*

mĕtus, ūs, m., *fear.*

meus, a, um, poss. adj., *my, mine.*

mīle or **mille**, card. num. adj. (plur., as subst., **mīlĭa** or **millia**), *a thousand.*

mīles, ĭtis, m., *a soldier.*

mīlĭtāris, e, adj., *belonging to a soldier* or *soldiering*; gloria rei militaris, *military renown.* [miles.]

mīlĭtĭa, ae, f., *military service.* [miles.]

mĭnĭmē, superl. adv., *least.*

mĭnĭmus, a, um, adj., superl. of **parvus**, *least.*

mĭnor, us, adj., comp. of **parvus**, *less.*

mĭnŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *to make smaller, lessen, diminish.*

mĭnus, adv., *less, the less.* [minor.]

mīror, āri, ātus, *to wonder, wonder at.*

mīrus, a, um, adj., *wonderful, strange, marvellous.*

mĭser, ĕra, ĕrum, adj., *wretched, miserable.*

mĭsercordia, ae, f., *pity, compassion, mercy.*

mĭseror, ari, atus sum, *lament, deplore.*

missus, a, um, pf. part. mitto.

missus, ūs, m., *a sending.* [mitto.]

mītissimē, adv., superl. of mite, *very gently, very kindly.*

mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send, throw.*

mōbĭlis, e, adj., *fickle, changeable.*

mōbĭlitās, ātis, f., *speed, rapid movement; fickleness.* [moveo.]

mōbĭliter, adv., *easily.*

mŏderor, ari, atus sum, *check, manage, regulate.*

mŏdestia, ae, f., *self-control; subordination.*

mŏdŏ, adv., *but, merely, only.* [originally abl. of modus=a *limit* or *measure.*]

mŏdus, i, m., *a measure; a way, manner.*

moenia, ium, n. pl., *walls* (of a city), *fortifications.*

mōlēs, is, f., *mass, mound, dam.*

mŏlestē, adv., *with trouble, annoyance.*

mōlīmentum, i, n., *great effort; exertion.* [mōlior.]

mŏlĭtus. See **molo.**

mollio, ire, ivi, ītum, *soften, make easy.*

mollis, e, adj., *gentle, gently sloping.*

mollitia, ae, and **mollitiēs**, ĕi, f., *softness, weakness, irresolution.*

mŏlo, ĕre, ui, ĭtum, *grind.*

mōmentum, i, n., *influence, weight, importance, account.*

mŏnĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to advise, caution, warn, instruct.*

mons, montis, m., *a mountain.*

mŏra, ae, f., *delay.*

mŏrātus. See **mŏror.**

morbus, i, m., *a disease.*

mŏrior, mŏri (or moriri) mortuus sum, *die.*

mŏror, āri, ātus, *to delay, tarry, remain, stay; to hinder, hamper.* [mora.]

mors, tis, f., *death.*

mortŭus, a, um, pf. part., *dead.* [morior.]

mōs, mōris, m., *custom, fashion, manner, usage.*

mōtus, ūs, m., *motion, movement:* as political term, *commotion, disturbance.* [moveo.]

mŏvĕo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move;* castra movēre, *to break up camp.*

mulier, ĕris, f., *a woman.*

multĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *a crowd, a large number of people; the multitude,* i. e., *the people in general, the masses* or *populace.* [multus.]

multo, are, avi, atum, *punish, fine, deprive of.*

multō, adv., *much, by far:* used with comparatives. [multus.]

multum, adv., *much, greatly, considerably.* [multus.]

multus, a, um, adj., *much;* in plur., *many.*

mūlus, i, m., *a mule.*

mundus, i, m., *the world, the universe.* [mundus, *clean, neat.*]

mūnīmentum, i, n., *fortification, defence.*

mūnĭo, īre, īvi, or ii, ītum, *to fortify; guard.*

mūnītĭo, ōnis, f., *a fortifying, fortification.* [munio.]

mūnītus, a, um, part. munio, *fortified,* as adj.: munitissima (castra), *very strongly protected.* [moenia.]

mūnus, ĕris, n., *a duty.*

mūrālis, e, adj., *belonging to a wall, mural.* [murus.]

mūrus, i, m., *a wall.*

musculus, i, *a little mouse*; in military sense, *a shed*; built strongly of wood, used in sieges as a shelter for soldiers engaged in assailing the walls of a town. [dimin. of mūs.]

mūtĭlus, a, um, adj., *maimed, wanting.*

N.

nactus, a, um, part. nanciscor.

nam, conj., *for.*

namque, conj., *for.*

nanciscor, i, nanctus or nactus, *to obtain, get.*

nascor, nasci, nātus, *to be born, to arise, to be produced.*

nātālis, e, adj., *belonging to birth, birth-.* [nascor.]

nātĭo, ōnis, f., *a race of people, a nation.* [nascor.]

nātīvus, a, um, adj., *natural.*

nātūra, ae, f., *nature.* [nascor.]

nātus, a, um, part. nascor.

nātus, ūs, m., (used only in abl. sing., natu), *birth*; **maiores natu**, *elderly men.*

nauta, ae, m., *a sailor.* [navis.]

nāvālis, e., adj., *naval.* [navis.]

nāvĭcula, ae, f., *a small vessel, ship, boat.* [dimin. of navis.]

nāvĭgātio, ōnis, f., *a voyage, sailing.* [navis.]

nāvĭgĭum, i, n., *vessel, craft.* [navis.]

nāvĭgō, āre, āvi, ātum, *to sail, make a voyage.* [navis.]

nāvis, is, f., *a ship.*

nāvo, are, avi, atum, *perform busily, do with zeal*; **navare operam**, *act vigorously, do one's best.* [=(g)navo fr. gnavus, *busy.*]

nē, adv. and conj., *not, that not, lest*: **ne..quidem**, *not even.*

-nĕ, an enclitic particle, interrog.; **-ne..an**, *whether..or.*

nĕcessārio, adv., *perforce, of necessity.* [necesse.]

necessarius, a, um, adj., *urgent, necessary.*

necessarius, i, m., *an intimate friend, relative.*

nĕcesse, neut. adj., *unavoidable.*

nĕcessĭtās, ātis, f., *unavoidableness, necessity* (in the sense of *compulsion*).

necessitudo, inis, f., *friendship, intimacy.*

necne, conj., *or not.*

nĕco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to kill, put to death.*

necŭbi, conj., *in order that nowhere, lest anywhere.*

nĕfārius, a, um, adj., *wicked.* [nefas.]

nĕfās, indecl. noun, n., *a crime* against divine law, *impious deed.*

neglĕgo, ĕre, exi, ctum, *to disregard, make light of.* [nec, lĕgo=*not to gather up.*]

nĕgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to say no, to deny, to refuse.* [ne, aio.]

negōtior, iari, iatus sum, *transact* or *carry on business.*

nĕgōtĭum, ii, n., *a business, matter.* [nec, otium.]

nēmo, acc. nēmĭnem, (nullīus and nullo in best Lat., used for gen. and abl.), *no man, no one.* [ne, homo.]

nēquāquam, adv., *by no means, not at all.*

nĕquĕ, or **nĕc**, conj., *and not, nor*: **neque..neque**, *neither..nor.*

nēquīquam, adv., *in vain, to no purpose.*

nervus, i, m., *a sinew.*

neu or **nē-ve**, conj., *and not, nor.*

neŭter, tra, trum, pron., *neither*; gen. -īus, dat. -i. [ne, uter.]

neve. See **neu**.

nex, nĕcis, f. (violent) *death.*

nĭhil, n. indecl., *nothing*. [ne, hilum =*not a bit.*]

nĭhilo, abl. of nihilum, n., *by nothing*; esp. as adv., nihilo minus, *none the less.*

nĭmĭs, adv., *too much, excessively.*

nĭmius, a, um, adj., *excessive, too great, too much.*

nĭ-sĭ, conj., *unless; except, save only*

nītor, i, nīsus and nixus, *to strive, endeavor.*

nix, nĭvis, f., *snow.*

nōbĭlis, e, adj., *of high birth, noble*; plur. nobiles, *the nobles* [nosco.]

nōbĭlĭtās, ātis, f., *nobility.* [nobilis].

nŏcens, pres. part. of noceo, as adj., *guilty*; as subs., *an evil doer.*

nŏcĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to do hurt* or *harm to, injure.*

noctu, adv., *at night, by night.* [nox.]

nocturnus, a, um, adj., *belonging to night*, (going on) *by night.* [nox.]

nōdus, i, m., (*a knot*; hence) *a joint* of an animal's body.

nōlo, nolle, nōlŭi, *to wish..not, to be unwilling.* [ne, volo.]

nōmen, ĭnis, n., *a name.*

nōmĭnātim, adv., *by name.* [nomen.]

nōn, adv., *not.*

nōnāginta, num. adj., *ninety.*

nōn-dum, adv., *not yet.*

nōnnĭhil, adv., *somewhat, to some extent.*

non-nullus, a, um (usually plur.), adj., *some, several.*

non-numquam, adv., *sometimes* (*not never*).

nōnus, a, um, num, adj., ord., *the ninth.* [=novenus, from novem.]

nōs, nostrum, plur. of ego, *we.*

nōsco, ĕre, nōvi, nōtum, *to get, to know* a thing; in perf. tenses, *to know.*

nōsmet, emphatic form of **nos**.

nōster, stra, strum, pron. adj. poss., *our, our own*; plur. nostri, ōrum, m., *our men* (i.e., Romans). [nos.]

nōtĭtĭa, ae, f., *knowledge.* [nōtus.]

nōtus, a, um, part., *known.* [nosco.]

nŏvem, card. num. adj., *nine.*

nōvi, see nosco.

nŏvitās, ātis, f., *novelty, rareness, strangeness.*

nŏvus, a, um, adj., *new*; sup. nŏvissĭmus, a, um, *the last, latest, hindermost.*

nox, noctis, f., *night.*

noxa, ae, f., *an injurious act*; *a crime, guilt.* [noceo.]

nūbo, ĕre, nupsi, nuptum, (of a woman) *to marry, veil one's self for*; gov's dat.

nūdo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make naked* or *bare, to uncover*; of military formation or position, *to leave uncovered* or *exposed* to the enemy. [nudus.]

nūdus, a, um, adj., *bare, naked, uncovered.*

nullus, a, um, adj., (gen. nullīus, dat. nulli), *no, none.* [ne, ullus.]

num, interrog. particle, expecting answer "No."

nūmen, ĭnis, n., *the divine will, will* or *power* (of the gods).

nŭmĕrus, i, m., *a number*; *estimation, position*: aliquo esse numero, *to be of any account.*

nummus, i, m., *money, a piece of money, coin.*

numquam. See nunquam.

nunc, adv., *now.*

nunquam, adv., *never.* [ne, unquam.]

nuntio, āre, āvi, ātum, *to announce.*

nuntĭus, ĭi, m., *a messenger, message.*

nūper, adv., *recently, lately.*

nusquam, adv., *nowhere.*

nūtus, ūs, m., *a nod, beckoning, making signs.*

O.

ŏb, prep. w. acc., *on account of*: ob eam causam, *for that reason, consequently, therefore*.

obaeratus, a, um, adj., *in debt*; as noun, *a debtor*.

obdūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, *lead towards, prolong*.

ŏb-ĕo, īre, īvi or ii, ĭtum, *to go to*.

ob-fero, (off) ob-ferre, ob-tŭli, oblātum, *to present, offer*.

ŏb-ĭcio, ĕre, ieci, iectum, *to put in the way, hinder*; part. **obiectus**, *lying opposite, facing*.

obiectus. See **obicio**.

obĭtus, ūs, m., *death*. [ob, eo.]

oblātus, v. ob-fero.

oblīquē, adv., *obliquely, slantingly*.

oblīquus, a, um, *slanting, oblique*.

oblīviscor, i, oblītus sum, *forget*; gov's gen.

obsĕcro, are, avi, atum, *beseech, implore, entreat*. [sacer.]

obsĕquentia, ae, f., *compliance*.

ob-servo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to pay attention to, heed, observe, keep*.

obsĕs, ĭdis, m. or f., *a hostage*. [obsideo.]

obsessĭo, ōnis, f., *a siege*; *blockade*.

ob-sĭdĕo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, *sit down at* or *before*; *to beset, besiege*. [ob, sedeo.]

obsĭdĭo, ōnis, f., *a siege, blockade*. [ob, sideo.]

obsigno, are, avi, atum, *seal*.

obsisto, ĕre, stiti, stitum, *resist, withstand*.

obstĭnāte, adv., *stubbornly*.

obstrictus, a, um, pf. part. of obstringo, *bound, under obligation*.

obstringo, ĕre, strinxi, strictum, *bind*.

obstrŭo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to build* or *wall up, barricade*.

obtempero, are, avi, atum, *submit to, yield to*.

obtestor, ari, atus sum, *implore, adjure*.

ob-tĭnĕo, ēre, tĭnŭi, tentum, *to have, hold, possess*. [ob, teneo.]

obvĕnio, ire, vēni, ventum, *meet, encounter*; *fall to the lot of*.

obviam, adv., *towards, in the way of*;—**obviam venire**, *to come to meet*.

occāsĭo, ōnis, f., *an opportunity*. [ob. cădo.]

occāsus, ūs, m., *setting*; occasus solis, *setting of the Sun*. [ob, cado.]

occĭdens (sol), entis, m., *the west*. [occido.]

occĭdo, ĕre, cĭdi, cāsum, *to fall*; of the sun, *to set*. [ob, cădo.]

occīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum, *to kill, slay*. [ob. caedo.]

occultātio, ōnis, f., *concealment*.

occultē, adv,, *secretly*.

occulto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to conceal, hide, secrete*. [occulo.]

occultus, a, um, part. occulo; as adj., *concealed, hidden, secret*.

occupatio, ōnis, f., *engagement, occupation*.

occŭpo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take possession of, seize upon, engage in*. [ob. capio.]

oc-curro, ĕre, curri, cursum, *to run up to, come up to, meet*.

octāvus, a, um, ord. num., *eighth*.

octingenti, ae, a, num, adj., *eight hundred*. [octo centum.]

octo, card. num., adj., *eight*.

octōdĕcim, indecl. card. num., *eighteen*.

octōni, ae, a, distrib. num., *eight apiece, eight at a time, in groups of eight*.

ŏculus, i, m., *eye*.

ōdi, ōdisse, defec. v. (used only in pf. tenses) *hate*.

ŏdium, i, n., *hatred.*

offendo, ere, fendi, fensum, *to injure.*

offensio, ōnis, f., *a hurting, wounding.*

offero, ferre, obtŭli, oblātum, *present, offer, expose.*

offĭcĭum, ĭi, n., *duty, service, allegiance.*

omitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to neglect, disregard, drop, omit.*

omnīno, adv., *altogether, at all.* [omnis.]

omnis, e, adj., *all, every.*

ŏnerārius, a, um, adj., *pertaining to loads; of burden.* [ŏnus.]

ŏnĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to load, burden, freight.* [onus.]

ŏnus, ĕris, n., *a load, burden, cargo, weight.*

ŏpĕra, ae, f., *agency, means; aid, services.* **operam dare**, *take pains, exert one's self.* [opus.]

ŏpīnĭo, ōnis, f., *belief, expectation.* [opinor.]

ŏpis, (gen.; nom. not found), *power; aid, assistance;* **opes**, plur., *resources.*

oportet, ēre, uit, impers. v., *it behooves, it is necessary.*

oppidānus, a, um, adj., *belonging to a town;* as subst., *a townsman.*

oppidum, i, n., *town.*

oppōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, to *confront, place opposite.*

opportūnē, adv., *seasonably, conveniently.*

opportūnitās, ātis, f., *opportunity, fitness.*

opportūnus, a, um, adj., *convenient, suitable.* [ob, portus=*at* or *before the harbour.*]

opprĭmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, *to crush, overwhelm, oppress; to fall upon, take by surprise.* [ob, prĕmo.]

oppugnātĭo, ōnis, f., *an attack, assault.* [oppugno.]

oppugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to attack, assault, storm.* [ob, pugno.]

optatus, a, um, pf. part. of **opto**, as adj., *desired, agreeable.*

optimē, adv., superl. of **bene**, *best, in the best manner.*

ŏpus, ĕris, n., *work; work of fortification, "defences";* **opus est**, *there is a necessity, it is needful.*

ōra, ae, f., *coast, shore.*

ōrātĭo, ōnis, f., *a speech, harangue.* [ora.]

ōrātor, ōris, m., *envoy, ambassador.*

orbis, is, m., *a circle, ring.*

ordo, ĭnis, m., *a line, rank of soldiers;* used by Caesar=centuria, *century, company.*

ŏriens, entis, (pres. part. of **orior**), as adj., *rising;* as subst. **oriens (sol)**, *the rising sun,* i.e., *the east.*

ŏrior, īri, ortus, *to arise.*

ornāmentum, i, n., *decoration, adornment, honor.*

ornātus, a, um, pf. part. of **orno**, *equipped;* **ornatissimus**, *thoroughly equipped.*

orno, are, avi, atum, *adorn, equip, furnish.*

ōro, are, avi, atum, *to beg, beseech, entreat, implore.*

ortus, ūs, m., *a rising.*

ortus, a, um, part. of **orior**.

ōs, ōris, n., *the mouth.*

ostendo, ĕre, di, sum and tum, *to show;* se, *make one's appearance.*

ostentatio, ōnis, f., *display, show.*

ostento, āre, āvi, ātum, *to display, show off, boast of, vaunt.* [ostendo.]

ōtium, i, n., *rest, quiet, peace.*

ōvum, i, n., *egg.*

P.

P.=**Publius.**

pābulatio, ōnis, f., *foraging, act of getting fodder.*

pābŭlātor, ōris, m., *a forager.* [pabulor.]

pābulor, ari, atus sum, *to forage, seek fodder.* [pabulum.]

pābulum, i, n., *forage, fodder.*

pācātus, a, um, (part. of paco, *to make peaceful* [pax]), as adj., *peaceful.*

pāco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to quiet, reduce to state of peace.*

pactum, i, n., *bargain, agreement.*

paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*

paenitet, ēre, uit, impers. v., *it repents.*—**me paenitet**, *I repent, I am sorry.*

pāgus, i, m, *a canton, district, village* (hence our word *pagan*).

pălam, adv., *openly, undisguisedly.*

palma, ae, f., *the palm of the hand, the blade of an oar.*

pălūs, ūdis, f., *a marsh, morass, swamp.*

palūster, tris, tre, adj., *marshy, swampy.* [palus.]

pando, ĕre, pandi, pansum or passum, *stretch, stretch out*; *open, spread out.*

păr, păris, adj., *equal.*

părātus, a, um, pf. part. of paro; as adj., *ready, prepared, equipped.*

parcē, adv., *sparingly.* [parco.]

parco, ĕre, pĕperci, parsum, *to spare, have mercy on.*

părens, entis, m. and f., *a parent.* [pario.]

parento, are, avi, atum, (literally, *to make a vow or offering in memory of deceased parents*), hence, *to revenge the death of any one.*

pārĕo, ēre, ŭi, pārĭtum, *to obey, submit to.*

părĭo, ĕre, pĕpĕri, partum, *to bring forth* (hence), *to produce, bring about, secure.*

păro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to get* or *make ready, prepare.*

pars, partis, f., *a part, portion*: in utramque partem, *on both sides, either way, upon either view of the case.*

partim, adv., *in part, partly.* [pars.]

partior, partiri, partītus sum, *divide*; pf. part. used in passive sense.

partus, a, um, part. pario.

părum, adv., *too little, not enough.*

parvŭlus, a, um, adj., dim., *little, petty, trifling*; of age, *little, young.* [parvus.]

parvus, a, um, adj., *small;* compar. **mĭnor**, superl. **minimus.**

passim, adv., *everywhere, in all directions.*

passus, ūs, m., *a step, pace*; as a measure of length, about five of our feet, *i.e.*, a double pace: mille passūs, *a* (Roman) *mile*=about 1,618 yards; *V.* note, B. v., chap. 2.

patĕfăcio, făcere, fēci, factum, *to open*; pass. **patefio, fieri, factus.**

patens, entis, adj., *open.*

pătĕo, ēre, ŭi, *to lie open; to stretch, extend.*

păter, tris, m., *a father.*

păterfămilĭae (or familias), m., *the master of a household, head of a family.*

pătĭentĭa, ae, f., *endurance.* [patior.]

pătĭor, i., passus, *to suffer, allow.*

patrius, a, um, adj., *ancestral, of one's forefathers.*

patrōnus, i, m., *protector, patron.*

patruus, i, m., *a father's brother*; *uncle.*

paucĭtās, ātis, f., *fewness, scarcity.* [paucus.]

paucus, a, um, adj., *few, little* (very rare in sing.); as subst., **pauci**, ōrum, m., *few, a few.*

paulātim, adv., *little by little, by degrees, gradually.* [paulum.]

paulisper, adv., *for a little while.* [paulum.]

paulo, adv. (with comparatives), *by a little, a little, somewhat.*

paulŭlum, adv., *a little, gradually.*

paulum, adv., *a little, somewhat.*

paulus, a, um, adj., *little.*

pax, pācis, f., *peace.* [The root of the word is seen in paciscor, pango, whence our *pact, compact.*]

pecco, are, avi, atum, *do wrong.*

pectus, ŏris, n., *the breast.*

pĕcūnĭa, ae, f., *money.* [pecus, because, in early times, *wealth* was *cattle.*]

pĕcus, ŏris, n., *a flock, herd, cattle.*

pedālis, e, adj., *measuring a foot, a foot thick.*

pedĕs, peditis, m., *foot-soldier.*

pedester, tris, tre, adj., *on foot.*—**pedestres copiae**, *infantry forces*; **pedestre proelium**, *a battle on land.*

pĕdĭtātus, ūs, m., *foot-soldiers, infantry.* [pedes, pes.]

peior, compar. of **mălus**, *worse.*

pellis, is, f., *a hide, skin.*

pello, pellĕre, pepŭli, pulsum, *drive off, defeat, conquer.*

pendo, ĕre, pĕpendi, pensum, *to weigh out;* (in early times payments were made by weighing out metal; hence) *to pay.*

pĕnĕs, prep., with acc., *in the power of, in possession of.*

pĕnĭtus, adv., *entirely, completely.*

per, prep, w. acc., *through;* showing the agent or means, *by, by means of.*

pĕr-ăgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *to go through with, complete, finish.*

perangustus, a, um, adj., *very narrow.*

perceptus, v. percipio.

percĭpĭo, ĕre, cepi, ceptum, *to take note of, receive, learn.*

percontātĭo, ōnis, f., *question, inquiry.* [percontor.]

percurro, currĕre, cucurri or curri, cursum, *run through; run along.*

percussus, a, um., part., percutio.

per-cŭtĭo, ĕre, cussi, cussum, *to pierce* or *strike through.* [quatio.]

per-disco, ĕre, dĭdĭci, *to learn thoroughly, get off by heart.*

perdĭtus, a, um, adj., *abandoned, desperate* (pf. part. of perdo).

per-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead through; to prolong; to bring* or *win* (any one) *over to one's side; carry over.*

pĕrendĭnus, a, um, adj., *after tomorrow.* [perendie.]

pĕrĕo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to perish.*

perĕquĭto, are, avi, atum, *ride about* or *around, ride through.* [per, equus.]

pĕr-exĭgŭus, a, um., adj., *very small.*

perfăcilis, e, adj., *very easy.*

per-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to bear* or *carry through; to bring; to bear, put up with, submit to;* in pass., of letters, news, etc., *to arrive, come to hand.*

per-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to accomplish, complete, finish.* [per-facio.]

perfĭdia, ae, f., *faithlessness, treachery.*

perfringo, ĕre, frēgi, fractum, *break through.* [frango.]

perfŭga, ae, m., *deserter, fugitive.*

perfugium, i, n., *a refuge.*

pergo, ĕre, per-rexi, per-rectum, *go on, advance.*

perĭclitor, ari, atus sum, *to endanger.*

perĭculōsus, a, um, *full of danger, dangerous.*

pĕrĭcŭlum, i, n., *danger.*

perĭtus, a, um, *skilled, practised experienced in, familiar with.*

perlātus, a, um, part. perfero.

perlectus, a, um, part. perlego.

per-lĕgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum, *to read through.*

perlŭo, ĕre, lŭi, lūtum, *to wash*; in pass, *to bathe.*

permagnus, a, um, adj., *very great.*

per-mănĕo, ēre, mansi, mansum, *to abide, continue, remain.*

permisceo, ēre, miscui, mixtum or mistum, *mix, mingle.*

per-mitto, mittĕre, mīsi, missum, *entrust, surrender, suffer, permit.*

permixtus, pf. part. of **permisceo.**

permōtus, pf. part. of **permoveo.**

per-mŏvĕo, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move thoroughly*; of the mind, *to move deeply, influence, prevail on.*

permulceo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, *soothe, calm.*

perniciēs, ēi, f., *ruin, destruction.*

perpauci, ae, a, adj., *very few.*

perpendiculum, i, n., *plumb line.*

perpetior, peti, pessus sum, *bear, endure.* [patior.]

perpetuo, adv., *continually, constantly*; *always, forever.*

per-pĕtŭus, a, um, adj., *continuing throughout, unbroken*: **in perpetuum**, *for all time, for ever.* [per-peto.]

perquīro, ĕre, quīsīvi, quīsītum, *inquire about.* [quaero.]

per-rumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *to break through.*

per-scrībo, ĕre, psi, ptum, *to write in full, write a full account of.*

per-sĕquor, sĕqui, sĕcūtus, *to follow up, pursue.*

persĕvēro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to abide steadfastly, persist.*

persolvo, ĕre, solvi, solūtum, *pay in full, pay.*

perspĭcĭo, ĕre, spexi, spectum, *to look through*; *to see clearly, perceive.*

persto, stāre, stĭti, stātum, *stand firmly, persist.*

per-suādĕo, ēre, si, sum, *to persuade, prevail upon.*

perterreo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to terrify*; *thoroughly frighten.*

per-territus, a, um, part. of **perterreo**, *thoroughly frightened.*

pertĭnācĭa, ae, f., *obstinacy.* [pertinax, tenax, teneo.]

per-tĭnĕo, ēre, ŭi, *to stretch out reach, extend*; *to belong to, concern, affect.* [teneo.]

perturbatio, ōnis, f., *confusion.*

per-turbo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to throw into confusion*; *to discompose, confound.*

pervăgor, ari, atus sum, *roam about.*

per-vĕnĭo, īre, vēni ventum, *to come to, arrive at.*

pēs, pĕdis, m., *a foot.*

pĕto, ĕre, īvi, and ĭi, ītum, *to seek*; *ask.*

phalanx, angis, f., *solid column, phalanx*; Greek acc. plur. **phalangas.**

pĭĕtās, ātis, f., *dutiful conduct* towards the gods, one's parents, country, etc. [pius.]

pīlum, i, n., *a javelin.*

pīlus, i, m., usually with primus, *the division of the army occupied by the triarii*; **primi pili centurio**, *a centurion of the triarii*; *chief centurion.*

pinna, ae, f., *a battlement.*

piscis, is, m., *fish.*

pix, pĭcis, f., *pitch.*

placeo, ēre, ui, itum, *please, be agreeable* or *welcome to*; **placet mihi**, *I am agreed, I resolve.*

plăcĭdē, adv., *calmly.*

plāco, are, avi, atum, *to reconcile, appease.*

plānē, adv., *clearly.*

plānities. ēi, f., *a plain*; *level ground.*

plānus, a, um, adj., *level, flat.*

plebs, plēbis and plēbes, ĕi, f., *the common people*, "*the masses*" (opp. to the nobles).

plēnē, adv., *fully, completely.*

plēnus, a, um, adj., *full, complete.*

plērumque, adv., *for the most part, mostly.*

plērusque, răque, rumque, adj., (rare in sing.); plerīque, plur., *very many, the most part, the majority.*

plumbum, i. m., *lead;* **plumbum album**, *tin.*

plūrĭmum, adv., *most, very much:* ei debere, *to be very greatly indebted to, under very great obligations to*

plūs, plūris (in plur., plūres, plūra,) *more*, and plūrĭmus, a, um, *most*, adj., comp. and sup. of multus. (N. B., the sing. plus is generally a neut. subst. or an adv.)

pluteus, i, m., *a breastwork* made of planks or wickerwork covered with hides, used as a protection for soldiers engaged in a siege.

pōcŭlum, i. n., *a cup, a drinking-vessel.*

poena, ae, f., *punishment, penalty.*

pollex, pollĭcis, m., *thumb, great toe.*

pollĭcĕor, ēri, ĭtus, *to promise.*

pollĭcĭtātio, ōnis, f., *a promise.*

pondus, ĕris, n., *a weight.* [pendo.]

pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to put, to place*; in pass., *to rest* on, *depend* on anything.

pons, ntis, m., *a bridge.*

pŏpŭlātio, ōnis, f., *a laying waste, ravaging.*

pŏpŭlor, āri, ātus, *to lay waste, ravage.* [pŏpŭlus.]

pŏpŭlus, i, m., *a people, the people*; *a district*, with reference to its inhabitants; *a community*; **Populus Romanus**, *the Roman people*, never plur.

porrectus, a, um, (pf. part. of porrigo), adj., *level.*

porrĭgo, ĕre, rexí, rectum, *reach out, stretch forth, extend.*

porro, adv., *furthermore, now.*

porta, ae, f., *a gate.*

porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bear* or *carry along.*

portōrium, i, n., *toll, tax, customs duties.* [porto, carry.]

portus, ūs, m., *harbor, port.*

posco, ĕre, poposci, no supine, *demand.*

positus, v. pono.

possessĭo, ōnis, f., *a possession, a property.*

possĭdeo, sidēre, sēdi, sessum, *hold, occupy, possess.*

possīdo, sīdĕre, sēdi, sessum, *take possession of.*

possum, posse, pŏtŭi, *to be able*; *I* (*thou*, etc.) *can.* [potis, sum.]

post, prep. w. acc. and adv., *after.*

postĕā, adv., *after this* or *that, afterwards.*

postĕāquam, conj., *after (that).*

postĕrus, a, um, adj., *coming after, following, next.* [post.]

post-pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to postpone, put off.*

postquam, conj., *after.*

postrēmō, adv., *at last, finally.* [postremus, sup. of posterus.]

postrīdiē, adv., *on the following day, on the morrow.*

postulātum, i, n., *a demand.*

postŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to demand.*

pŏtens, tis, part of possum; as adj. *powerful.*

potentātus, ūs, m., *power, headship, supremacy.*

pŏtentia, ae, f., *power.* (See note, vi. 12,) [potens.]

pŏtestās, ātis, f., *power*; *opportunity.* [possum.]

pŏtior, potīri, potītus sum, *to become master of; gain possession of*; governs abl.

pŏtius, adv., *rather.*

prae, prep. with abl., *in comparison with*; *on account of.*

prae-acutus, a, um, adj., *sharpened in front, at the end, pointed.*

praebĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to show, present.*

praecăveo, ēre, cāvi, cautum, *guard against, take precautions.*

praeceps, cipitis, adj., *headlong, with great speed; steep, precipitous.* [caput.]

praecēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *go before; surpass.*

praeceptum, i, n., *instruction, command, injunction.*

praeceptus, a, um, part. praecipio.

prae-cĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to bid, direct, order.* [capio.]

praecipuē, adv., *especially.*

praecĭpŭus, a, um, adj., *special.* [praecipio.]

praeclūdo, ĕre, clūdi, clūsum, *to hinder, stop, close.*

prae-clūsus. See praecludo.

praeco, ōnis, m., *a crier, herald.*

prae-curro, ĕre, cucurri or curri, cursum, *run before, outstrip.*

praeda, ae, f., *booty.*

prae-dĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to proclaim, assert, taunt.*

praedor, ari, atus sum, *pillage, plunder, get booty.*

praedūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, *draw before, build before.*

praefectus, a, um, pf. part. of **praeficio**.

praefectus, i, m., *officer, captain.*

prae-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to carry in front, to place* a person or thing *before* another in esteem or reputation, *to prefer.*

prae-fĭcĭo, fĭcĕre, fēci, fectum, *to place in front* or *at the head of, to appoint to the command of.* [prae, facio.]

praefīgo, fīgĕre, fixi, fixum, *fix* or *place in front.*

praemĕtuo, ĕre, ui, no supine, *fear for, be anxious.*

prae-missus, a, um, part. of praemitto, *sent on beforehand.*

praemitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send before, send in advance.*

praemĭum, ĭi, n., *a reward.* [prae, emo.]

prae-occupo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to occupy beforehand.*

praeopto, are, avi, atum, *choose in preference, prefer.*

prae-păro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to prepare.*

praepōno, ponĕre, posui, positum, *to set anyone in command over.*

praerumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *break off.*

praeruptus, a, um, adj., *steep, precipitous.* [rumpo.]

praescrībo, ĕre, scripsi, scriptum, *order, direct, command.*

praescriptum, i, n., *an order;* pl., *instructions.*

praesens, tis, adj., *that is before one, at hand, present.* [prae, sum.]

praesentĭa, ae, f., *presence, the present time*: **in praesentiâ**, *at hand, on the spot;* sometimes regarded as n. pl.

prae-sentĭo, sentire, sensi, sensum, *to perceive beforehand.*

praesēpio, īre, sēpsi, sēptum, *fence in, block up.*

praesertim, adv., *especially.*

praesĭdĭum, ĭi, n., *protection, help.* [prae, sedeo.]

praesto, adv., *at hand*: praesto esse, *to present oneself.*

praesto, āre, stĭti, stĭtum and sta-

tum, *to discharge, fulfil.* **pr. fidem,** *keep one's word.*

prae-sum, esse, fŭi, *to be at the head of, in command of.*

praeter, prep. w. acc., *except.*

praetĕrĕā, adv., *besides.*

praetereo, ire, ivi or ii, ĭtum, *pass over, pass by.*

praeterĭtus, part. of **praetereo.**

praetermitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *pass over, let slip, omit.*

praterquam, adv., *except, beyond, besides.*

praetor, ōris, m., (1) *general or commander*; (2) *praetor,* a magistrate who performed the duties of judge at Rome.

praetōrius, a, um, *of* or *belonging to the commander, pretorian*; **praetoria cohors,** *the general's body-guard*; **praetoria porta,** *the front gate* of the camp, opposite the praetorium or general's tent.

prae-ūro, ĕre, ussi, ustum, *to burn at the point.*

praeustus, a, um, part. praeuro.

praeverto, vertĕre, verti, versum, *outstrip, anticipate.*

prāvus, a, um, adj., *bad, wicked.*

precem, preci, prece, defective noun; pl. preces; *prayer, entreaty.*

prĕmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, *to press, press upon, oppress.*

prendo, prendĕre, prendi, prensum, *take, grasp.*

prĕtium, i, n., *price, value.*

(prex) precis, f., defect. *prayer, entreaty, supplication*; *curse.*

prīdĭē, adv., *on the day before.*

prīmipīlus, i, m., *chief centurion.* See **pīlus.**

prīmo, adv., *in the first place.*

prīmum, adv., *in the first place*; quam primum, *as soon as possible.*

prīmus, a, um, adj. sup., *the first, foremost.*

princeps, ĭpis, adj., *first, chief;* as subst., comm., *a chief, chieftain.* [primus, capio.]

princĭpātus, ūs, m., *the first place, supremacy, chieftainship.* [princeps.]

prior, us, adj., *former, previous, first;* **priores,** *those in advance.*

pristĭnus, a, um, adj., *former, old, old-fashioned.*

prĭus, foll. by quam, and, as one word, **priusquam,** adv. comp., *sooner than, before, before that.*

prīvātim, adv., *as an individual, privately.*

prīvātus, a, um, part. privo, *to deprive*; as adj., *belonging to an individual, private.*

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of; on account of, in consideration of.*

prŏbo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to prove, demonstrate*; *to approve.*

prō-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to go forth, to advance.*

prōclīno, are, avi, atum, *bend forward*; pf. part. pass., *tottering to a fall.*

prōcunsul, ŭlis, m., *a proconsul,* one assigned to the government of a province after having held the consulship.

prŏcŭl, adv., *in the distance, from afar.* [procello, to drive away.]

prō-cumbo, ĕre, cŭbŭi, cŭbĭtum, *to sink down to the ground.*

prō-cūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take care of, look after.*

prō-curro, ĕre, cŭcurri and curri, cursum, *to run forth, rush forward.*

prōdĕo, īre, ii, ĭtum, *to come* or *go forth.* [pro, eo.]

prōdesse. See **prōsum.**

prōdĭtio, ōnis, f., *a betraying, treachery.*

prōdĭtor, ōris, m., *a betrayer, traitor*. [prodo.]

prōdĭtus, a, um, part. prodo.

prō-do, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to give forth; to hand down* (to memory), *transmit, record*.

prō-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead out*.

prōductus, a, um, part. produco.

proelior, ări ātus, *to engage, fight a battle*.

proelĭum, ĭi, n., *a battle, combat*.

prōfectĭo, ōnis, f., *a going away, setting out*. [proficiscor.]

prōfectus. See **prōficio**.

prŏfectus. See **proficiscor**.

prōfero, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *bring forward* or *forth*.

prōficio, ficĕre, fēci, fectum, *advance; effect, gain*.

prŏfĭciscor, profic-isci prŏfectus, *to set out, start, depart*.

prŏfĭtĕor, ĕri, fessus, *to declare publicly avow; to offer freely, promise*. [pro, fateor.]

prōflīgo, are, avi, atum, *put to flight, rout*.

prōfluo, fluĕre, fluxi, fluxum, *flow from, rise*.

prŏ-fŭgĭo, ĕre, fūgi, *to flee, decamp*.

prō-gnātus, a, um, part. [gnatus= natus, nascor], *born, sprung, descended*.

prō-grĕdĭor, i, gressus, *to go forward, advance*. [gradior.]

prŏ-hĭbĕo, ĕre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to keep back, hinder, prevent; to defend, protect*. [habeo.]

prō-ĭcĭo, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to throw forth, fling away*. [pro-iacio.]

prŏinde, adv., *accordingly, therefore; (in like manner)*.

prōmĭneo, ēre, ui., no supine, *bend forward*.

prōmiscuē, adv. *promiscuously, in common*.

prō-missus, a, um, pf. part. of promitto; (of hair) *long, flowing*.

prōmōtus. See **promoveo**.

prōmŏveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *move forward*.

promptus, a, um, adj., *ready*.

prōmuntūrium, i, n., *headland*.

prōnē, adv., *bending* or *leaning forward*.

prō-nuntĭo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to announce, proclaim*.

prŏpĕ, comp. prŏpĭus, prep. w. acc. and adv., *near, nigh*.

prō-pello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, *to drive before oneself, to drive back*.

prŏ-pĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to hasten*.

prŏpinquĭtās, ātis, f., *nearness*. [propinquus.]

prŏpinquus, a, um, adj., *near;* as subst., **prŏpinquus**, i, m., *a kinsman, relation*.

prŏpior, *nearer;* **proximus**, *next, last* or *next preceding;* no positive adj., adv., **prope**.

prō-pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to put* or *set forth, to point out, to offer, proffer as a reward*.

prōprĭus, a, um, adj., *one's own, special:* as subst, **proprium**, ii, n., *a peculiar* or *characteristic mark, a sign*.

propter, prep. w. acc., *by reason of, on account of*.

proptĕrĕā, adv., *on this account, for this reason:* **propterea quod**, *because*.

prōpugnātor, ōris, m., *combatant, defender*.

prō-pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to fight*.

prō-pulsō, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to drive back, repel*. [propello.]

prōra, ae, f., *prow* of a ship.

prō-sĕquor, i, cūtus, *to pursue, to continue the pursuit*.

prōspectus, a, um, see **prospicio**.

prōspectus, ūs. m., *view, sight.*

prōspicio, ĕre, spexi, spectum, *look out; provide for.*

prōsterno, ĕre, stravi, stratum, *lay low, destroy.*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, *to benefit, be of service to.*

prō-tĕgo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to cover in front, cover, protect.*

prō-terrĕo, ēre, ŭi, ītum, *to frighten* or *scare away, to affright.*

prōtĭnus, adv., *forthwith.*

prōturbo, are, avi, atum, *drive away, repulse.*

prōvectus, see prōvĕho.

prōvĕho, ĕre, vexi, vectum, *to advance, carry forward.*

prōvĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, *to come forth, to be produced, to grow.*

prōventus, ūs, m., *result, issue, outcome.*

prō-vĭdĕo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, (1) *to see beforehand, to foresee,* (2) *provide for.*

prōvincĭa, ae, f., *a province.*

provinciālis, ĕ, adj., *of* or *belonging to a province.*

prōvīsus, v. prōvideo.

prōvŏlo, are, avi, atum, *fly forth, dash forth.*

proxĭmē, adv.

proxĭmus, a, um, adj., *nearest, next.*

prūdentia, ae, f., *foresight, prudence.*

pūbes and **pūber**, ĕris, adj,, *grown up, adult;* as subst., **pūbĕres**, um, m., *grown up men, men.*

publĭcē, adv , *on behalf* or *in the name of the State* or *people.* [publicus.]

publĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take and apply to the use of the State* or *community, to confiscate.* [publicus.]

publĭcus, a, um, adj., *belonging to the people, State,* or *community.* [for populicus, from populus.]

pŭdet, ēre, puduit or pudītum est, impers. v., *it shames;* me pudet, *I am ashamed.*

pŭdor, ōris, m., *shame, modesty.*

puer, ĕri, m., *a boy, child.*

pŭĕrīlis, e, adj., *boyish, of boyhood.* [puer.]

pugna, ae, f., *a battle, combat, fight.*

pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to fight.*

pulcher, chra, chrum, adj., *beautiful; noble*

pulsus, a, um. See **pello.**

pulsus, ūs, m., *stroke.* [pello.]

pulvis, ĕris, m., *dust.*

puppis, is, f., *stern.*

purgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to clear, exculpate, excuse.*

pŭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to consider, judge, think.*

Q.

Q.=Quintus.

quā, adv., *where, by which way.* [abl. f. of qui.]

quadrāgēni, ae, a, distrib. num., *forty each.*

quădringenti, ae, a, card, num. adj., *four hundred.* [quattuor, centum.]

quaero, ĕre, quaesīvi, quaesītum, *to seek, ask, enquire.*

quaestĭo, ōnis, f., *an examination* or *inquisition by torture.* [quaero.]

quaestor, ōris, m., *a quaestor.*

quaestus, ūs, m, *a gaining, acquiring.* [quaero.]

quālis, ĕ, interrog. adj., *of what sort?*

quam, adv. and conj.; (1) *as*; (2) *than*: with superl. adj. or adv., *as..as possible.*

quamobrem, adv., *wherefore.*

quamvīs, adv., *however much* or *many; as much as you will; although;* **quamvis pauci**, *no matter how few.*

quando, adv., (interrog. *when*); after **si**, *at any time.*

quanto, rel. adv., *by as much as, according as, the* (e.g. "*the* more the merrier"). [quantus.]

quantŏpere, adv., *how much, how deeply* or *greatly.*

quantum, adv., *how much, as much, as far as.*

quantus, a, um, adj., *how great, how much*; *as much as.* [quam.]

quantus-vīs, tăvis, tumvis, adj., *as great as you will, ever so great, no matter how great.* [vīs, fr. volo, vīs, vult, "*you wish.*"]

quārē, adv., *wherefore, why.* [quae, res.]

quartus, a, um, ord. num. adj., *the fourth.*

quăsĭ, conj., *as if.*

quattŭor, card. num. adj., *four.*

-que, conj., (enclitic, i.e., appended to previous word), *and.*

quemadomum, adv., *in what way, how.*

quĕror, quĕri, questus sum, *to complain.*

questus. See **queror**.

qui, quae, quod, pron. rel. and (used adjectively) interrog., *who, which, what, that.*

quicquam. See **quisquam**.

quīcumque, (or **-cunque**), quaecumque, quodcumque, pron. rel. *whoever, whatever, all that, everything that.*

quid, (neut. of **quis**), adv., *why?*

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam, pron. indef., *a certain, a certain one, one.*

quĭdem, adv., *indeed.*

quiēs, ētis, f., *rest, repose.*

quiētus, a, um, adj., *at rest, quiet, peaceful.* [quiesco, quies.]

quīn, conj., *but that, that not.* [qui, *how*, ne.]

quīnam, quaenam, quodnam, pron. interrog., *who, which*; *what, pray?* [In ch. 44, B. V. = uter.]

quincunx, uncis, f., *a quincunx*, an arrangement of trees or other objects in fives, thus: :·: :·: :·:

quindĕcim, *fifteen.*

quingenti, ae, a, *five hundred.* [quinque, centum.]

quīni, ae, a, num. distrib. adj., *five each, five at a time.*

quinquāginta, *fifty.*

quinque, card. num., indecl., *five.*

quintus, a, um, adj., *fifth.*

quis, (quae), quid, (1) pron. interrog., *who? which? what?* (2) pron. indef. after ne, si, nisi, *any one, anything.* **ne quis**, *in order that no man.*

quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, pron. indef., *any.*

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or quidquam, pron. indef. *any, any one, anything* (always in a negative connection).

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, pron. indef., *each, every.*

quisquis, quaequae, quicquid, or quodquod, indef. pron., *whoever, whatever.*

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs or quodvīs, indef. pron., *any one you wish, any one at all.*

quō, adv., *whither.*

quō, conj., *in order that* (used with comparative degree instead of **ut**).

quŏ-ad, conj., *till, until.*

quod, conj., *because*; *that.*

quōmĭnus, conj., *so that not*, (lit. *by which the less*), used after verbs of hindering, and rendered by Eng. *from.*

quŏn-ĭam, conj., *since, seeing that, whereas.* [quom=cum, iam.]

quŏ-que, conj., *also, too.*

quōque, abl. of quisque, *each.*

quōquevĕrsum (quoquoversum), adv., *in every direction.*

quot, indecl. rel. adj., *how many, as many, which number.*

quŏtannīs, adv., *every year, yearly.*

quŏtĭens or **quŏtĭes**, adv., *how often, as often as.* [quot.]

quotīdiē, adv., *daily; day by day.*

R.

rādix, īcis, f., *a root.*

rādo, ĕre, rāsi, rāsum, *shave.*

rāmus, i, m., *a bough, branch.*

răpĭdĭtās, ātis, f., *swiftness.* [rapidus, rapio.]

rapīna, ae, f., *pillage, plunder.*

rārus, a, um, adj., *few, sparse, few and far between.*

rāsus, a um, part. of rado, *shaven.*

rătĭo, ōnis, f., *a reckoning, an account; a transaction, business; a care, consideration, regard* for a thing; *fashion, system, way.*

rătis, is, f., *a raft.*

rĕ-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to go back, fall back, retire.*

rĕcens, tis, adj., *fresh, recent.*

recenseo, ēre, censui, censum and censītum, *review.*

receptāculum, i, n., *place of shelter, retreat.*

receptus, a, um, pf. part. of **recipio.**

receptus, ūs, m., *retreat, refuge.*

rĕcessus, ūs, m., *a going back, retreat.* [recedo.]

recīdo, ĕre, cĭdi, cāsum, *fall back, return.*

recĭpero, are, avi, atum, *get back, recover.* See recupero.

rĕ-cĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to receive;* se, *to betake oneself* anywhere, *to retire, retreat.* [capio.]

rĕ-cĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to read out* (a letter, etc.).

rĕ-clīno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bend back, lean back.*

rectē, adv., *rightly, properly.*

rectus, a, um, adj., *straight, direct.*

rĕ-cŭpĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to get back, recover, regain.*

rĕ-cūso, āre, āvi, ātum, *to object to, refuse.* [causa.]

rēda. See **rhēda.**

redactus. See **redigo.**

reddĭtus, see red-do.

red-do, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to give back, restore; to render, grant.*

rĕd-ĕo, ii, ĭtum, īre, *to come back; to be reduced to; to be referred to.*

rĕd-ĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *to bring* or *reduce* to any condition. [ago.]

rĕdĭmo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, *buy back, purchase; farm* (revenues).

rĕdintegro, are, avi, atum, *renew; revive.*

rĕditio, ōnis, f., *a going back, returning.*

rĕditus, ūs, m., *a returning, return.*

rĕ-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead back, draw off* troops.

rĕfectus. *V.* reficio.

rĕfĕro, -ferre, rettŭli (retuli), rĕlātum, *to carry back; report; refer.* **gratiam referre**, *to show gratitude, to repay, requite.*

rĕfĭcio, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to refit, repair.*

refractus. See **refringo.**

refringo, fringere, frēgi, fractum, *break, break down.* [frango.]

rĕ-fŭgĭo, ĕre, fūgi, *to flee back.*

rĕgĭo, ōnis, f., *a district, territory.* [rego.]

rēgius, a, um, adj., *kingly, royal.*

regno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to be king, to reign.* [regnum.]

regnum, i, n., *kingly authority, sovereignty, chieftainship*; *a kingdom, the territory* of a king or chief. [rex.]

rĕgo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to direct; to control, govern, rule.*

rĕ-grĕdĭor, i, gressus, *to go back, retreat.*

rēiectus, a, um, part. reicio.

rē-ĭcĭo, ĕre, reiēci, iectum, *to cast back, drive back.* [iacio.]

relanguesco, ere, langui, no supine, *become enfeebled.*

rĕlātus; a, um, part. refero.

rĕ-lēgātus, a, um, part. relēgo.

rĕ-lēgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to send away, remove out of the way.*

rĕlictus, a, um, v. relinquo.

rĕlĭgĭo, ōnis, f., *reverence for the gods, religion*: in plur., *superstitious practices; matters of religion, scruples of conscience.*

rĕ-linquo, ĕre, līqui, lictum, *to leave behind, to leave remaining*: pass., *to remain.*

rĕlĭquus, a, um, adj., *that is left, remaining;* in plur. as subst. **rĕlĭqui**, ōrum, m., *the others, the rest.* [relinquo.]

rĕmăneo, ēre, mansi, mansum, *to stay, remain behind.*

rēmex, ĭgis, m., *rower.*

rĕmigro, are, no pf., no supine, *move back, remove.*

rēmĭgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to row.*

reminiscor, minisci, no pf., no supine, *remember, recollect*, gov's gen.

rĕ-missus, a, um, part of remitto; as adj., *slack, less severe.*

rĕ-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send back, to slacken, remit, abate.*

remollesco, escĕre, no perf. or supine, *become weak.*

remōtus, a, um, adj., *far off, remote.*

rĕ-mŏvĕo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move back, withdraw.*

remūneror, ari, atus sum, *recompense, repay.* [munus.]

rēmus, i, m., *an oar.*

rēnō, (rhēno), ōnis, m., some take this to mean *a reindeer-skin*; it is probably *a fur pelisse* or *jacket*, made from the skin of an animal dressed with the hair on.

rĕnŏvo, are, avi, atum, *renew.*

renuntio, iare, iavi, iatum, *bring back word, report; declare elected.*

rĕ-pello, ĕre, reppŭli, rĕpulsum, *to drive back.*

rĕpente, adv., *suddenly.*

rĕpentīno, adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly.*

rĕpentīnus, a, um, adj., *sudden, unlooked-for.*

rĕ-pĕrĭo, īre, reppĕri, rĕpertum, *to find, meet with.* [pario.]

rĕpertus, a, um, part. reperio.

rĕ-pĕto, ĕre, ĭi or īvi, ītum, *to ask* or *apply again for; demand as a right.*

repleo, ēre, plēvi, plētum, *fill up, supply amply.*

rĕ-porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bear back.*

rĕ-posco, ĕre, (no perf. or sup.), *to exact, require.*

repraesento, are, avi, atum, *do at once* or *forthwith.*

re-prĕhendo, ĕre, di, sum, *to blame, find fault with.*

rĕpressus, p. part. of **reprĭmo**, *to check.*

rĕpŭdio, iare, iavi, iatum, *reject, scorn.*

rĕpugno, are, avi, atum, *oppose, resist.*

rĕpulsus, a, um, part. repello.

rĕquīro, ĕre, quīsīvi or ĭi, quīsītum, *to demand.* [quaero.]

rēs, rĕi, f., *a thing, matter, fact, event*, etc. The exact meaning depends on the context, e.g. **res frumentaria**, *corn supply, provisions.*

rĕsarcio, sarcire, sarsi, sartum, *repair, make good.*

rescīdi, see rescindo.

rescindo, ĕre, scīdi, scissum, *to break up.* [scindo, *to cleave.*]

rescisco, ĕre, scīvi, scītum, *discover, find out.*

rescrībo, ĕre, scripsi, scriptum, *transfer* from one branch of the army to another; *re-enlist.*

rĕ-servo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to save up, reserve*; *halt.*

rĕsīdeo, ēre, sēdi, no supine, *remain behīnd, be left.*

rĕsīdo, ĕre, sēdi, no supine, *settle down, subside.*

rĕ-sisto, ĕre, stīti, *to oppose, withstand.*

rē-spĭcĭo, ĕre, spexi, spectum, *to look back* or *behind one.*

rē-spondĕo, ēre, di, sum, *to answer, reply.*

rē-sponsum, i, n., *an answer.*

rēs-publĭca, reipublicae, f., *a commonwealth, state*; *the public weal.*

rē-spuo, spuĕre, spui, no supine, *spit out*; *reject.*

rē-stinguo, ĕre, stinxi, stinctum, *put out, extinguish.*

rē-stĭtŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *to set up again; to replace, restore, revive.* [statuo.]

rĕ-tĭnĕo, ēre, ŭi, tentum, *to hold fast, keep, maintain, preserve.*

re-traho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, *bring back, drag back.*

rĕ-vello, ĕre, velli, vulsum, *pull back, tear away, tear down.*

rĕ-versus. See **revertor.**

rĕ-verto, ĕre, verti, versum, *return,* found chiefly in perf. tenses; the other tenses usually deponent.

rĕ-vertor, i, versus, *to turn back, return, retire.*

re-vincio, ire, vinxi, vinctum, *bind together, hold, fasten.*

rĕ-vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to recall, summon to return, challenge.*

rex, rēgis, m., *a ruler* of a territory, *a king, chieftain.* [rego.]

rhēda, ae, f., *carriage, chariot.*

rīpă ae, f., *a bank of a river.*

rīvus, i, m., *a small stream of water, a brook.*

rōbur, ŏris, n., *oak.*

rŏgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to ask, beg, request.*

rōstrum, i, n., *beak* of a ship, sharp prow used as a ram in fighting.

rŏta, ae, f., *wheel.*

rŭbus, i, m., *bramble-bush.*

rūmor, ōris, m., *hearsay, unauthenticated report, rumor.*

rūpēs, is, f., *cliff, steep rock.*

rursus, adv., *back, back again, again.* [contr. fr. revorsus from revertor.]

S.

sacerdos, dōtis, c., *priest.* [sacer, do.]

sacrāmentum, i, n., *oath, military oath, oath of allegiance.*

săcrĭfĭcĭum, ĭi, n., *a sacrifice.* [sacer, facio.]

saepe, adv., *frequently, often.*

saepenumero, v. saepe.

saevio, īre, ii, ītum, *be furious, rage.* [saevus.]

sagitta, ae, f., *an arrow.*

sagittarius, i, n., *an archer, bowman.*

săgŭlum, i, n., dimin., *a small military cloak.* [sagum.]

saltus, ūs, m., (1) *a woodland pasture*; (2) *a mountain pass.*

sălūs, ūtis, f., *safety.*

sancĭo, īre, xi, ctum, *to make sacred*

or *inviolable* by a religious act; *to decree, establish, ordain.*

sanctus, a, um, part. sancio: as adj., of persons, *sacred, inviolable.*

sanguis, inis, m., *blood.*

sānitās, ātis, f., *soundness* of mind, *good sense.*

sāno, are, avi, atum, *make sound, cure, remedy.*

sānus, a, um, adj., *moderate, reasonable.*

săpĭo, ĕre, īvi or ĭi, *to have sense* or *discernment.*

sarcĭna, ae, f., *baggage, pack* of an individual soldier; see Introduction.

sarcio, īre, sarsi, sartum, *to mend, repair.*

sarmentum, i, n., *a twig;* in pl., *faggot.*

satisfactio, ōnis, f., *apology, excuse.*

sătisfăcio, ĕre, fēci, factum, *to give satisfaction, satisfy, content*; *to make excuse, apologize.*

sătus. See **sero**.

saucĭus, a, um, adj., *wounded.*

saxum, i, n., *stone, rock.*

scāla, ae, f., *a ladder, a scaling-ladder.* [for scandla, from scando, *to climb.*]

scăpha, ae, f., *skiff, light boat.* [σκάφη.]

scĕlĕrātus, a, um, part. scelero: as adj., *bad, wicked, infamous*: in masc., subst., *a miscreant.*

scĕlĕro, āre, no perf., ātum, *to pollute with crime.* [scelus.]

scĕlus, ĕris, n., *sin, crime.*

scienter, adv., *cleverly, wisely.* [scio.]

scientia, ae, f., *knowledge, skill, cleverness.*

scindo, ĕre, scĭdi, scissum, *to cut, rend*: vallum, *to pull* or *tear down.*

scĭo, īre, īvi, ītum, *to know.*

scorpio, ōnis, m., *scorpion*, a military engine for throwing stones and darts in time of siege.

scrībo, ĕre, psi, ptum, *to write.*

scrŏbis, is, m. and f., *pit.*

scūtum, i, n., *a shield.*

sē, sēsē, pron. reflex. of both numbers (gen. sui, dat. sibi, acc. and abl. sē or sēsē), *himself, herself, itself, themselves*: **interse**, *with (from) each other.*

sēcius, adv., comp. of sĕcus, *otherwise*: nihilo secius, *nevertheless.*

sĕco, are, secui, sectum, *cut.*

sēcrēto, adv., *in secret, secretly.*

sectio, ōnis, f., *booty.*

sector, āri, ātus sum, intensive, *to pursue eagerly.* [sequor.]

sectūra, ae, f., *a cutting, diggings, excavation, mine.*

sĕcundum, prep. with acc., *next to*; *according to*; *after.*

sĕcundus, a, um, adj., (1) *the following* or *next to the first* in time or order, *the second*; (2) *favorable.* [sequor.]

sĕcūris, is, f., *axe;* figuratively *power, authority*, with reference to the lictor's axe, carried as an emblem of a magistrate's power.

sĕcus, adv., *otherwise*; **sēcius**, compar., **nihilo sēcius**, *none the less, nevertheless.*

sed, conj., *but.*

sēdĕcim, indecl. num., *sixteen.* [sex, decem.]

sēdēs, is, f., *a seat, dwelling-place, settlement.* [sedeo.]

sēdĭtio, ōnis, f., *mutiny, revolt, sedition.*

sēdĭtiōsus, a, um, adj., *seditious, mutinous.*

sĕgĕs, ĕtis, f., *corn-field, standing grain, corn in the field, crop.*

semel, adv., *once.*

sēmentis, is, f., *sowing, planting.* [sēmen.]

sēmĭta, ae, f., *a path.*

semper, adv., *always, ever.*

senātor, ōris, *a senator*, member of the Roman senate; applied by Caesar to the Gallic *councillor.*

sĕnātus, ūs., m., *the council of elders, the Senate.* [senex.]

sĕnex, sĕnis, m., *an old man.*

sēni, ae, a, distrib. num., *six apiece.* [sex.]

sententĭa, ae, f., *a way of thinking, opinion.* [sentio.]

sentĭo, sentire, sensi, sensum, *to perceive, notice, observe.*

sentis, is, m., *thorn, brier.*

sēparātim, adv., *separately.*

sēparātus, a, um, adj., *separated, put off to one side.*

sēpăro, are, avi, atum, *to separate, to part* or *divide.*

sēpēs, is, f., *hedge.*

septem, card. num. adj., *seven.*

septentrĭo, ōnis, almost always in the plural, *the seven stars of the Bear, the north.* [literally the seven ploughing oxen, septem triones.]

septĭmus, a, um, ord. num. adj., *seventh.* [septem.]

septingenti, ae, a, num. adj., *seven hundred.* [septem centum.]

septuāgintā, indecl. num., *seventy.*

sĕpultūra, ae, f., *burial.* [sepelio.]

sĕquor, i, sĕcūtus or sequūtus sum, *to follow, attend.*

sermo, ōnis, m., *a talking, conversation.* [sero=*to join* words.]

sēro, adv., *too late.* [serus.]

sĕro, ĕre, sēvi, sătum, *to sow, plant.*

servīlis, e, adj., *belonging to* or *of a slave.* [servus.]

servio, ire, ivi, or ii, ītum, *be a slave, to serve, be devoted to.*

servĭtūs, ūtis, f., *slavery.* [servus.]

servo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to keep, lay up, preserve; beset, watch.*

servus, i, m., *a slave, serf.*

sēsquipedālis, e, adj., *a foot and a half* wide, thick, &c. [sēsqui, one half more; pes, foot.]

seu. See **sive.**

sĕvēritās, tātis, f., *sternness, strictness, rigor, stringency.*

sē-vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call apart, take aside.*

sexāgintā, *sixty.*

sexcenti, ae, a, num. adj., *six hundred.* [sex, centum.]

sexdĕcim. See **sedĕcim.**

sī, conj., *if.*

sīc, adv., *so, thus.*

siccĭtās, ātis, f., *dryness* (of the weather), *drought.* [siccus.]

sīc-ut, adv., *as, just as.*

sīc-ŭti = sicut.

sīdus, ĕris, n., *a constellation, a group of stars.*

signĭfĭcātĭo, ōnis, f., *a making of a sign* or *token; tidings.* [signum, facio.]

signĭfĭco, are, avi, atum, *show, indicate, intimate by signs.*

signum, i, n., *a military standard, ensign.*

sĭlentium, i, n., *silence.* [sileo.]

silva, ae, f., *a wood, forest.*

silvestris, e, adj., *wooded, woodland.* [silva.]

sĭmĭlis, e, adj., *like, like unto.*

sĭmĭlitudo, ĭnis, f., *resemblance, similarity.*

sĭmŭl, adv., *at the same time, at once*; sometimes=**simul atque.**

sĭmŭlācrum, i, n., *an image.* [simulo = *to make like*, similis.]

sĭmŭlātĭo, ōnis, f., *pretence.*

simul atque, conj. adv., *as soon as.*

sĭmultās, ātis, f., *deceit.*

sīn, conj., *if however, but if.*

sĭne, prep. w. abl., *without.*

singillātim (singulatim), adv., *one by one, singly.* [singuli.]

singŭlāris, e, adj. (*alone of its kind,* hence) *singular, remarkable.* [singuli.]

singŭli, ae, a, distrib. num adj., *one to each, separate, singly.*

sĭnister, tra, trum, adj., *left hand, adverse.*

sinistra, ae, f., *the left hand;* sub sinistrā, *on the left;* (sinistra really an adj. qual. manus understood.)

sĭnistrorsus, adv., *towards the left side, to the left.* [sinistro versus.]

sĭno, sĭnĕre, sīvi, sĭtum, *permit, allow, let.*

sīquĭdem, conj., *if only, in so far as.*

sĭtus, ūs, m., *position.* [sino.]

sīve (seu), conj. *whether* (=*either if*), sive (seu)...sive (seu), *whether...or.*

sŏcer, ĕri, m., *father-in-law.*

sociĕtās, ātis, f., *alliance, league.*

sŏcĭus, ĭi, m., *an ally.*

Sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun, the Sun-god.*

sōlātium, i, n., *consolation.* [sōlor, console.]

soldŭrius, i, m., *retainer, follower.*

sŏlĕo, ēre, ĭtus sum, semi-dep., *to be accustomed, to be wont.*

sŏlĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *a lonely place, a desert, wilderness.* [solus.]

sollertia, ae, f., *skill, cleverness, versatility.*

sollĭcĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to try to win over, incite, instigate* for warlike purposes.

sollĭcĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *anxiety,*

sŏlum, i, n., *the soil, ground;* solum agri, *the bare ground;* solum fossae *bottom of the trench.*

sōlum, adv., *only.*

sōlus, a, um, adj., *alone, only.*

solvo, ĕre, solvi, sŏlūtum, *to loose;* (naves), *to weigh anchor, set sail.*

sŏnĭtus, ūs, m., *sound, noise.*

sŏnus, i, m., *sound.*

sŏror, ōris, f., *sister,*—soror ex matre, *half sister on mother's side.*

sors, sortis, f., *lot, chance.*

spătĭum, ĭi, n., *a space, distance, interval.*

spĕcĭes, ēi, f., *outward appearance, look, seeming:* in speciem, *for a show, seemingly.* [specio].

specto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to look at, look to, bear in mind; to look for,* i.e., *await, expect.* [specio.]

spĕcŭlātor, ōris, m., *a scout, explorer.*

spĕculātōrius, a, um, adj., *for scouting, spying,*—navigium speculatorium, *a spy-boat.*

spĕculor, ari, atus sum, *watch, reconnoitre.*

spēro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to hope, expect.*

spes, spĕi, f., *hope.*

spīrĭtus, ūs, m., *breath, air;*—pl., *airs, pride.*

spŏlio, āre, āvi, ātum, *to rob, despoil, strip off.*

sponte, abl. f., no other case found but a (rare) gen. spontis: in expressions, sponte meâ, tuâ, suâ, *of free will, of one's own accord.* [spondeo.]

stătim, adv., *on the spot,* i.e., *at once, forthwith, straight-way, immediately.* [sto.]

stătio, ōnis, f., *an outpost, a roadstead.*

statuo, uĕre, ui, ūtum, *place, determine, judge; resolve; take measures.*

stătus, ūs, m., *position, situation, condition.*

stătūra, ae, f., *height or size* of the body, *stature.* [sto.]

stătus, ūs, m., *condition, position, circumstances.* [sto.]

stĭmulus, i, m., *a goad*; *a sharp stake* set in the ground as an obstacle to an advancing enemy.

stīpendiārius, a, um, adj., *tributary, subject to tribute*; pl., subst., **stipendiarii**, *tributaries.*

stīpendĭum, ĭi, n., *a tax, tribute*; *soldier's pay.* [stips, pendo.]

stīpĕs, itis, m., *log, trunk of a tree.*

stirps, is, f., *stem, stock, race.*

sto, āre, stĕti, stātum, *to stand*; *to abide, adhere to.*

strāmentum, i, n., *straw*: (casae) stramentis tectae, *thatched.* [sterno.]

strepitus, ūs, m., *noise, din, clatter.*

stŭdĕo, ēre, ŭi, *to take pains about, devote oneself to.*

stŭdĭōsē, adv., *eagerly, carefully, with much pains.* [studium.]

stŭdĭum, ĭi, n., *study, devotion to*: studia rei militaris, *military pursuits.* [studeo.]

stultitia, ae, f., *folly, lack of foresight.*

sŭb, prep. w. acc. or abl., *under.*

subactus. See **subĭgo.**

subdŏlus, a, um, adj., *crafty, cunning.*

sub-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to draw up.*

subductĭo, ōnis, f., *the hauling ashore of a ship.* [sub, duco.]

subĕo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to enter, undergo.*

subfŏdio (suff.), ĕre, fōdi, fossum, *stab underneath.* [fodio, dig.]

sŭb-ĭcio, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to place beneath.*

sub-iectus, a, um, part. of subicio, *lying beneath.*

subĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *subdue, conquer.*

sŭbĭto, adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly.* [sub, eo.]

subĭtus, a, um, adj., *sudden, unexpected.*

sublātus, a, um, part. **tollo.**

sub-lĕvo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to raise up, support.*

sublĭca, ae, f., *a stake, pile.*

sublŭo, ĕre, no perf., lūtum, *wash.*

subministro, are, avi, atum, *supply, provide.*

sub-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send up* (reinforcements).

submŏveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *move out of the way, move on, repulse.*

subrŭo, ĕre, rŭi, rūtum, *to undermine.*

sub-sĕquor, i, cūtus, *to follow close after.*

subsĭdĭum, ĭi, n., *aid, relief, reinforcement, support.* [sub-sideo.]

subsīdo, ĕre, sēdi, sessum, *stay, remain behind.*

sub-sisto, ĕre, stĭti, *to stand still, to hold out, hold fast.*

sub-sum, no perf., esse, *to be close at hand.*

subtrăho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, *carry off, withdraw.*

subvectio, ōnis, f., *transportation, conveyance.* [subveho.]

subvĕho, ĕre, vexi, vectum, *carry up.*

sub-vĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, *to come to one's aid, to succour.*

suc-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to come into the place of, succeed.* [sub.]

suc-cendo, ĕre, di, sum, *to set on fire from below*; in gen., *to set alight, set on fire.*

successus, ūs, m., *an advance, rapid approach.*

suc-cīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum, *to cut down.*

suc-cīsus. See succido.

suc-cumbo, ĕre, cŭbui, cŭbitum, *yield, submit.*

suc-curro, ĕre, curri, cursum, *to run* or *hasten to the aid* or *help of.*

sŭdis (nom. sing. rare), is, f., *a stake.*

sūdor, ōris, m., *sweat*; *toil, fatigue.* [sudo, sweat.]

sufficio, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *suffice*; *hold out.*

suffrāgĭum, ii, n., *a vote.*

suggestus, ūs, m., *a raised place, mound, platform* for speaking. [sub, gero.]

sui, sibi, etc., reflex. pron. of 3rd person, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves*; lacks the nom.

summitto. See **submitto.**

sum, esse, fui, *to be.*

summa, ae, f., *the whole*; **summa imperii,** *supreme command.*

summum, i, n., neut. of **summus** as subst., *highest point or part of, top, summit*; **ab summo,** *from the top, from above.*

summus, a, um, (superl. adj., fr. superus), *the top of.*

sūmo, ĕre, sumpsi, sumptum, *to take*; **poenas sumere,** *to take satisfaction, exact the penalty, inflict punishment.*

sumptŭōsus, a, um, adj., *costly, expensive.* [sumptus.]

sumptus, ūs, m., *expense.*

superbē, adv., *proudly, haughtily.*

sŭpĕrĭor, ius, comp. adj. See superus.

sŭpĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to overcome, conquer, prevail.* [super.]

supersĕdeo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, *refrain from,* gov's abl. [super, sedeo.]

sŭper-sum, esse, fui, *to be over* (as a remainder), *to be left, remain, survive.*

sŭpĕrus, a, um, adj., *that is above, upper*: comp. **sŭpĕrĭor,** ius, of time, *former, past, previous*; of strength in a battle or other contest, *superior, stronger, victorious*: sup. **sŭprēmus** and **summus,** of rank, etc., *highest, most distinguished*: **summae res,** *things of the highest importance.* [super.]

suppĕto, ĕre, petīvi or ii, petītum, *be at hand, hold out.*

supplēmentum, i, n., *re-enforcement.* [*a filling up,* sub, pleo.]

supplex, ĭcis, c., *a suppliant.* [sub, plico, *bend.*]

supplicātio, ōnis, f., *thanksgiving.*

supplĭciter, adv., *humbly, submissively.*

supplĭcĭum, ii, n., *punishment,* (of death), *execution.* [supplex, sup-plico = *to bend the knees, kneel down* (for execution, etc.).]

supporto, are, avi, atum, *carry* or *bring up, convey.*

sŭprā, prep. w. acc. and adv., *above*; of time, *before.* [superus.]

suscĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to undertake.*

suspectus, a, um, part. suspicio.

suspĭcĭo, ĕre, spexi, ctum, *to mistrust, suspect.* [sub specio.]

suspīcĭo, ōnis, f., *mistrust, suspicion.*

suspĭcor, ari, atus sum, *to suspect.*

sustento, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to bear, endure, support.* [sustineo.]

sustĭnĕo, ēre, tĭnui, tentum, *to hold up* or *out against, to withstand.* [subs = sub, teneo.]

sustŭli, v. tollo.

sŭus, a, um, pron. poss. of 3rd person, *his own, her own, its own, their own*; *his, her, its, their.*

T.

T. = **Titus.**

tabernāculum, i, n., *a tent.*

tăbŭla, ae, f., *writing-tablet; list.*

tabulātum, i, n., *a floor, storey* (of a tower or house).

tăceo, ēre, ui, itum, *be silent*; *say nothing, pass over in silence.*

tăcitus, a, um, adj., *silent.*

tālĕa, ae, *bar, rod* (of iron.)

tālis, e, adj., *of such a kind*; *such* (referring to quality always).

tam, adv. of degree, *so, so much.*

tămen, adv., *however, nevertheless, yet.*

tămetsi, conj., *notwithstanding that, although.* [contr. fr. tamen etsi.]

tandem, adv., *at last, finally*; in questions, *pray.*

tango, ĕre, tĕtĭgi, tactum, *to touch.*

tanto, see tantus.

tantŏpĕre, adv., (=**tanto opere**), *so greatly, so very*; *so vehemently.*

tantŭlus, a, um, adj., dim., *so little, so small.* [tantus.]

tantum, adv., *so much*; *just so much and no more, only, merely.*

tantus, a, um, adj., *so great* in amount, size, etc.: subst. **tantum**, i, n., *so much*: abl. **tanto** (with comparatives), *by so much, so much the, the*, (cf. quantus).

tardē, adv., *slowly.*

tardo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to impede, retard.*

tardus, a, um, adj., *slow*; tardior, *less active.*

taurus, i, m., *a bull.*

taxus, i, f., *a yew-tree.*

tectum, i, n., *roof*; *house.* [tego, cover.]

tectus, a, um, part. tego.

tĕgĭmentum, i, n., *a covering.* [tego.]

tĕgo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to cover.*

tēlum, i, n., *a weapon for throwing missiles, a javelin*, etc.

tĕmĕrārĭus, a, um, adj., *rash, inconsiderate.* [temere.]

tĕmĕrē, adv., *at random, rashly, heedlessly.*

tĕmĕrĭtās, ātis, f., *rashness, indiscretion.* [temere.]

tēmo, ōnis, m., *the pole* of a chariot.

temperantia, ae, f., *moderation, self-control.*

tempĕrātus, a, um, part. of tempero. *temperate.*

tempero, are, avi, atum, *refrain, control one's self, forbear.*

tempestās, ātis, f., *season of the year*; *storm*; *weather.*

tempto, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to try, tempt.*

tempus, ŏris, n., *time.*

tendo, ĕre, tetendi, tensum or tentum, *stretch, extend*; *pitch tent, encamp.*

tenĕbrae, arum, pl. f., *darkness.*

tĕnĕo, ēre, ŭi, tentum, *to hold, keep.*

tĕner, era, erum, adj., *tender, young.*

tento, āre, āvi, ātum, *to try, test, tempt, try to influence, endeavor.*

tĕnŭis, e, adj., (*thin*); *feeble, weak.*

tenuitās, ātis, f., *thinness, weakness, poverty.*

tenuiter, adv., *thinly.*

ter, num. adv., *thrice, three times.*

tĕrēs, ĕtis, adj., *well-turned, round, smooth, tapering.* [tero, rub.]

tergum, i, n., *back*,—**a tergo, post tergum**, *in the rear.*

terni, ae, a, distrib. num., *three each, three at a time, by threes.*

terra, ae, f., *the* (dry) *land*; *the earth*; plur. terrae, *the earth, the world.*

terrēnus, a, um, adj., *of earth, earthy.*

terrĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to frighten.*

terrĭto, are (no perf. or sup.) freq., *to put in terror, to frighten.* [terreo.]

terrŏr, ōris, m., *fright, alarm.*

tertĭus, a, um, num. ord. adj., *the third.* [ter.]

tertĭus-dĕcĭmus, a, um, num. ord. adj., *the thirteenth.*

testāmentum, i, n., *will, testament.*

testĭmōnĭum, ĭi, n., *evidence, proof.* [testor.]

testis, is, c., *a witness.*

testūdo, ĭnis, f., *a tortoise.* As a military term, the word means *a covering* or *shed* for the protection of soldiers attacking fortifications. [testa=*a shell.*]

tignum, i, n., *a beam, log, pile.*

tĭmĕo, ēre, ŭi, (no sup.) *to dread, fear.*

tĭmĭdē, adv., *faint-heartedly, timidly.* [timidus, timeo.]

tĭmĭdus, a, um, adj., *fearful, afraid, alarmed, cowardly, timid.*

tĭmor, ōris, m., *dread, fear.* [timeo.]

tŏlĕro, are, avi, atum, *to bear, endure, sustain.*

tollo, tollĕre, sustŭli, sublātum, *to raise, lift,* or *set up; to take away, remove.*

tormentum, i, n., *torture.* [torqueo, *to twist.*]

torrĕo, ēre, torrŭi, tostum, *to scorch.*

tŏt, num. adj. indecl., *so many.*

tŏtĭdem, indecl. adj., *the same number, just as many.*

tōtus, a, um (gen. ius, dat. i), adj., *the whole, entire, all.*

trabs, is, f., *beam, timber.*

tractus, v. traho.

trādo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to give* or *hand over; to deliver* by teaching, *to teach.* [trans, do.]

trādūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead* or *bring across* or *over.* [trans, duco.]

trāgŭla, ae, f., *a kind of javelin* or *lance* used by the Gauls. [traho.]

trăho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, *to draw, drag along.*

trāĭcĭo, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to pierce through, transfix.* [trans, iacio.]

trā-no, nare, navi, natum, *swim across.* [trans, no.]

tranquillĭtās, ātis, f., *calm.*

trans, prep. w. acc., *across, over, on the far side of.*

transcendo, ĕre, scendi, scensum, *climb over,* — **transcendere in naves**, *to board the ships.*

transduco. See traduco.

trans-ĕo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to go across* or *over, to cross.*

trans-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to bear across, to bring* or *carry over.*

trans-fīgo, ĕre, xi, xum, *to pierce through, transfix.*

transfŏdio, ere, fōdi, fossum, *pierce through, stab, transfix.*

transgrĕdior, grĕdi, gressus sum, *go* or *pass over, cross.*

transĭtus, ūs, m., *a going* or *passing over, a passage, crossing.* [transeo.]

translātus, a, um, part. transfero.

trans-mărīnus, a, um, adj., *brought across* or *from beyond sea, imported.*

transmissus, ūs, m., *crossing, interval, distance.*

transmitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *send over.*

transporto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to convey across.*

transtrum, i. n., *thwart, cross-beam.*

transversus, pf. part. of **transverto**; as adj., *crosswise, athwart, transverse.*

trĕcenti, ae, a, adj., *three hundred.*

trĕdĕcim, indecl. num., *thirteen.*

trĕpĭdo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bustle about anxiously, to hurry with alarm.*

trēs, trĭa, card. num. adj., *three.*

trĭbūnus, i, m., *a chieftain, commander, tribune*; **tribuni militum**, *military tribunes,* officers of the army, six to each legion, who commanded in turn, each two months at a time.

trĭbŭo, ĕre, trĭbŭi, trĭbūtum, *to assign.*

trĭbūtum, i, n., *a stated payment, tribute.*

trīduum, i, n., *space of three days, three days.* [tres, dies.]

triennium, i, n., *space of three years, three years.* [tres, annus.]

trīgintā, indecl. num., *thirty.*

trīni, ae, a, num. adj. distrib., *three at a time*; *in groups of three.* [tres.]

trĭpertīto, adv., *in three divisions.* [tres, pars.]

triplex, plĭcis, adj., *theeefold, triple.* [tres, plico.]

trĭquĕtrus, tra, trum, adj., *triangular.*

tristis, e, adj., *sad, gloomy, sorrowful.*

tristĭtia, ae, f., *sadness, dejection.*

truncus, i, m., *trunk of a tree.*

tu, tui, pers. pron. *thou, you* (sing.); pl. **vos**, vestri or vestrum.

tŭba, ae, f., *trumpet.*

tueor, ēri, tuitus or tutus sum, *look at, behold*; *see to, protect, defend, support.*

tŭli. See **fero.**

tum, adv., *then.*

tumultuor, ari, atus sum, *make a disturbance, be in confusion.*

tumultuōsē, adv., *with confusion.*

tŭmultus, ūs, m., *commotion, disturbance.*

tŭmŭlus, i, m., *a mound.* [tumeo = *to swell.*]

tunc, adv., *then, at this juncture.*

turma, ae, f., *a squadron.*

turpis, e, adj., *base, shameful, dishonorable.*

turpiter, adv., *disgracefully, basely.*

turpitudo, ĭnis, f., *baseness, dishonor.*

turris, is (acc. turrim and turrem; abl. turri and turre), f., *a tower.*

tūtē, adv., *safely, securely.*

tūtō, adv., *in safety, safely, securely.*

tūtus, a, um, part. tueor. As adj., *safe.*

tuus, a, um, poss. adj., *thy, thine*; *your* (if addressed to one person.)

U.

ŭbĭ, adv., (of place), *where*; (of time), *when.*

ŭbĭcumquĕ, adv., *wherever.*

ŭbīquĕ, adv., *anywhere, everywhere* (disting. from ŭbĭquĕ = ŭbĭ-quĕ, "and where").

ulciscor, i, ultus, *to take vengeance on*; *avenge oneself on.*

ullus, a, um, adj., *any, any at all.* [for unulus, dimin. of unus.]

ultĕrĭor, ĭus, comp. adj., *farther.*

ultĭmus, a, um, sup. adj., *farthest, most distant*: **ultĭmi**, ōrum, m., *the hindmost.*

ultra, prep. with acc., *beyond, on the far side of.*

ultro, adv., *unasked*; *unprovoked*; *of one's own accord.*

ultus, v. ulciscor.

ŭlŭlātus, us, m., *a yell, war-whoop.*

umquam, adv., *ever, at any time*; (disting. fr. semper, ever = always).

ūnā, adv., *together, in company.* [unus.]

undĕ, adv., *from which place, whence.*

undĕcim, card. num. indecl., *eleven.*

undĕcimus, a, um, ord. num. *eleventh.*

undēquadrāgintā, card. num. indecl., *thirty-nine.* ["one from forty."]

undĭquĕ, adv., *from all parts, from every quarter, on all sides.*

ūnĭversus, a, um, adj., *all together, in a body, as a whole, whole.*

ūnus, a, um, card. num. adj., *one*:

ad unum, *to a man*, i. e., *without exception.*

urbānus, a, um, adj., *of the city, belonging to the city.*

urbs, is, f., *city.*

urgeo, ēre, ursi, no supine, *press, push; press hard upon, oppress.*

ūrus, i, m., *a wild-ox, aurochs.*

ūsitatus, a, um, adj., *usual, common, familiar.*

usqŭe, adv., *all the way*: usque ad, *right up to.*

ūsus, ūs, m., *use, employment; need, occasion; usefulness, use*: **ex usu** or **usui esse**, *to be useful* or *advantageous.* [utor.]

ūsus, a, um, part. utor.

ŭt or **ŭti**, adv. and conj., with indic., *as; when*; with subjunctive, *that, so that, in order that.*

ŭter, ŭtra, ŭtrum, pron. interrog., *which of the two.*

ŭter-que, ŭtrăque, ŭtrumque, pron., *each of two, both (separately*; opp. to ambo, *both together).*

ŭtī, conj. See ut.

ūtī, infin. of ūtor.

ūtilis, e, adj., *useful, advantageous.*

ūtilitās, ātis, f., *usefulness, advantage, benefit.*

ūtor, i, ūsus sum, *to use, accept, enjoy.*

utrimque, adv., *on both sides.*

utrum, conj., *whether.*

uxor, ōris f., *a wife.*

V.

văcātĭo, ōnis, f., *freedom, exemption* from a service, etc. [vaco.]

văco, are, avi, atum, *be unoccupied, lie waste.*

văcuus, a, um, adj., *empty, clear, vacant, unoccupied.*

vădum, i, n., *a ford.*

vāgīna, ae, f., *a scabbard, sheath.*

văgor, āri, ātus, *to go to and fro, roam, wander.* [vagus.]

vălĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to be strong*: *to have power* or *influence, to avail.*

valētūdo, ĭnis, f., *state of health; health.*

valles or **vallis**, is, f., *a vale, valley.*

vallum, i, n., *an earthen wall* or *rampart set with palisades, a rampart.*

vărĭĕtās, ātis, f., *diversity, variety.*

vărius, a, um, adj., *varying, different, changing.*

vasto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to empty of inhabitants, to lay waste.* [vastus.]

vastus, a, um, adj., *vast, wide-spreading, immense, enormous.*

vāticinātio, ōnis, f., *divination, foretelling, predicting.*

vectīgal, ālis, n., *tax.* [veho.]

vectīgālis, e, adj., *tributary*; as subst., *a tributary, one who pays tribute.*

vectōrius, a, um, adj., *for transport.* [veho.]

vehementer, adv., *vigorously, violently; very, exceedingly.*

vĕho, ĕre, vexi, vectum *bear, carry, convey.*

vel, conj., *or*; *even.*—**vel**....**vel**, *either*....*or.*

velim and **vellem**, see volo.

vēlōcĭtās, ātis, f., *speed, swiftness.* [velox.]

vēlōcĭter, adv., *speedily, swiftly*; comp. **velocius**; sup. **velocissime.** [velox.]

vēlox, ōcis, adj., *swift, active, rapid, quick.*

vēlum, i, n., *a sail.*

vĕlut, adv., *just as.*—**velut si**, *just as if.*

vēnātĭo, ōnis, f., *hunting, the chase.* [venor.]

vēnātor, ōris, m., *a hunter.* [venor.]

vendo, ĕre, vendidi, venditum, *sell, offer, for sale.* [vēnum, do.]

vĕnia, ae, f., *pardon, favor, indulgence.*

vĕnĭo, ire, vēni, ventum, *to come.*

ventĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to come often, to keep coming.* [venio.]

ventus, i, m., *wind.*

vēr, vēris, n., *spring.*

verbum, i, n., *a word.*

vĕrĕor, ēri, ĭtus, *to fear* or *be afraid.*

vergo, vergĕre, *to incline, turn, verge.*

vergŏbrĕtus, i, m., *vergobret*, title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.

vērīsimilis, e, adj., *likely, probable.*

vĕrĭtus, a, um, part. vereor.

vērō, adv., *in truth, assuredly, however.* [verus.]

verso, are, avi, atum, *turn often*; *change.*

versor, āri, ātus, (properly the mid. form of verso, are, freq. of verto), *stay, dwell, be* in a place, or *mix among* or *with people.*

versus, ūs, m., *a line* of poetry, *a verse.*

versus, adv. and prep., *towards, in the direction of.*

verto, ĕre, verti, versum, *turn; change.*

vērus, a, um, adj., *true, real; right, just, reasonable.*

vĕrūtum, i, n., *a dart, javelin.* [veru, *a spit.*]

vesper, ĕris, (locative vesperi, acc mostly vesperum), m., *the evening*

vester, tra, trum, adj.; *your, yours* (addressed to more than one.)

vestīgĭum,, ĭi, n., *a footprint, track, trace.*

vestio, īre, vestīvi, vestītum, *to clothe.* [vestis.]

vestis, is, f., *covering*; *garment, clothing.*

vestītus. See vestio.

veterānus, a, um, adj., *old, veteran*; as subst., *a veteran.*

vĕto, āre, vetŭi, vĕtĭtum, *to forbid.*

vĕtus, ĕris, adj., *old.*

vexillum, i, n., *a flag*; a red flag placed upon the general's tent as a signal for battle or marching.

vexo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to harass, ravage.*

vĭa, ae, f., *a way, street, road.*

vĭātor, ōris, m., *traveller.*

vīcēni, ae, a, num., distrib. adj., *twenty each.* [viginti.]

vīcēsĭmus (vicessimus and vigesimus), a, um, num. ord. adj., *the twentieth.* [viginti.]

vīcĭes, adv., *twenty times.* [viginti.]

vīcīnĭtās, ātis, f., *neighborhood*; *people in a neighborhood, neighbors.*

vĭcis, (gen. ; nom. wanting) f., *change, turn*,—**in vĭcem**, *in turn.*

victĭma, ae, f., *a sacrifice, victim.*

victor, ōris, m., *a conqueror*; in apposition, *victorious.* [vinco.]

victōrĭa, ae, f., *victory.*

victus, a, um, part. vinco.

victus, ūs, m. (*that on which one lives*), *provisions, sustenance, victuals.* [vivo.]

vīcus, i, m., *village.*

vĭdĕo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, *to see;* pass, **videor**, *I seem* or *am seen*; impers. pass. *to seem fit* or *good.*

vĭgĭlia, ae, f., *a being awake, a watching; sleeplessness; a watch* of the night. The Romans divided the night from sunset till sunrise into four equal "watches."

vīginti, adj., indecl., *twenty.*

vīmen, ĭnis, n., *a pliant twig, withe, osier.*

vincio, ire, vinxi, vinctum, *bind.*

vinco, ĕre, vīci, victum, *to conquer, be victorious*: **vincite**=*have your own way.*

vinculum, i, n., *a chain, bond, fetters.* [vincio.]

vindĭco, are, avi, atum, *claim, demand; set free, liberate; avenge, revenge, take vengeance on* or *for; punish.*

vīnea, ae, f., *a vinea, mantlet, penthouse, shed,* a shelter used during sieges to protect the men engaged in using the battering-ram and other engines. [vinum.]

vīnum, i, n., *wine.*

vĭŏlo, āre, avi, atum, *to do violence to, injure.* [vis.]

vĭr, viri, m., *a man, a husband.*

vīres, v. vis.

virgo, inis, f., *a maiden.*

virgultum, i, n., *brushwood, underwood, thicket.*

virītim, adv., *man by man, individually.* [vir.]

virtūs, ūtis, f., *manliness; bravery, courage, valor; worth, virtue.* [vir.]

vīs, acc. **vim**, abl. **vi**. f., in sing., *violence, force, power;* plur. **vires, virium**, etc., *bodily strength.*

vīsus. See **video**,

vīta, ae, f., *life.* [vivo.]

vīto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to avoid, evade.*

vitrum, i, n., *woad.*

vīvo, ĕre, vixi, victum, *to live.*

vīvus, a, um, adj., *alive, living.* [vivo.]

vix, adv., *scarcely, with difficulty; barely.*

vōbīs, see vos.

vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call, invite, challenge.*

vŏlo, velle, vŏlŭi, *to wish, will, be willing.*

vŏluntārĭus, a, um, adj., *willing, of one's own free will:* subst., **voluntarii**, ōrum, m., *volunteers.* [voluntas.]

vŏluntās, ātis, f., *will, free-will, inclination, disposition.*

vŏluptās, ātis, f., *pleasure.*

vōs, plur. of **tu**, pron. pers., *you.*

vŏvĕo, ēre, vōvi, vōtum, *to vow, to promise solemnly.*

vox, vōcis, f., *a voice, cry.*

vulgo, adv., *commonly, generally.* [vulgus.]

vulgus, i, (usually n., occasionally m., but not in Caesar) *the mass of the people, the people, the public.*

vulnĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to wound, injure* by a wound. [vulnus.]

vulnus, ĕris, n., *a wound.*

vultus, ūs, m., *countenance, expression of the face, look.* [volo, lit. "the wish as expressed in the face."]

ADDENDA.

ad-figo, *V.* af-figo.
ad-fingo, *V.* af-fingo.
ad-gredior, *V.* ag-gredior.
ad-licio, *V.* al-licio.
ad-paro, *V.* ap-paro.
ad-pello, *V.* ap-pello.
a-mens, ntis, adj., *mad, senseless.*
ap-porto, *V.* ad-porto.

caelum, i. n., *heaven, sky.*
caedo, ĕre, cecīdi, caesum, *cut, kill.*
celer, eris, ere, adj., *swift.*
circumduco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *lead around.*
clēmens, ntis, adj., *gentle, kind.*
colligo, are, avi, atum, *bind together* (ligo); distinguish fr. colligo, ĕre.
cōminus, adv., *in close combat* [con, manus].
contego, ĕre, xi, ctum, *cover up.*
continentia, ae, f., *self-restraint.*
culmen, minis, n., *summit, top, roof.*

dens, ntis, m., *tooth.*
densus, a, um, adj., *thick.*
divulgo, are, avi, atum, *spread abroad.*
dorsum, i. n., *a back; ridge.*
duplex, icis, adj., *two-fold* [plico].

ĕquĭdem, *indeed.*
ex-cīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cisum, *cut out.*
ex-curro, ĕre, curri, cursum, *make a sally.*

fons, ntis, m., *fountain, spring.*

gaesum, i. n., *a Celtic javelin.*
glorior, ari, atus sum, *glory in, boast of.*
grandis, e, adj., *large.*

humānitās, ātis, f., *civilization; refinement.*

ideo, adv., *therefore.*
includo, ĕre, clusi, clusum, *shut in*
incuso, are, avi, atum, *upbraid, rebuke.*

indulgentia, ae, f., *indulgence.*
intro, adv., *inwards.*
invĭcem, adv., *in turn.*
iussu, adv., *by order.*

languidus, a, um, adj., *feeble, spiritless.*
lignum, i. n., *wood.*

mālĕ, adv., *badly.*
mūlio, ōnis, m., *mule-driver.*
mūto, are, avi, atum, *change.*

nauticus, a, um, adj., *naval.*

occurso, are, avi, atum, *rush to meet.*
ociter, adv. compar., ocius, *swiftly.*

paries, ĕtis, m., *a house wall.*
patienter, adv., *patiently, with endurance.*
penna, *V.* pinna.
perfidus, a, um, adj., *perfidious.*
pertimesco, ĕre, timui, *fear intensely.*

proruo, ĕre, rui, rutum, *dash down, overthrow.*

quamdiu, adv. and conj., *how long, as long.*
quotidianus, *V.* Cotidianus.

rebellio, ōnis, f., *a renewal of war.*

saepes, is, f., *a hedge.*
satis, adv., *enough.*
sīcubi, conj., *if anywhere.*
signifer, *standard-bearer.*
simulo, are, avi, atum, *pretend.*
sincerē, adv., *honestly, truly.*
stabilitās, -ātis, *steadiness* [sto, stand].
suf-fodio, *V.* sub-fodio.

vallus, i. m., *a stake.*

APPENDIX A.

WORDS AND PHRASES FOR MEMORIZING.

NOTE.—The student should learn the principal parts of all verbs and the inflection of nouns and adjectives.

BOOK II.

CHAPTER 1.

creber, frequent, numerous.
certiorem facio, I inform.
certior fio, I am informed.
coniuro, conspire ; *coniuratio*, conspiracy.
obses, hostage.
inter se dare, exchange.
primum; in the first place.
deinde, in the second place ; afterwards.
vereor, I fear.
nonnulli, some, several.
sollicito, stir up, instigate.
partim, partly—*pars* (f.), a part.
hiemo, I winter ; *hiems*, winter ; *hiberna*, winter quarters.
moleste or *graviter fero*, I am annoyed.
studeo (dat.) I am eager for—fond of.
imperium, rule, power, command.

CHAPTER 2.

nuntius, message or messenger.
litterae, letter or letters.
conscribo, enrol, enlist.
inita aestate, at the beginning of summer.
cum primum, as soon as, when first.
copia, plenty, supply ; *copiae*, (1) stores, (2) forces.
finitimus, neighbouring.
apud (acc.), among, with, near.

ea geruntur, these things are going on.
cognosco, I learn; *cognovi*, I know.
nuntio, report, announce.
manus (fem.), (1) hand, (2) band or force.
cogo, (1) gather, collect, (2) compel.
existimo, *arbitror*, think.
proficiscor, set out.
res frumentaria, *frumentum*, corn supply, corn.
castra moveo, move camp.
castra pono, pitch camp.
circiter, about (with numerals), —*de*, about, concerning.
Learn the cardinal and ordinal numerals up to *twenty*.

CHAPTER 3.

Eo cum venisset, having arrived there, on his arrival there.
de improviso, unexpectedly.
subito, suddenly.
celerius opinione, sooner than expected.
proximus, next, nearest.
civis, citizen.
civitas, state.
mitto, send.
legatus, (1) envoy, ambassador, (2) deputy, lieutenant.
in fidem permitto, entrust to the care or honour of.
Belgae reliqui, the rest of the Belgae.
consentio, agree, join with (*cum*, expressed).
paratus dare, ready to give.
imperata facere, do one's bidding.
iuvo (acc.), aid.
ceteri, *reliqui*, the rest of, remaining, all other.
in armis esse, to be under arms.
neque, (1) neither, nor, (2) and not=*et non*, sometimes, (3) but not=*sed non*.
incŏlo, dwell.
ne—quĭdem, not even.
utor, (1) use, (2) observe (customs), (3) show or display (zeal, etc.).
magistratus, (1) magistrate, (2) office.

CHAPTER 4.

quaero ab, or *ex*, enquire of.
peto ab, seek from.

rogo (acc), ask, ask for.
quis, or *qui* (interrog.), which, what, or who?
quantus, how great?
quot, how many?
reperio, find out, discover (after searching or enquiring).
cognosco, find out, become aware, learn.
invenio, find, come upon (not implying search).
propter (acc), on account of.
consido, settle.
is locus, that place; *ea loca*, those places.
expello, expel.
solus, alone, only.
patrum memoriā, within the memory of our fathers.
finis (m. or f.), end, limit; *fines* (m.) territories, boundaries.
res militaris, military matters.
concilium or *consilium*, a council, deliberative assembly.
consilium, counsel, plan, design, policy.
polliceor, promise.
plurimum navibus valēre, to be strongest in ships.
conficio, (1) complete, (2) bring to an end.
Learn the cardinal *tens* to *centum*.
imperium or *summam totius belli*, chief command.
imperium obtinēre, hold command.
appello, are, I call; *appello, ĕre*, bring a ship to port.

CHAPTER 5.

cohortor, exhort, encourage.
convenire, assemble.
līberi, children.
adduco, bring.
iubeo (acc. and infin.), *impero* (dat. and *ut*), order, command; *iubeo* also means "to bid."
doceo, teach, tell, inform.
magno opere, greatly; *quanto opere*, how greatly.
interest (gen.), it is important to, it is in the interest of.
populor, *vasto*, devastate, lay waste, ravage.
coepi, begin or began.
dimitto, dismiss.
postquam vēnit, after he came.
cum venisset, when he had come.
ubi vēnit, when he came.

postea, *post*, afterwards.
longe (or *multum*) *abest*, it is far distant.
explorator, scout.
lătus, side ; *lātus*, wide.
munio, fortify, protect.
ripa, bank.
commeatus, supplies.
pons (m.), bridge.
praesidium, guard, garrison, detachment.
relinquo, I leave behind.
discedo, *excedo*, I leave, depart.
vallum, rampart.
fossa, ditch.
pēs, foot ; *pĕdĕs*, foot-soldier.

CHAPTER 6.

impetus, (1) an attack, charge, (2) rush, impetuosity, force.
ex itinere, on the march.
oppugno, assault ; *expugno*, take by storm, capture.
sustineo, hold out, resist.
oppugnatio, siege.
murus, town wall ; *vallum*, rampart ; *moenia*, fortifications.
lapis (m.), stone.
munitiones, lines, works, fortifications.
testudo, (1) shelter of shields, (2) a shed.
tela conicere, hurl weapons.
praesum (dat.), I am at the head of, in charge of.
praeficio, I appoint in charge of (acc. of person, dat. of thing).
de pace, concerning peace.

CHAPTER 7.

media nox, mid-night.
dux (1) leader, (2) guide.
subsidium, support.
adventus, arrival.
studium, zeal.
eā de causā, for that reason.
spes, hope.
itaque, therefore, accordingly, consequently.
moror, *ari*, *moratus*, to delay ; *morior*, *mori*, *mortuus*, to die.
vicus, village.

adeo, visit, go to.
contendo, hasten.

CHAPTER 8.

statuo, *constituo*, resolve.
proelium, battle.
intellego, perceive.
aciem instruo, draw up line of battle.
idoneus, suitable.
collis, (m.) hill.
paulisper, a little while.
paululum, a little.
paulatim, gradually.
utrumque lătus, both sides.
circumvenio, surround.
opus est, there is need of (abl. of thing needed).
pro castris, in front of the camp.
constituo, (1) resolve, determine, (2) station.

CHAPTER 9.

palus, (f.) marsh.
inter, (acc.), between.
transeo, cross.
exspecto, (1) wait for, (2) wait to see.
impedītus, encumbered, embarrassed.
expedītus, light-armed, lightly equipped.
aggredior, *adorior*, attack, assail.
proelium equestre, cavalry fight.
secundus, favourable, successful.
vădum, ford.
conor, attempt.
magno usui nobis est, it is of great advantage to us.
prohibeo, prevent.

CHAPTER 10.

equĕs, *ĭtis*, horseman ; *equus*, horse.
equites (pl.), *equitatus* (sing.), cavalry.
pedĕs, foot-soldier ; *pes*, foot.
pedites (pl.), *peditatus* (sing.), infantry.
pugnatum est, they fought.
occīdo, kill ; *occĭdo*, fall.

interficio, kill.
lŏcus inīquus, unfavourable place.
progredior, advance.
intellego, perceive ; *video*, see.
deficio, (1) fail, (2) revolt.
convŏco, assemble, call together.
convenio, assemble, come together.
quisque, each.
revertor, *redeo*, return.
undique, from all parts.
auxilium fero (dat.), bring aid to.

CHAPTER 11.

castris egredior, leave camp.
ordo, rank, order.
pervenire ad, arrive at.
fuga, flight.
videor, seem.
statim, *confestim*, at once, immediately.
quā de causā, for what reason.
primā luce, at day-break.
confirmo, (1) confirm, strengthen, encourage, (2) declare, affirm.
novissimum agmen, rear of the column.
primum agmen, the van.
clamor, shout.
occasus solis, sun-set.
se recipere, (1) betake one's self, retire, (2) recover one's self.

CHAPTER 12.

magnum iter, a forced march.
pauci, few.
vinea, mantlet, small shed.
quae usui sunt, those things which are useful or necessary.
vineam ago, I bring up the mantlets.
aggerem, a mound or raised platform.
turris, tower.
deditio, a surrender ; *dēdo*, I surrender.
impetro, obtain a wish ; *impero*, command.

CHAPTER 13.

arma, *-orum*, arms.
in deditionem accipere, receive the surrender of.

trado, hand over.
absum, am distant.
maior natu, older man.
egredior, go out.
in fidem venire, place one's self under protection.
mulier, ĕris, woman ; *vir*, man ; *puer*, boy or child.
mos, moris, custom ; *mores* (pl.), habits, manners, character.

CHAPTER 14.

princeps, (1) chieftain, (2) author, ring-leader, instigator.
deficio, revolt ; fall away, fail.
bellum infero (dat.), make war upon.
bellum gero, carry on war.
non solum—sed etiam, not only—but also.
auctoritas, influence.

CHAPTER 15.

honoris causā, out of respect to.
recipio, receive again ; *accipio*, receive.
posco, demand.
confero, collect, bring together.
aditus, access, approach.
mercātor, trader.
patior, suffer, allow.
vinum, wine.
infero, import.
virtus, courage.

CHAPTER 16.

iter facio, I march.
captīvus, prisoner.
adventus, ūs, arrival.
uterque, both (individuals) ; *utrique*, both (parties).
aetas, age ; *aestas*, summer ; *aestus*, tide.
palus, marsh.

CHAPTER 17.

explorator, scout.
idoneus, suitable (*ad* before gerund ; dat. of a noun).
deligo, ĕre, choose ; *deligo, are*, bind.
complures, several.
sequor, follow.

unā, adv. together.
quidam, certain.
demonstro, *ostendo*, point out.
impedimenta, baggage (of an army).
sarcinae, baggage (of an individual soldier).
audeo, dare ; *audio*, hear.

CHAPTER 18.

loci natura, nature of the ground ; natural position.
apertus, open.
altitudo, height ; *longitudo*, length ; *latitudo*, breadth.

CHAPTER 19.

subsequor, follow up.
agmen claudo, bring up the rear.
transgredior, *transeo*, cross.
proelium, *pugna*, battle ; *bellum*, war.
cedo, retreat, fall back, retire.
abdo, hide ; *abdo me*, hide myself.
in silvas se abdiderunt, they hid in the woods.
videor, seem.

CHAPTER 20.

signum, standard.
oportet, it behooves.
arcesso, send for.
cohortor, exhort, encourage.
superior, (1) upper, higher ; (2) previous.

CHAPTER 21.

perturbo, disturb, confuse.
paratus, ready.
desum, I am lacking.
conspicio, behold, catch sight of.
consisto, halt.

CHAPTER 22.

subsidium, support ; *auxilia*, allies, reinforcements.
impedio, hinder, obstruct.

CHAPTER 23.

sinister, left ; *dexter*, right.
vulnus, wound.

locus superior, higher ground, heights.
in fugam dare or *conicere*, put to flight.
cornu, wing (of an army).

CHAPTER 24.

circumvenio, surround.
rursus, again.
perterreo, frighten thoroughly.
compleo, fill.
premo, press.
supero, *vinco*, conquer, defeat.

CHAPTER 25.

occīdo, *interficio*, kill.
neco, put to death.
conficio, (1) finish, (2) exhaust, disable.
inferior locus, lower ground.
angustus, (1) narrow, (2) tight, difficult.
novissimi, those in the rear.
scutum, shield ; *gladius*, sword.

CHAPTER 26.

signa converto, face about.
potior (abl.), gain possession of.
celeritās, speed, quickness.
periculum, danger, risk.

CHAPTERS 27—35.

commutatio, change.
salus, safety.
cădo, *cecĭdi*, fall ; *caedo*, *cecīdi*, cut, kill.
iniuria, wrong-doing.
auxilio venire, come to the aid of.
creber, frequent.
vires, strength.
plerumque, generally ; *plerīque*, most (people).
onus, burden.
modus, manner, form.
respondeo, reply.
porta, gate ; *portus*, harbour.
exeo, *excedo*, *egredior*, go out, leave.
subito, *repentino*, suddenly, unexpectedly.

inīquus locus, unfavourable place.
postridie eius diei ; *postero die* ; *postridie*, on the morrow.
marĭtĭmus, maritime.
attingo, border on, touch.
incolo, inhabit.
legatus, ambassador ; *legatio*, embassy.

MISCELLANEOUS :

Review *all* the meanings of the following words as used in Caesar:

acies, agmen, fuga, pax, remus, vadum, vallum, lătus, portus, signum, oneraria, naves solvere, septentrio, vigilia, tempestas, aestus, civis, civitas, finis, fines, consilium, concilium, conventus, legatus, eques, equitatus, tantus, quantus, quot, summus, ullus, agger, ager, quisque, quisquam, quidam, aliquis, deligo (2 words), reperio, cognosco, ordo, eo (adv.) inde, unde, quo (adv.) item, audeo, itaque, ita, sic, autem, vero, tamen, priusquam, quam, at, atque, paro, pareo, confirmo, conor, cogo, genus, revertor, colloco, comparo, confero, constituo, expono, egredior, fere, circiter, nox, pes, pedĕs, nam, iam, enim, sed, statim, rursus, ibi, ubi, spes, annus, alter, alius, uter, uterque, nullus, nemo, imperium, impero, impetro, pugno, pugna, propter, apud, pro, prope, longus, longe, graviter fero, capio, existimo, arbitror, puto, relinquo, excedo, arma, populus, accipio, aestas, aetas, aditus, ora, litus, adire, interim, gero, satis, huc accedebat, accidit, nactus, natus, conspicio, convoco, convenio, decem milia passuum, esseda, plerique, plerumque, manus, aqua, hoc genus pugnae, consuevi, consuesco, funda, sagitta, pedem referre, quae res magno usui est, decem, decimus, desilio, officium, magistratus, in officio esse, fides, subsequor, animadverto, ex navi egredior, proelio facto, quaero, quĕror, ignosco, quartus, inferior, pulvis, statio, paulo, occupo, adorior, incendo, diu, orbis, terga vertere, occīdo, discedo, praeficio, praeesse, qua de causa, video, fio, conspectus, arbitratus, veritus, secutus, virtus, lenis, cursus, tertiā vigiliā, subduco, deduco.

TEST LIST—ENGLISH-LATIN.

to command.
to defeat.
general.
army.
forces.
column.
line of battle.
flight.
pitch camp.
join battle.
lieutenant.
sue for peace.
battle.
war.
scout.
learn
inform.
fortify.
a surrender.
to surrender.
kill.
wound (noun).
wound (verb).
rout.
enemy.
inform.
hostage.
march.
messenger.
enlist.
letter.
wage war.
make an attack.
set out.
arrive at.
suddenly.
corn.
conspire.
find out.
heights.
plan.
promise.
hide in the woods.
assemble (intrans.).
assemble (trans.).
wall.
rampart.
ditch.
zeal.
courage.
hope.
safety.
resolve.
perceive.
suitable.
surround.
marsh.
cross.
river.

attack.
infantry.
cavalry.
advance.
each.
rank.
leave (go out).
leave (behind).
mound.
tower.
shed.
arms.
hand over.
courage.
baggage.
seem.
to be distant.
aid.
protection.
the van.
the rear.
side.
standard.
gate.
harbour.
unfavourable.
ship.
oar.
war-ship.
ship of burden.
set sail.
weather.
wave.
north.
south.
east.
west.
sea.
ocean.
wind.
mid-day.
mid night.
hour.
watch (of the night).
shore.
storm.
to land (intrans.).
to land (trans.).
tide.
make a sally.
hill.
fortification.
fear.
can.
wish.
places.
work.
remaining.
think.

ask.
enquire.
say.
point out.
road.
at the same time.
hurl javelins.
do.
make.
come.
go.
halt.
burn.
ravage.
safe.
about.
on account of.
for the purpose of.
however.
after.
afterwards.
appoint over.
be in charge of.
begin.
injure.
fleet.
mast.
yard-arm.
rope.
high.
wide.
compel.
encamp
fear.
lose.
easy.
a storm.
to storm (a town).
because.
retreat.
far.
too far.
promise.
ask.
demand.
seek.
approach.
four.
fourth.
daily.
to sail.
attack.
besiege.
noon.
10 a.m.
5 p.m.
to launch.
to beach.

APPENDIX B.

SIGHT READING,

DE BELLO GALLICO,

BOOK VII. (*Adapted*).

(For hints and vocabulary on each passage, see pages 18 and 19. Passages specially adapted for Honor students begin with No. 27.)

THE WAR WITH VERCINGETORIX.

1. Quietā Galliā, Caesar, ut constituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos proficiscitur. Ibi cognoscit de Clodii caede, de senatusque consulto certior factus, delectum totā provinciā habere instituit. Eae res in Galliam Transalpinam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsi rumoribus Galli, retineri urbano motu Caesarem neque in tantis dissensionibus ad exercitum venire posse. Hac impulsi occasione, qui iam ante se subiectos dolerent, liberius atque audacius de bello consilia inire incipiunt.

2. Inter se principes Galliae queruntur de Acconis morte; miserantur communem Galliae fortunam; omnibus pollicitationibus ac praemiis deposcunt, qui belli initium faciant et Galliam in libertatem vindicent. Imprimis rationem esse habendam dicunt, ut Caesar ab exercitu intercludatur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiones audeant absente imperatore ex hibernis egredi, neque imperator sine praesidio ad legiones pervenire possit. Postremo in acie praestare interfici, quam non veterem belli gloriam libertatemque recuperare.

3. His rebus agitatis profitentur Carnutes, se nullum periculum communis salutis causā recusare, principesque ex omnibus bellum

facturos pollicentur et ut iureiurando ac fide sanciatur petunt, ne facto initio belli ab reliquis deserantur. Tum collaudatis Carnutibus, dato iureiurando ab omnibus qui aderant, tempore eius rei constituto, ab concilio disceditur.

4. Ubi ea dies venit, Carnutes Gutruato et Conconnetodumno ducibus, Cenabum signo dato concurrunt civesque Romanos, qui negotiandi causā ibi constiterant, in his Gaium Fufium Citam, honestum equitem Romanum, qui rei frumentariae iussu Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eorum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnes Galliae civitates fama perfertur. Nam quae Cenabi oriente sole gesta essent, ante primam confectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernorum audita sunt, quod spatium est milium passuum circiter centum sexaginta.

5. Simili ratione Vercingetorix, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulescens, cuius pater principatum Galliae totius obtinuerat, convocatis suis clientibus facile incendit. Cognito eius consilio ad arma concurritur. Prohibetur ab Gobannitione, patruo suo, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc temptandam fortunam non existimabant; expellitur ex oppido Gergovia: non destitit tamen atque in agris habet delectum. Hac coacta manu, quoscumque adit ex civitate, ad suam sententiam perducit; hortatur, ut communis libertatis causā arma capiant, magnisque coactis copiis adversarios suos, a quibus paulo ante erat eiectus, expellit ex civitate.

6. Rex ab suis appellatur. Dimittit legationes. Celeriter sibi Senones, Parisios, Pictones, Cadurcos, Turonos, Aulercos, Lemovices, Andos reliquosque omnes, qui Oceanum attingunt, adiungit; omnium consensu ad eum defertur imperium. Omnibus civitatibus obsides imperat, certum numerum militum ad se celeriter adduci iubet; imprimis equitatui studet. Summae diligentiae summam severitatem addit: magnitudine supplicii dubitantes cogit. Nam, maiore commisso delicto, igne atque omnibus tormentis necat; leviore de causa auribus desectis aut singulis effossis oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquis documento.

7. His suppliciis celeriter coacto exercitu, Lucterium Cadurcum, summae hominem audaciae, cum parte copiarum in Rutenos mittit; ipse in Bituriges proficiscitur. Eius adventu Bituriges ad Aeduos, quorum erant in fide, legatos mittunt subsidium rogatum, quo

facilius hostium copias sustinere possint. Aedui copias equitatus peditatusque subsidio Biturigibus mittunt. Qui cum ad flumen Ligerim venissent, quod Bituriges ab Aeduis dividit, paucos dies ibi morati neque flumen transire ausi, domum revertuntur legatisque nostris renuntiant, se Biturigum perfidiam veritos revertisse. Bituriges eorum discessu statim cum Arvernis iunguntur.

8. His rebus in Italiam Caesari nuntiatis, cum iam ille urbanas res virtute Gnei Pompei commodiorem in statum pervenisse intellegeret, in Transalpinam Galliam profectus est. Eo cum venisset, magna difficultate afficiebatur, qua ratione ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam si legiones arcesseret, se absente in itinere proelio dimicaturas intellegebat; si ipse ad exercitum contenderet, ne iis quidem eo tempore, qui quieti viderentur, suam salutem recte committi videbat.

9. Interim Lucterius Cadurcus in Rutenos missus eam civitatem Arvernis conciliat. Progressus in Nitiobroges et Gabalos ab utrisque obsides accipit et magna coacta manu in provinciam eruptionem facere contendit. Qua re nuntiata Caesar omnibus consiliis antevertendum existimavit, ut Narbonem proficisceretur. Eo cum venisset, timentes confirmat, praesidia in Rutenis provincialibus, Volcis, Arecomicis, Tolosatibus circumque Narbonem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima, constituit, partem copiarum ex provincia supplementumque, quod ex Italia adduxerat, in Helvios, qui fines Arvernorum contingunt, convenire iubet.

10. His rebus comparatis, represso iam Lucterio et remoto, in Helvios proficiscitur. Etsi mons Cevenna, qui Arvernos ab Helviis discludit, altissimā nive iter impediebat, tamen discussā nive atque ita viis patefactis summo militum sudore ad fines Arvernorum pervenit. Quibus oppressis inopinantibus, quod se Cevenna ut muro munitos existimabant, equitibus imperat, ut, quam latissime possint, vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrorem inferant. Celeriter haec famā ac nuntiis ad Vercingetorigem perferentur; quem perterriti omnes Arverni circumsistunt atque obsecrant, uti suis fortunis consulat neu se ab hostibus diripi patiatur. Quorum ille precibus permotus castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernos.

11. At Caesar biduum in his locis moratus, ab exercitu discedit, Brutum adulescentem his copiis praeficit; hunc monet, ut in omnes

partes equites quam latissime pervagentur: daturum se operam, ne longius triduo ab castris absit. His constitutis rebus, suis inopinantibus, quam maximis potest itineribus, Viennam pervenit. Ibi nanctus recentem equitatum, quem multis ante diebus eo praemiserat, neque diurno neque nocturno itinere intermisso per fines Aeduorum in Lingones contendit, ubi duae legiones hiemabant, ut, si quid etiam de sua salute ab Aeduis iniretur consilii, celeritate praecurreret. Eo cum pervenisset, ad reliquas legiones mittit priusque omnes in unum locum cogit, quam de eius adventu Arvernis nuntiari posset. Hac re cognita Vercingetorix rursus in Bituriges exercitum reducit atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Boiorum oppidum, quos ibi Helvetico proelio victos Caesar collocaverat, oppugnare instituit.

12. Magnam haec res Caesari difficultatem ad consilium capiendum afferebat, ne stipendiariis Aeduorum expugnatis cuncta Gallia deficeret, quod nullum amicis in eo praesidium videret positum esse. Praestare visum est omnes difficultates perpeti, quam omnium suorum voluntates alienare. Itaque cohortatus Aeduos de supportando commeatu praemittit ad Boios, qui de suo adventu doceant hortenturque, ut in fide maneant atque hostium impetum sustineant. Duabus Agedinci legionibus atque impedimentis totius exercitus relictis ad Boios proficiscitur.

13. Altero die cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodunum venisset, ne quem post se hostem relinqueret, oppugnare instituit idque biduo circumvallavit; tertio die missis ex oppido legatis de deditione, arma conferri, iumenta produci, sexcentos obsides dari iubet. Ea qui conficeret, Gaium Trebonium legatum relinquit, ipse ut quam primum iter faceret. Cenabum Carnutum proficiscitur; qui, tum primum allato nuntio de oppugnatione Vellaunoduni, praesidium Cenabi tuendi causa, comparabant. Huc biduo pervenit.

14. Castris ante oppidum positis, diei tempore exclusus in posterum oppugnationem differt, quaeque ad eam rem usui sint militibus, imperat et, quod oppidum Cenabum pons fluminis Ligeris contingebat, veritus, ne nocte ex oppido profugerent, duas legiones in armis excubare iubet. Cenabenses paulo ante mediam noctem silentio ex oppido egressi flumen transire coeperunt. Qua re per exploratores nuntiata, Caesar legiones, quas expeditas esse iusserat,

portis incensis intromittit atque oppido potitur. Oppidum, diripit atque incendit, praedam militibus donat, exercitum Ligerem traducit atque in Biturigum fines pervenit.

15. Vercingetorix, ubi de Caesaris adventu cognovit, oppugnatione destitit atque obviam Caesari proficiscitur. Ille oppidum Biturigum, positum in via Noviodunum oppugnare instituerat. Quo ex oppido cum legati ad eum venissent oratum, ut sibi ignosceret, arma conferri, equos produci, obsides dari iubet. Parte iam obsidum tradita, cum reliqua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis militibus intromissis, qui arma iumentaque conquirerent, equitatus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserant. Quem simul atque oppidani conspexerunt atque in spem auxilii venerunt, clamore sublato arma capere, portas claudere, murum complere coeperunt. Centuriones in oppido, cum novi aliquid iniri consilii intellexissent, gladiis destrictis portas occupaverunt suosque omnes incolumes receperunt.

16. Caesar ex castris equitatum educi iubet, proelium equestre committit; laborantibus iam suis Germanos equites circiter quadringentos submittit, quos ab initio habere secum instituerat. Eorum impetum Galli sustinere non potuerunt atque in fugam coniecti multis amissis se ad agmen receperunt. Quibus profligatis rursus oppidani perterriti comprehensos eos, quorum operā plebem concitatam existimabant, ad Caesarem perduxerunt seseque ei dediderunt. Quibus rebus confectis Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum munitissimumque in finibus Biturigum, profectus est, quod eo oppido recepto civitatem Biturigum se in potestatem redacturum confidebat.

17. Vercingetorix tot continuis incommodis Vellaunoduni, Cenabi, Novioduni acceptis, suos ad concilium convocat. Docet, longe alia ratione esse bellum gerendum, atque antea gestum sit. Omnibus modis huic rei studendum, ut pabulatione et commeatu Romani prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitatu ipsi abundent et quod anni tempore subleventur. Pabulum secari non posse; necessario dispersos hostes ex aedificiis petere: hos omnes cotidie ab equitibus deleri posse. Praeterea salutis causa rei familiaris commoda neglegenda: vicos atque aedificia incendi oportere.

18. Harum ipsis rerum copiam suppetere, quod, quorum in fini-

bus bellum geratur, eorum opibus subleventur; Romanos aut inopiam non laturos aut magno periculo longius ab castris processuros; neque interesse, ipsosne interficiant impedimentisne exuant. Praeterea oppida incendi oportere, quae non munitione et loci natura ab omni sint perculo tuta. Haec si gravia aut acerba videantur, multo illa gravius aestimare, liberos, coniuges in servitutem abstrahi, ipsos interfici.

19. Omnium consensu hac sententia probata, uno die amplius viginti urbes Biturigum incenduntur. Hoc idem in reliquis fit civitatibus. In omnibus partibus incendia conspiciuntur; quae etsi magno cum dolore omnes ferebant, tamen hoc sibi solatii proponebant, quod se celeriter amissa reciperaturos confidebant. Deliberatur de Avarico in communi concilio, incendi placeret an defendi. Procumbunt omnibus Gallis ad pedes Bituriges, ne pulcherrimam prope totius Galliae urbem, quae praesidio et ornamento sit civitati, suis manibus succendere cogerentur; facile se loci natura defensuros dicunt, quod, prope ex omnibus partibus flumine et palude circumdata, unum habeat et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia, dissuadente primo Vercingetorige, post concedente. Defensores oppido idonei deliguntur.

20. Vercingetorix minoribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur et locum castris deligit paludibus silvisque munitum ab Avarico longe milia passuum sedecim. Ibi per certos exploratores in singula diei tempora, quae ad Avaricum agerentur, cognoscebat et, quid fieri vellet, imperabat. Omnes nostras pabulationes frumentationesque observabat dispersosque, cum longius necessario procederent, adoriebatur magnoque incommodo afficiebat.

21. Castris ad eam partem oppidi positis Caesar quae aditum, ut supra diximus, angustum habebat, aggerem apparare, vineas agere, turres duas constituere coepit; nam circumvallare loci natura prohibebat. De re frumentaria Boios atque Aeduos adhortari non destitit; quorum alteri non multum adiuvabant, alteri celeriter, quod habuerunt, consumpserunt. Summa difficultate rei frumentariae affecto exercitu, nulla tamen vox est ab iis audita populi Romani maiestate et superioribus victoriis indigna. Quin etiam Caesar cum in opere singulas legiones appellaret et, se dimissurum oppugnationem diceret, universi ab eo, ne id faceret, petebant.

22. Cum iam muro turres appropinquassent, ex captivis Caesar cognovit, Vercingetorigem consumpto pabulo castra movisse propius Avaricum atque ipsum cum equitatu insidiarum causa eo profectum, quo nostros postero die pabulatum venturos arbitraretur. Quibus rebus cognitis media nocte silentio profectus, ad hostium castra mane pervenit. Illi celeriter per exploratores adventu Caesaris cognito carros impedimentaque sua in artiores silvas abdiderunt, copias omnes in loco edito atque aperto instruxerunt. Qua re nuntiata Caesar celeriter sarcinas conferri, arma expediri iussit.

23. Collis erat leniter ab infimo acclivis. Hunc ex omnibus fere partibus palus difficilis atque impedita cingebat non latior pedibus quinquaginta. Hoc se colle, interruptis pontibus, Galli continebant omniaque vada ac saltus obtinebant, sic animo parati, ut, si eam paludem Romani perrumpere conarentur, haesitantes premerent ex loco superiore. Indignantes milites Caesar, quod conspectum suum hostes perferre possent tantulo spatio interiecto, et signum proelii exposcentes edocet, quanto detrimento necesse sit constare victoriam. Sic milites consolatus eodem die reducit in castra reliquaque, quae ad oppugnationem pertinebant oppidi, administrare instituit.

24. Vercingetorix, cum ad suos redisset, proditionis insimulatus, quod, castra propius Romanos movisset, quod cum omni equitatu discessisset, quod sine imperio tantas copias reliquisset, quod eius discessu Romani tanta celeritate venissent; non haec omnia fortuito aut sine consilio accidere potuisse; regnum illum Galliae malle Caesaris concessu quam ipsorum habere beneficio: tali modo accusatus ad haec respondit: --Quod castra movisset, factum inopia pabuli etiam ipsis hortantibus: quod propius Romanos accessisset, persuasum loci opportunitate, equitum vero operam illic fuisse utilem, quo sint profecti. Summam imperii se consulto nulli discedentem tradidisse, ne is multitudinis studio ad dimicandum impelleretur. Romani si casu intervenerint, fortunae habendam gratiam, quod paucitatem eorum cognoscere potuerint.

25. Imperium se ab Caesare per proditionem nullum desiderare. "Haec ut intellegatis," inquit, "a me sincere pronuntiari, audite Romanos milites." Producit servos, quos in pabulatione paucis ante diebus exceperat et fame vinculisque excruciaverat. Hi iam

ante edocti, quae interrogati pronuntiarent, milites se esse legionarios dicunt; fame et inopia adductos clam ex castris exisse, si quid frumenti aut pecoris in agris reperire possent; simili omnem exercitum inopia premi, nec iam ferre operis laborem posse; itaque statuisse imperatorem, si nihil in oppugnatione oppidi profecissent, triduo exercitum deducere. "Haec," inquit, "a me," Vercingetorix, "beneficia habetis, quem proditionis insimulatis; cuius operā sine vestro sanguine tantum exercitum victorem fame consumptum videtis."

26. Conclamat omnis multitudo et suo more armis concrepat: summum esse Vercingetorigem ducem, nec de eius fide dubitandum, nec maiore ratione bellum administrari posse. Statuunt, ut decem milia hominum delecta ex omnibus copiis in oppidum mittantur, nec solis Biturigibus communem salutem committendam censent.

PASSAGES SUITABLE FOR HONOR STUDENTS.

27. Singulari militum nostrorum virtuti consilia cuiusque modi Gallorum occurrebant. Nam et laqueis falces avertebant, et aggerem cuniculis subtrahebant, eo scientius, quod apud eos magnae sunt ferrariae atque omne genus cuniculorum notum atque usitatum est. Totum autem murum ex omni parte turribus contabulaverant atque has coriis intexerant. Tum crebris diurnis nocturnisque eruptionibus aut aggeri ignem inferebant aut milites occupatos in opere adoriebantur. Apertos cuniculos praeustā et praeacutā materiā et pice fervefacta et maximi ponderis saxis morabantur moenibusque appropinquare prohibebant.

28. Muri autem omnes Gallici hac fere forma sunt. Trabes directae perpetuae in longitudinem, paribus intervallis distantes inter se binos pedes, in solo collocantur. Hae revinciuntur introrsus et multo aggere vestiuntur; ea autem, quae diximus, intervalla grandibus in fronte saxis effarciuntur. His collocatis et coagmentatis alius insuper ordo additur, ut idem illud intervallum servetur neque inter se contingant trabes, sed paribus intermissae spatiis arte contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus contexitur, dum iusta muri altitudo expleatur. Hoc cum in speciem varietatemque opus deforme non est alternis trabibus ac saxis, quae rectis lineis suos ordines servant, tum ad utilitatem et defensionem urbium summam habet opportunitatem.

29. His tot rebus impedita oppugnatione, milites, cum frigore et imbribus tardarentur, tamen labore omnia haec superaverunt et diebus viginti quinque aggerem latum pedes trecentos triginta altum pedes quinquaginta tres exstruxerunt. Cum is murum hostium paene contingeret et Caesar milites hortaretur, ne quod omnino tempus ab opere intermitteretur, paulo ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum, fumare aggerem, quem cuniculo hostes succenderant, eodemque tempore toto muro clamore sublato duabus portis ab utroque latere eruptio fiebat.

30. Omnia experti Galli, quod res nulla successerat, postero die consilium ceperunt ex oppido profugere, hortante et iubente Vercingetorige. Id non magnā iacturā suorum sese effecturos sperabant, propterea quod neque longe ab oppido castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palus Romanos ad insequendum tardabat. Iamque hoc facere noctu apparabant, cum matresfamiliae repente in publicum procurrerunt flentesque proiectae ad pedes suorum omnibus precibus petierunt, ne se et communes liberos hostibus dederent. Ubi eos in sententia perstare viderunt, quod plerumque in summo periculo timor misericordiam non recipit, conclamare et significare de fuga Romanis coeperunt. Quo timore perterriti Galli, ne ab equitatu Romanorum viae praeoccuparentur, consilio destiterunt.

31. Postero die Caesar promota turri, magno coorto imbre, non inutilem hanc ad capiendum consilium tempestatem arbitratus est, quod paulo incautius custodias in muro dispositas videbat, suosque languidius in opere versari iussit et, quid fieri vellet, ostendit. Legionibusque inter castra vineasque in occulto expeditis, cohortatus, ut aliquando pro tantis laboribus fructum victoriae perciperent, iis qui primi murum ascendissent, praemia proposuit militibusque signum dedit. Illi subito ex omnibus partibus evolaverunt murumque celeriter compleverunt.

32. Hostes re nova perterriti, muro turribusque deiecti, in foro ac locis patentioribus cuneatim constiterunt, hoc animo, ut, si qua ex parte obviam veniretur, acie instructa depugnarent. Ubi neminem in aequum locum sese demittere, sed toto undique muro circumfundi viderunt, veriti, ne omnino spes fugae tolleretur, abiectis armis ultimas oppidi partes petiverunt, parsque ibi, cum angusto exitu portarum se ipsi premerent, a militibus, pars iam egressa

portis ab equitibus est interfecta. Nec fuit quisquam, qui praedae studeret. Sic et Cenabi caede et labore operis incitati non aetate confectis, non mulieribus, non infantibus pepercerunt. Denique ex omni numero, qui fuit circiter milium quadraginta vix octingenti, qui primo clamore audito se ex oppido eiecerunt, incolumes ad Vercingetorigem pervenerunt.

33. Postero die concilio convocato consolatus cohortatusque est, ne se animo demitterent, ne perturbarentur incommodo. Non virtute neque in acie vicisse Romanos, sed artificio quodam et scientia oppugnationis, cuius rei fuerint ipsi imperiti. Errare, si qui in bello omnes secundos rerum proventus exspectent. Sibi numquam placuisse Avaricum defendi, cuius rei testes ipsos haberet, sed factum imprudentia Biturigum, uti hoc incommodum acciperetur. Id tamen se celeriter sanaturum. Nam quae ab reliquis Gallis civitates dissentirent, has sua diligentia adiuncturum atque unum consilium totius Galliae effecturum, cuius consensui ne orbis quidem terrarum possit obsistere: idque se prope iam effectum habere. Interea aequum esse ab iis communis salutis causa impetrari, ut castra munire instituerent, quo facilius repentinos hostium impetus sustinerent.

34. Fuit haec oratio non ingrata Gallis, et maxime, quod ipse animo non defecerat tanto accepto incommodo neque se in occultum abdiderat et conspectum multitudinis fugerat; plusque animo providere et praesentire existimabatur, quod re integra primo incendendum Avaricum, post deserendum censuerat. Itaque ut reliquorum imperatorum res adversae auctoritatem minuunt, sic huius ex contrario dignitas incommodo accepto in dies augebatur. Simul in spem veniebant eius affirmatione de reliquis adiungendis civitatibus: primumque eo tempore Galli castra munire instituerunt, et sic sunt animo confirmati homines insueti laboris, ut omnia, quae imperarentur, sibi patienda existimarent.

35. Nec minus, quam est pollicitus, Vercingetorix animo laborabat, ut reliquas civitates adiungeret, atque eas donis pollicitationibusque alliciebat. Huic rei idoneos homines deligebat, quorum quisque facillime capere posset. Qui Avarico expugnato refugerant, armandos vestiendosque curat; simul, ut deminutae copiae redintegrarentur, imperat certum numerum militum civitatibus, sagittariosque

omnes, quorum erat permagnus numerus in Gallia, conquiri et ad se mitti iubet. His rebus celeriter id, quod Avarici deperierat, expletur. Interim Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrogum, cuius pater ab senatu nostro amicus erat appellatus, cum magno equitum suorum numero et quos ex Aquitania conduxerat ad eum pervenit.

36. Caesar Avarici complures dies commoratus summamque ibi copiam frumenti et reliqui commeatus nactus, exercitum ex labore atque inopia refecit. Iam prope hieme confecta, cum ipso anni tempore ad gerendum bellum vocaretur et ad hostem proficisci constituisset, sive eum ex paludibus silvisque elicere sive obsidione premere posset, legati ad eum principes Aeduorum veniunt oratum, ut maxime necessario tempore civitati subveniat: summo esse in periculo rem, quod, cum singuli magistratūs antiquitus creari atque regiam potestatem annum obtinere consuessent, duo magistratum gerant et se uterque eorum legibus creatum esse dicat. Civitatem esse omnem in armis; divisum senatum, divisum populum. Quod si diutius alatur controversia, fore, uti, pars cum parte civitatis confligat; id ne accidat, positum in eius diligentia atque auctoritate.

37. Caesar, etsi a bello atque hoste discedere detrimentosum esse existimabat, tamen non ignorans, quanta ex dissensionibus incommoda oriri consuessent, ne tanta et tam coniuncta populo Romano civitas, quam ipse semper aluisset ad vim atque arma descenderet, atque ea pars, quae minus confideret, auxilia a Vercingetorige arcesseret, huic rei praevertendum existimavit et, quod legibus Aeduorum iis, qui summum magistratum obtinerent, excedere ex finibus non liceret, ipse in Aeduos proficisci statuit senatumque omnem et quos inter controversia esset ad se Decetiam evocavit. Cum prope omnis civitas eo convenisset, Cotum imperium deponere coëgit, Convictolitavem, qui per sacerdotes more civitatis esset creatus, potestatem obtinere iussit.

38. Hoc decreto interposito cohortatus Aeduos, ut controversiarum ac dissensionis obliviscerentur atque omnibus omissis rebus huic bello servirent equitatumque omnem et peditum milia decem sibi celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiis rei frumentariae causa disponeret, exercitum in duas partes divisit: quattuor legiones in Senones Parisiosque Labieno ducendas dedit, sex ipse in Arvernos ad oppidum Gergoviam duxit; equitatus partem illi attribuit, partem sibi

reliquit. Qua re cognita Vercingetorix omnibus interruptis pontibus ab altera fluminis parte iter facere coepit.

39. Cum uterque utrique esset exercitus in conspectu, dispositis exploratoribus, necubi effecto ponte Romani copias traducerent, erat in magnis Caesaris difficultatibus res, ne maiorem aestatis partem flumine impediretur, quod non fere ante autumnum Elaver vado transiri solet. Itaque, ne id accideret, silvestri loco castris positis e regione unius eorum pontium, quos Vercingetorix rescindendos curaverat, postero die cum duabus legionibus in occulto restitit; reliquas copias cum omnibus impedimentis, ut consueverat, misit. His, quam longissime possent, egredi iussis, cum iam ex diei tempore coniecturam ceperat, in castra perventum, pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effecto opere legionibusque traductis et loco castris idoneo delecto reliquas copias revocavit. Vercingetorix re cognita, ne contra suam voluntatem dimicare cogeretur, magnis itineribus antecessit.

40. Caesar ex eo loco quintis castris Gergoviam pervenit equestrique eo die proelio facto, perspecto urbis situ, quae posita in altissimo monte omnes adit s difficiles habebat, de expugnatione desperavit, de obsessione non prius agendum constituit, quam rem frumentariam expedisset. At Vercingetorix castris prope oppidum positis mediocribus circum se intervallis separatim singularum civitatem copias collocaverat, atque omnibus eius iugi collibus occupatis, horribilem speciem praebebat, neque ullum fere diem intermittebat, quin equestri proelio interiectis sagittariis, quid in quoque esset animi ac virtutis suorum, perspiceretur. Erat e regione oppidi collis sub ipsis radicibus montis egregie munitus atque ex omni parte circumcisus: quem si tenerent nostri, et aquae magna parte et pabulatione prohibituri hostes videbantur. Sed is locus praesidio ab his non nimis firmo tamen tenebatur. Silentio noctis Caesar ex castris egressus, priusquam subsidio ex oppido veniri posset, deiecto praesidio potitus loco, duas ibi legiones collocavit fossamque duplicem a maioribus castris ad minora perduxit, ut tuto etiam singuli commeare possent.

41. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis Aeduus, cui magistratum adiudicatum a Caesare demonstravimus, sollicitatus ab Arvernis pecuniā cum quibusdam adulescentibus colloquitur,

quorum erat princeps Litaviccus. Unam esse Aeduorum civitatem, quae certissimam Galliae victoriam detineat; eius auctoritate reliquas contineri; quā traductā locum consistendi Romanis in Gallia non fore. Esse nonnullo se Caesaris beneficio affectum, sed plus communi libertati tribuere. Cur enim potius Aedui de suo iure et de legibus ad Caesarem quam Romani ad Aeduos veniant? Placuit, ut Litaviccus decem illis milibus, quae Caesari ad bellum mitterentur, praeficeretur atque ea ducenda curaret, fratresque eius ad Caesarem praecurrerent.

42. Litaviccus accepto exercitu, cum milia passuum circiter triginta ab Gergovia abesset, convocatis subito militibus lacrimans, "Quo proficiscimur," inquit, "milites? Omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiit; principes civitatis, Eporedorix et Viridomarus, insimulati proditionis, ab Romanis indictā causā interfecti sunt. Haec ab ipsis cognoscite, qui ex ipsa caede fugerunt: nam ego, fratribus atque omnibus meis propinquis interfectis, dolore prohibeor, quae gesta sunt, pronuntiare." Producuntur hi, quos ille edocuerat, quae dici vellet, atque eadem, quae Litaviccus pronuntiaverat, multitudini exponunt; equites Aeduorum interfectos, quod collocuti cum Arvernis dicerentur; ipsos se inter multitudinem militum occultasse atque ex media caede fugisse. Conclamant Aedui et Litaviccum obsecrant, ut sibi consulat. "Quasi vero," inquit ille, "non necesse sit nobis Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernis nosmet coniungere. An dubitamus, quin nefario facinore admisso Romani iam ad nos interficiendos concurrant? Proinde, si quid in nobis animi est, persequamur eorum mortem, qui indignissime interierunt, atque hos latrones interficiamus." Nuntias tota civitate Aeduorum dimittit, eodem mendacio de caede equitum et principum permovet; hortatur, suas iniurias persequantur.

43. Eporedorix cognito Litavicci consilio media fere nocte rem ad Caesarem defert; orat, ne patiatur civitatem pravis adulescentium consiliis ab amicitia populi Romani deficere. Magna affectus sollicitudine hoc nuntio Caesar, quod semper Aeduorum civitati praecipue indulserat, nulla interposita dubitatione legiones expeditas quattuor equitatumque omnem ex castris educit. Gaium Fabium legatum cum legionibus duabus castris praesidio relinquit. Progressus milia passuum viginti quinque, agmen Aedu-

orum conspicatus, immisso equitatu iter eorum moratur interdicitque omnibus, ne quemquam interficiant. Eporedorigem et Viridomarum, quos illi interfectos existimabant, inter equites versari suosque appellare iubet. His cognitis et Litavicci fraude perspecta Aedui manus tendere, deditionem significare et proiectis armis mortem deprecari incipiunt. Litaviccus cum suis clientibus Gergoviam profugit.

44. Caesar, nuntiis ad civitatem Aeduorum missis, qui suo beneficio conservatos docerent, quos iure belli interficere potuisset, tribusque horis exercitui ad quietem datis, castra ad Gergoviam movit. Medio fere itinere equites a Fabio missi, quanto res in periculo fuerit, exponunt. Summis copiis castra oppugnata demonstrant, cum integri defessis succederent. Multitudine sagittarum atque omnis generis telorum multos vulneratos ; ad haec sustinenda magno usui fuisse tormenta. His rebus cognitis Caesar summo studio militum ante ortum solis in castra pervenit.

45. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Aedui primis nuntiis ab Litavicco acceptis nullum sibi ad cognoscendum spatium relinquunt. Impellit alios avaritia, alios iracundia et temeritas, quae maxime illi hominum generi est innata, ut auditionem habeant pro re comperta. Bona civium Romanorum diripiunt, caedes faciunt, in servitutem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem Convictolitavis plebemque ad furorem impellit, ut facinore admisso ad sanitatem reverti pudeat. Marcum Aristium tribunum militum iter ad legionem facientem fide data ex oppido Cabillono educunt ; idem facere cogunt eos, qui negotiandi causa ibi constiterant. Hos continuo in itinere adorti omnibus impedimentis exuunt ; repugnantes diem noctemque obsident ; multis utrimque interfectis maiorem multitudinem armatorum concitant.

46. Interim nuntio allato, omnes eorum milites in potestate Caesaris teneri, concurrunt ad Aristium, nihil publico factum consilio demonstrant ; quaestionem be bonis direptis decernunt, Litavicci fratrumque bona publicant, legatos ad Caesarem sui purgandi gratia mittunt. Haec faciunt reciperandorum suorum causa ; sed contaminati facinore, quod ea res ad multos pertinebat, et timore poenae exterriti consilia clam de bello inire incipiunt civitatesque reliquas legationibus sollicitant. Quae tametsi Caesar intellegebat,

tamen, quam mitissime potest, legatos appellat; nihil se propter inscientiam levitatemque vulgi gravius de civitate iudicare neque de sua in Aeduos benevolentia deminuere. Ipse maiorem Galliae motum exspectans, ne ab omnibus civitatibus circumsisteretur, consilia inibat, quemadmodum a Gergovia discederet ac rursus omnem exercitum contraheret, ne profectio nata ab timore defectionis similis fugae videretur.

47. Haec cogitanti accidere visa est facultas bene rei gerendae. Nam cum in minora castra operis perspiciendi causa venisset, animadvertit collem, qui ab hostibus tenebatur, nudatum hominibus, qui superioribus diebus vix prae multitudine cerni poterat. Miratus quaerit ex perfugis causam, quorum magnus ad eum cotidie numerus confluebat. Constabat inter omnes, quod iam ipse Caesar per exploratores cognoverat, dorsum esse eius iugi prope aequum, sed hunc silvestrem et angustum, qua esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidi; vehementer huic illos loco timere, nec iam aliter sentire, uno colle ab Romanis occupato, si alterum amisissent, quin paene circumvallati atque omni exitu et pabulatione interclusi viderentur: ad hunc muniendum omnes a Vercingetorige evocatos.

48. Hac re cognita Caesar mittit complures equitum turmas; eis de media nocte imperat, ut paulo tumultuosius omnibus locis vagentur. Prima luce magnum numerum impedimentorum ex castris mulorumque produci deque his stramenta detrahi mulionesque cum cassidibus equitum specie ac simulatione collibus circumvehi iubet. His paucos addit equites, qui latius ostentationis causa vagarentur. Longo circuitu easdem omnes iubet petere regiones. Haec procul ex oppido videbantur, ut erat a Gergovia despectus in castra. Legionem unam eodem iugo mittit et paulum progressam inferiore constituit loco silvisque occultat. Augetur Gallis suspicio atque omnes illo ad munitionem copiae traducuntur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar conspicatus tectis insignibus suorum occultatisque signis militaribus raros milites, ne ex oppido animadverterentur, ex maioribus castris in minora traducit legatisque, quos singulis legionibus praefecerat, quid fieri velit, ostendit; imprimis monet, ut contineant milites, ne studio pugnandi aut spe praedae longius progrediantur; quid iniquitas loci habeat incommodi, proponit; hoc una celeritate posse mutari; occasionis esse rem, non proelii. His

rebus expositis signum dat et ab dextra parte alio ascensu eodem tempore Aeduos mittit.

Milites dato signo celeriter ad munitionem perveniunt eamque transgressi trinis castris potiuntur ; ac tanta fuit in castris capiendis celeritas, ut Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrogum, subito in tabernaculo opressus, ut meridie conquieverat, superiore corporis parte nudata, vulnerato equo vix se ex manibus militum eriperet.

49. Consecutus id quod animo proposuerat, Caesar receptui cani iussit, legionisque decimae, quacum erat, continuo signa constituit. At reliquarum legionum milites non exaudito sono tubae, quod satis magna vallis intercedebat, tamen ab tribunis militum legatisque, ut erat a Caesare praeceptum, retinebantur ; sed elati spe celeris victoriae et hostium fuga et superiorum temporum secundis proeliis nihil adeo arduum sibi esse existimaverunt, quod non virtute consequi possent, neque finem prius sequendi fecerunt, quam muro oppidi portisque appropinquarunt. Tum vero ex omnibus urbis partibus orto clamore, qui longius aberant, repentino tumultu perterriti, cum hostem intra portas esse existimarent, sese ex oppido eiecerunt. Matresfamiliae de muro vestem argentumque iactabant et pectore nudo prominentes passis manibus obtestabantur Romanos, ut sibi parcerent neu, sicut Avarici fecissent, ne a mulieribus quidem atque infantibus abstinerent ; nonnullae de muris per manus demissae sese militibus tradebant. L. Fabius, centurio legionis VIII., quem inter suos eo die dixisse constabat, excitari se Avaricensibus praemiis neque commissurum, ut prius quisquam murum ascenderet, tres suos nactus manipulares atque ab iis sublevatus murum ascendit ; hos ipse rursus singulos exceptans in murum extulit.

50. Interim ii, qui ad alteram partem oppidi, ut supra demonstravimus, munitionis causa convenerant, primo exaudito clamore, inde etiam crebris nuntiis incitati, oppidum a Romanis teneri, praemissis equitibus magno concursu eo contenderunt. Eorum ut quisque primus venerat, sub muro consistebat suorumque pugnantium numerum augebat. Quorum cum magna multitudo convenisset, matresfamiliae, quae paulo ante Romanis de muro manus tendebant, suos obtestari et more Gallico passum capillum ostentare liberosque in conspectum proferre coeperunt. Erat Romanis nec

loco nec numero aequa contentio; simul et cursu et spatio pugnae fatigati non facile recentes atque integros sustinebant.

Caesar cum iniquo loco pugnari hostiumque augeri copias videret, praemetuens suis ad Titum Sextium legatum, quem minoribus castris praesidio reliquerat, misit, ut cohortes ex castris celeriter educeret et sub infimo colle ab dextro latere hostium constitueret, ut, si nostros loco depulsos vidisset, quo minus libere hostes insequerentur, terreret. Ipse paulum ex eo loco cum legione progressus, ubi constiterat, eventum pugnae exspectabat.

51. Cum acerrime comminus pugnaretur, hostes loco et numero, nostri virtute confiderent, subito sunt Aedui visi ab latere nostris aperto, quos Caesar ab dextra parte alio ascensu manus distinendae causa miserat. Hi similitudine armorum vehementer nostros perterruerunt, ac tametsi dextris umeris exsertis animadvertebantur, quod insigne pacatorum esse consuerat, tamen id ipsum sui fallendi causa milites ab hostibus factum existimabant. Eodem tempore Lucius Fabius centurio, quique una murum ascenderant, circumventi atque interfecti muro praecipitabantur. Marcus Petronius, eiusdem legionis centurio, cum portas excidere conatus esset, a multitudine oppressus ac sibi desperans, multis iam vulneribus acceptis, manipularibus suis, qui illum secuti erant, "Quoniam," inquit, "me una vobiscum servare non possum, vestrae quidem certe vitae prospiciam, quos cupiditate gloriae adductus in periculum deduxi. Vos data facultate vobis consulite." Simul in medios hostes irrupit duobusque interfectis reliquos a porta paulum summovit. Conantibus auxiliari suis "Frustra," inquit, "meae vitae subvenire conamini, quem iam sanguis viresque deficiunt. Proinde abite, dum est facultas, vosque ad legionem recipite." Ita pugnans post paulum concidit ac suis saluti fuit.

HINTS AND VOCABULARY.

1. *caedes*, murder ; *senatūs consultum*, decree of the senate ; *delectus*, levy ; *motus*, disturbance ; *doleo*, grieve.

2. *queror*, complain ; *miseror*, lament ; *in libertatem vindicare*, assert the liberty of ; *imprimis*, especially ; *rationem habere*, to take into consideration ; *praestat*, it is better.

3. *profiteor*, declare ; *sancio*, ratify.

4. *negotior*, I trade ; *honestus*, respected ; *diripio*, plunder.

5. *incendo*, inflame ; *patruus*, uncle ; *quicumque*, whoever.

6. *dimitto*, send out ; *defero*, offer ; *studeo*, I am eager for ; *supplicium*, punishment ; *delictum*, offence ; *neco*, kill ; *auris*, an ear ; *deseco*, from *de* and *seco*, I cut ; *effodio*, I dig out ; *documentum*, warning.

7. *moror*, I delay ; *audeo, ausus sum*, I dare.

8. *commodus*, convenient, satisfactory ; *afficio*, I affect with ; *ratio*, method, manner ; *dimico*, fight ; *committo*, entrust.

9. *anteverto*, place before (dative) ; *ut proficisceretur* is subject of *antevertendum (esse); confirmo*, encourage, reassure.

10. *impedio*, block, obstruct ; *discutio*, clear away ; *sudor*, sweat, toil ; *opprimo*, surprise ; *inopinans*, unexpecting ; *vagor*, roam about ; *consulo* (with dat.), I look out for, consult the interest of.

11. *biduum*, space of two days ; *operam dare*, exert one's self, take care ; *recens*, fresh ; *intermitto*, interrupt ; *praecurro*, anticipate.

12. *consilium capere*, form a plan, decide on measures ; *stipendiarius*, tributary ; *deficio*, revolt ; *praesidium*, protection ; *praestat*, see 2 ; *perpetior*, endure ; *sustineo*, withstand, resist.

13. *alter*, second ; *produco*, lead forth ; *ea qui conficeret* read *qui ea conficeret*, note the mood ; *tueor*, protect.

14. *excludo*, prevent ; *posterus* (*dies*), following ; *differo*, put off, postpone ; *excubo*, watch at night ; *expeditus*, unencumbered by baggage, in light marching order.

15. *desisto*, desist from ; *oro*, I pray ; *ignosco*, pardon ; *administro*, carry

out, perform; *iumentum*, beast of burden; *conquiro*, seek out; *simul atque*, as soon as; *sublato*, from *tollo*, to raise; *destringo*, unsheath.

16. *laboro*, to be in distress or difficulty; *profligo*, to rout; *opera*, agency, instrumentality; *concito*, excite; *redigo in potestatem*, subdue.

17. *incommodum*, disaster, reverse; *alius atque*, different from; *studeo*, strive for; *pabulatio*, foraging; *abundo*, abound in, be plentifully supplied with; *sublevo*, aid; *pabulum*, fodder; *rei familiaris commoda*, private interests.

18. *suppeto*, be on hand, be available; *non interest*, it makes no difference; — *ne*, — *ne*, whether, or; *exuo*, deprive of; *acerbus*, distasteful.

19. *probo*, approve; *solatium*, consolation; *recipero*, recover; *procumbo*, fall prostrate; *succendo*, set fire to; *perangustus*, very narrow; *venia*, indulgence.

20. *incommodo afficio*, harass, annoy.

21. *indignus*, unworthy of, gov's abl.; *quin etiam*, moreover; *appello*, address; *dimitto*, abandon.

22. *insidiae*, ambuscade; *pabulatum*, supine; *mane*, early in the morning; *carrus*, cart; *artus*, close, dense.

23. *interrumpo*, break down.

24. *fortuīto*, by chance; *quod—movisset*, "as to his having, etc."; *opera*, help; *consulto*, purposely; *casus*, chance.

25. *proditio*, treachery.